

L. O. V.

(Translations of the three Inscriptions
on the Cover.)

1. Arabic.

"These are our works which prove
what we have done;
Look, therefore, at our works
when we are gone."

2. Turkish.

"His genius cast its shadow o'er the world,
And in brief time he much achieved and
wrought:
The Age's Sun was he, and aging suns
Cast lengthy shadows, though their time be
short."

(Kemál Páshá-zádé.)

3. Persian.

"When we are dead, seek for our
resting-place
Not in the earth, but in the
hearts of men."

(Jalálu 'd-Dín Rúmí.)

4910 | 7
✓ o.v

Salar Jung Library
WESTERN
SECTION.

“E. J. W. GIBB MEMORIAL”

SERIES.

VOL. II.

“E. J. W. GIBB MEMORIAL” SERIES.

1. *The Bábar-náma, reproduced in Fac-Simile from a MS. belonging to the late Sir Sálár Jang of Haydarábád, and edited with Preface and Indexes, by Annette S. Beveridge, 1905.*
2. *An abridged translation of Ibn Isfandiyár’s History of Tabaristán, by Edward G. Browne.*

IN PREPARATION

The Mu‘ajjam fí Ma‘áyíri Ash‘ári’l-‘Ajam of Shams-i-Qays, edited from the British Museum MS. (OR. 2814) by Edward G. Browne.

Part of the History of the Mongols, from the Jámí‘u’t-Tawárikh of Rashídu’d-Dín Faḍlu’llah, beginning with the account of Ogotáy, edited by E. Blochet.

An abridged translation of the Iḥyá’u'l-Mulúk, a Persian History of Sístán by Sháh Husayn, from the British Museum MS. (OR. 2779), by A. G. Ellis.

The geographical part of the Nuzhatu'l-Qulúb of Ḥamdu'lláh Mustawfi of Qazwín, with a translation, by G. Le Strange.

Yáqút’s Dictionary of Learned Men, entitled Irshádu'l-aráb ila ma‘rifati ’l-adáb; Vol. I, edited from the Bodleian MS., by D. S. Margoliouth, D. Litt.

AN

ABRIDGED TRANSLATION

OF THE

HISTORY OF TABARISTÁN

COMPILED ABOUT A. H. 613 (A. D. 1216)

BY

MUHAMMAD B. AL-HASAN B. ISFANDIYÁR,

BASED ON THE INDIA OFFICE MS.

COMPARED WITH TWO MSS. IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

BY

EDWARD G. BROWNE, M. A., M. B.,

SIR THOMAS ADAMS’ PROFESSOR OF ARABIC AND FELLOW OF PEMBROKE COLLEGE IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE, FELLOW OF THE BRITISH ACADEMY.

PRINTED FOR THE TRUSTEES OF THE
“E. J. W. GIBB MEMORIAL”.

LEYDEN: E. J. BRILL, IMPRIMERIE ORIENTALE.
LONDON: BERNARD QUARITCH, 15, PICCADILLY.

955.3
15F

CHECKED

Salar Jung Library
WESTERN
SECTION.

PRINTED BY F. J. BRILL. — LEYDEN (Holland).

This Volume is one
of a Series
published by the Trustees of the
“E. J. W. GIBB MEMORIAL.”

The Funds of this Memorial are derived from the Interest accruing
from a Sum of money given by the late MRS. GIBB of Glasgow, to
perpetuate the Memory of her beloved son

ELIAS JOHN WILKINSON GIBB,

and to promote those researches into the History, Literature, Philosophy and Religion of the Turks, Persians and Arabs to which, from his Youth upwards, until his premature and deeply lamented Death in his forty-fifth year on December 5, 1901, his life was devoted.

تَلْكَ آثَارُنَا تَدْلُّ عَلَيْنَا . فَانْظُرُوا بَعْدَنَا إِلَى آلَاثَارِ

“The worker pays his debt to Death;
His work lives on, nay, quickeneth.”

The following memorial verse is contributed by 'Abdu'l-Haqq Hāmid Bey of the Imperial Ottoman Embassy in London, one of the Founders of the New School of Turkish Literature, and for many years an intimate friend of the deceased.

جمله بارانی و فاسیله ایدرکن نظیب
کندی عمرنک و فاگورمدی اول ذات ادیب
گنج ایکن اولمش ایدی اوچر کاله واصل
نه اولوردی باشامش اولسہ ایدی مستر گیب

“E. J. W. GIBB MEMORIAL”:
ORIGINAL TRUSTEES.

[JANE GIBB, died November 26, 1904],
E. G. BROWNE,
G. LE STRANGE,
H. F. AMEDROZ,
A. G. ELLIS,
R. A. NICHOLSON,
E. DENISON ROSS,
AND
IDA W. E. GIBB, appointed 1905.

CLERK OF THE TRUST.

JULIUS BERTRAM,
14, Suffolk Street, Pall Mall,
LONDON, S.W.

PUBLISHERS FOR THE TRUSTEES.

E. J. BRILL, LEYDEN.
B. QUARITCH, LONDON.

TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE.

The aim of this book is a comparatively humble one, and even of this aim, now that it is completed, I fear that it may have fallen short. It was originally undertaken, not because I had made or intended to make any special study of Tabaristán, but in the search for fresh materials for the second volume of the *Literary History of Persia* on which I am still engaged. We are still far from having arrived at a point where, supplied with ample materials, and certain that no important ascertainable fact has eluded our knowledge, we can venture to dogmatise or generalise on the intellectual life and spiritual development of the Persians. Often the student of Persian must wait for months ere he can consult even the most important and indispensable histories, such as the *Jāmi‘u 3-t-Tawārikh* of Rashīdūd-Dīn Faḍlu’llāh, or the *Ta‘rīkh-i-Jahāngushāy* of ‘Atā Malik-i-Juwaynī; and, while thus waiting, he will take such opportunities as may happen to present themselves of acquainting himself with the contents of those little-read local and special histories of which some are to be found in every large collection of Muhammadan manuscripts, and which constantly supply details, wanting in the larger general histories, of considerable value for illustrative purposes.

Much has been done, especially by the Russians, towards supplying full materials for a history of the Caspian provinces of Persia, Gīlān and Mázandarán. Between the years 1850 and 1858 Dorn published a whole series of works on this subject: first his *Geschichte Tabaristan's und der Serbedare*

nach Chondemir; then four volumes of texts, of which the first was Sayyid Dhahíru'd-Dín al-Mar'ashí's *History of Tabaristán, Rúyán and Mázandarán*, composed about A.D. 1476; the second, 'Alí b. Shamsu'd-Dín's *History of Gilán*, known as the *Tárikh-i-Khání*, which is a continuation of the last-mentioned work to A.D. 1514; then Ibnu'l-Fattáh al-Fúmani's *History of Gilán* (from A.D. 1517—1628); and lastly a volume of extracts from the writings of twenty-two Arabic and Persian authors who have incidentally treated of matters connected with these provinces. Another most valuable work which I have constantly consulted during the preparation of this volume is Melgunof's *Das südliche Ufer des Kaspischen Meeres, oder die Nordprovinzen Persiens* (Leipzig, 1868). Even for the dialect of Mázandarán more has probably been done than for any other local idiom of Persia, notably by the two Russian scholars mentioned above.

Separated from the rest of Persia by the lofty barrier of the Elburz Mountains, culminating in the great cone of Damiáwand (Dunbáwand), the Caspian provinces have always possessed, to a certain extent, a history and character apart. Long after the Sásánian dynasty had fallen and the rest of Persia had been subdued by the Arabs, the Ispahbads continued to strike their Pahlawí coinage and maintain the religion of Zoroaster in the mountains and forests of Tabaristán; and their struggles against the Arabs were only ended about A.D. 838 by the capture and cruel execution of the gallant Mázyár, the son of Qárin, the son of Wandá-Hurmuz. Twenty-five years later was established the Shi'ite rule of the Zaydí Sayyids, which lasted till A.D. 928; and these were followed by the noble house of Ziyár, of whom Shamsu'l-Ma'álí Qábús was especially conspicuous for his literary eminence. Even after the disastrous Mongol invasion, representatives of the ancient aristocracy of Tabaristán continued to wield a more or less considerable power.

Of this strange and interesting country the clearest and most ineffaceable recollection must remain in the mind of every traveller who has visited it. I merely traversed it in about a week on my homeward journey from Persia in the autumn of 1888, yet of no part of that journey do I preserve a more vivid impression; the first entry, from the great stony plain of 'Iráq-i-'Ajamí into the lower hills at Agh, with its rippling streams and almost English hedge-rows; the long winding climb to the eastern shoulder of the mighty Damáwand; the deep cañons of the Lár; the Alpine beauties of René; the gradual descent, through rock-walled valleys, into virgin forests, bright with the red blossoms of the wild pomegranate, and carpeted with ferns and mosses; the sluggish streams and stagnant pools of the coast-ward fenlands; ancient Ámul, with its long slender bridge; Bárfurúsh and the swampy rice-fields of Shaykh Ṭabarsí, memorable in the history of the Bábí religion; and the sandy downs towards the Caspian Sea.

Of this land the author of this book, Muḥammad b. al-Hasan b. Isfandiyár — generally known, for the sake of brevity, as Ibn Isfandiyár —, is the earliest systematic historian whose work has come down to us. Of his life we know practically nothing save what he himself tells us at the beginning of his work (pp. 3—4 *infra*), while the few written sources from which, as he informs us, he derived his material — notably the *Báwand-náma* and the *'Uqíd* of Abu'l-Hasan Muḥammad al-Yazdádí — appear also to be lost. Dorn (*Sehir-eddin's Geschichte von Tabaristan u. s. w.*, p. 6) gives A.D. 1216 as the date at which he composed his history, that is to say, 260 years before Dhahíru'd-Dín, who, as Dorn points out, made such free use of his materials. Were this use so free (which it is not) as to amount to complete plagiarism (a thing by no means unknown in Persian literature), it might render the publication of Ibn Isfandiyár's

book in the original a work of supererogation; but even then, I venture to think, an abridged English translation like the present might have its uses. If it does nothing else, it may save other students of Persian the trouble of reading the original, or the disappointment of seeking from the book more than it contains.

The best translation, however, cannot take the place of a good text, and the publication of a complete and carefully collated text can alone be regarded as a final and definitive piece of work; since even if the translator could be certain that he had in every case fully apprehended the author's meaning, this assurance could not be shared by others to whom the original was inaccessible. This objection applies with still greater force to an abridged or condensed translation like the present, since the process of condensation is sure to be unevenly applied, according to the personal bias and proclivities of the translator. To me, for instance, all that throws fresh light on the literary history or intimate life of Persia is of extreme value; while the wars of rival princes and governors, when arising, so far as can be judged, from mere personal ambition, and not from conflicting ideals of nationality or religion, are comparatively unimportant, because unconnected with any essential antithesis. All that concerns Mázyár, for example, is to me of supreme interest, because he stands for the old Persian national and religious ideal; while the internecine struggles which mark the decline of the Seljúq power, and in which I can discern no underlying principle, appear merely as wearisome enumerations of irrelevant details. Yet to another, who regarded Persian history from a different point of view, the military or the political, for instance, the very matters over which I have passed so lightly might seem all-important.

I need say little more in this Preface. Profiting by the liberality of the India Office Library, which stands in such

noble contrast to the retrograde and obscurantist policy of several of the most important libraries in this country, I have been able to read through a comparatively rare work which cannot be ignored by the student of Persian history. As I read, I endeavoured to abstract from it, primarily for my own use, all that seemed to me of interest or importance. This abstract I had at first no intention of publishing; but the foundation by the liberality of the late Mrs Jane Gibb of the "E. J. W. Gibb Memorial", intended not only to perpetuate the memory of her son's rare scholarship and single-hearted devotion to learning, but to carry on such work as he loved and promote such aims as he so steadily pursued, created, almost for the first time in this country, facilities for the publication of works dealing with the history of Western and Central Asia actually in excess, for the time being, of the supply of such works. Under these circumstances, with the approval of the other Trustees of the Memorial, I decided to revise for the Press this abstract originally prepared only for my own personal use. In the work of revision I have received the most generous and invaluable help from Mr A. G. Ellis of the British Museum, whose knowledge of Muhammadan literature and bibliography surpasses, so far as I can judge, that of any other living European scholar. Notwithstanding his onerous duties and scanty leisure, he has read almost every sheet of the book before it was printed off; and to him I am indebted not only for the numerous foot-notes followed by his initials, and the observations on pp. 271—280, but also for the correction of many errors which would otherwise have marred these pages. I desire to avail myself of this opportunity of expressing my gratitude for this and numerous other obligations under which he has laid me.

With the Index (the most important part of such a book as this) I have taken considerable pains; and with its help

it will, I think be easy for any Persian scholar to find any passage which he may wish to consult, not only in the India Office Codex which forms the basis of my work, but in any other manuscript which he may have at his disposal. Certain names occur so often that, without a more profound knowledge of the history of Tabaristán than I possess, it is often difficult to determine questions of identity. Hence, in all doubtful cases, I have placed in brackets after the name a Roman number indicating the century of the Christian era in which the person referred to appears to have flourished.

EDWARD G. BROWNE,
May 10, 1905.

Bibliography. Sir W. Ouseley's *Travels* (London 1821), vol. ii, p. 214; vol. iii, pp. 304, 308, 554 etc.; Idem, *Catalogue of several hundred manuscript works etc.* (London 1821), N°. 283, p. 450; Dorn's *Sehir-eddin's Geschichte von Tabaristan, Rujan und Masanderan* (St. Petersburg, 1850), pp. 3—6; Spiegel, in the *Z. D. M. G.* for 1850 (vol. iv), pp. 62—71; Rieu's *Persian Catalogue*, pp. 202—204; Ethé's *Bodleian Persian Catalogue*, pp. 160—161; Ethé's *India Office Persian Catalogue*, pp. 222—223.

Manuscripts. N°. 1134 of the India Office (= N°. 568 in Ethé's *Catalogue*), dated A. H. 1032 (= A). Add. 7633 of the British Museum, dated A. H. 1067 (= B), and Or. 2778, dated A. H. 1273 (= C). N°. 307 (= Ouseley 214) of the Bodleian, dated A. H. 1068 (= D). Also a MS. in the Library of the St. Petersburg University; and a transcript of the same, collated by Dorn with the London MSS., in the Asiatic Museum of St. Petersburg. Another MS., dated A. H. 1295, which belonged to the late M. Ch. Schefer, is now in the Bibliothèque Nationale at Paris, and bears the class-mark *Suppl. Pers. 1436*.

A portion of the text (corresponding with f. 6b, l. 4—f. 20b, l. 5 of A), containing the letter of Ardashir Bábakán's minister Tansar to Jasnasf, king of Tabaristán, cited by the author on the authority of the celebrated 'Abdu'lláh ibnú'l-Muqaffá, was published with a French translation in the *Journal Asiatique* for 1894 (Series ix, Vol. 3, pp. 185—250 and 502—555) by the late M. James Darmestéter, who found the India Office MS. greatly superior in point of correctness to the British Museum Codex of which he made use.

The only other portion of the text (corresponding with f. 155a, l. 17—f. 157b, l. 12) which, so far as I know, has been published and translated is the account of Firdawsi cited from the *Chahár Maqála* of Nidhámí-i-Árúdí of Samarqand, which Dr. Ethé transcribed for Professor Nöldeke's use, and afterwards published in the *Z. D. M. G.* for 1894, vol. xviii, pp. 89—94.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

After the customary doxology, the author, Muhammed b. al-Hasan b. Isfandiyár, states that, on returning from Baghdad to 'Iráq in the year A. H. 606 (= A. D. 1209—1210), he was overwhelmed with grief at the news of the murder of Rustam b. Ardashír b. Hasan b. Rustam, the ruler of Ṭabaristán, on the 21st of Shawwál in that year (April 1, A. D. 1210), on which he exclaims:

سَلَامٌ عَلَى قَوْمٍ مَضَوا لَسْبِيلِهِمْ فَلَمْ يَبْقَ إِلَّا ذَكْرُهُمْ وَحَدِيثُهُمْ
لَقَدْ جَمَعْتُهُمْ سَكُونَ الْمَوْتِ فَلَسْتُو قَدِيمُهُمْ فِي شَأْنِهِمْ وَحَدِيثُهُمْ

For two months (f. 3a) he remained in Ray, weighed down with sorrow, and finding his only consolation in the perusal of books. One day he found in the library of the College founded by the Sháhinsháh Rustam b. Shahriyár a few quires on the history of Gáwbára, and thereupon remembered that the late king Husámu'd-Dawla Ardashír had repeatedly enquired of him whether he had ever come across any mention of a king of Ṭabaristán called Gáwbára in Arabic or Persian books (f. 3b), to which he was obliged to reply that he had not, and that he knew of no history of Ṭabaristán save the *Báwand-náma*, a work filled with fables and popular legends compiled for the king Husámu'd-Dawla Shahriyár b. Qárin. On examining these quires, he found them to contain the *'Uqúdu sihr wa galá'ídu durar* of Abu'l-Hasan Muhammed Yazdádí, a work wherein the author sought rather to display his mastery over the Arabic language than to impart information to the reader. This he translated into

Persian, adding to it some account of king Husámu'd-Dawla Ardashír and his illustrious ancestors, and, encouraged by some of his literary friends, he was preparing to make a fair copy of his rough draft when he received a letter from his father warning him of his approaching end. Thereupon he at once started (f. 4b) with a single servant for his home, without saying good bye to any one, and by the morning of the following day reached the castle of Ustúnawand¹, where he was set upon and robbed by brigands. He ultimately, however, reached his father, and remained for a while at Amul in Mázandarán, whence, after a short time, he journeyed to Khwárazm (f. 5a), at that time a most flourishing and populous city, where he remained for five years. One day he found in a bookseller's shop there a volume containing ten separate treatises, one of which was a translation from Hindí into Arabic (زندوی بندوی) made for a native of Sind named 'Alá b. Sa'íd by a certain Dá'u'd of Yazd in the year A. H. 197 (= A. D. 812—813), while another was a translation from Pahlawí into Arabic, made by the celebrated 'Abdu'lláh ibnu'l-Muqaffa^c († circ. A. D. 760), of the answer returned to Jasnafsháh, Prince of Tabaristán, by Tansar of Párs, the chief *herbad* (حربد) of Ardashír Bábakán, the founder of the Sásánian dynasty. These also the author used for the compilation of his work, which he constructed on the following plan (f. 5b):

Section I. On the first foundation of the kingdom of Tabaristán.

Ch. I. Translation of the above-mentioned tract of ibnu'l-Muqaffa^c.

Ch. II. First settlement of Tabaristán and its cities.

Ch. III. Virtues and marvels of Tabaristán.

Ch. IV. Its princes, nobles, doctors, hermits, writers,

¹ See M. Barbier de Meynard's *Dictionnaire de la Perse*, p. 33.

physicians, astronomers, philosophers, poets and notable men.

Section II. History of the rise and continuance of the dynasties of Washmgír and Buwayh in Tabaristán.

Section III. How Tabaristán passed from Núshírwán b. Minúchihr b. Qábús, the last prince of the House of Washmgír, to the kings of the Houses of Ghazna and Seljúq.

Section IV. From the beginning of the second ascendancy of the House of Báwand to their decline and fall.

Section I, ch. I.

This section opens with a short biography (ff. 5b—6b) of Ibnu'l-Muqaffa^c. His proper name, says the author, was 'Abdu'lláh, and his father Dádawayh (Dádú'ê) was a Magian by religion, and one of the fiscal agents of the Arab government in Fars. Being accused of embezzlement, he was tortured so that his skin was shrivelled and contracted (*tagaffa^cat*), for which reason he received the sobriquet of *al-Muqaffa^c*, "the Shrivelled". His son 'Abdu'lláh, better known as Ibnu'l-Muqaffa^c, was converted to Islam by 'Alí b. 'Isá (f. 6a), the primary cause of his conversion being the impression produced on him by the seventh and following verses of Sura LXXVIII of the Qur'an, which he heard a child reciting aloud. He was on terms of intimate friendship with Khalil b. Ahmad al-Furhád¹. A certain man of learning was asked his opinion concerning them. He replied, "Khalil's understanding exceeds his learning, while Ibnu'l-Muqaffa^c's learning exceeds his understanding". One day Ibnu'l-Muqaffa^c, while passing by a fire-temple, recited this verse:

بِ بَيْتِ عَنْكَةَ أَنْتَ تَغْرِي خَلَرَ أَعْلَى وَيَهْ أَنْفَوْدَ مُوْلَى

¹ See de Slane's translation of Ibn Khallikan, Vol. I, p. 493—498, especially the last paragraph on p. 495.

When this was reported to the Caliph he said, "He is not yet a good Muslim," and ordered him to be cast alive into an oven. It is related by al-Jáhidh¹ in his *Kitabu 'l-Bayán wa't-Tabyin* that when Ibnu'l-Muqaffa^c was handed over to the tormentor (صاحب مسكنة), he said to him, "Thou hast money and wealth; if thou wilt pay into the Exchequer the sum demanded from me, I will return you double or treble the amount, and will never divulge the matter, for thou knowest me faithful in the guarding of secrets." The tormentor, moved by coveteousness, paid the money and saved him from death and torture. It is also related [apparently by al-Jáhidh] that a certain Hashim, gaoler to Yúsuf 'Umar [ath-Thaqafí], used to keep a register of all the prisoners who had died in prison, and submit it to Yusuf. 'Abdu'lláh b. Abí Burda [b.] Abí Musá al-Ash'arí, being in prison, offered this man a thousand *dirhams* to include his name in this list (f. 6b), and so effect his release. This was done, but the Amír, on receiving the report, said, "Bring his corpse before me." So the gaoler, being afraid, went back to the prison and smothered him with a cushion, so that his device cost him both his money and his life.²

[Here follows the translation of Ibnu'l-Muqaffa^c's version of Tansar's letter to Jasnasf, the king of Tabaristán. As this portion of the work has been published and translated, with excellent notes and comments, by the late Professor James Darmesteter (Journal Asiatique for 1894, series IX, vol. iii, pp. 185—250 and 502—555), it is omitted in this abstract. That this document rests on an authentic basis seems to be beyond doubt. See Darmesteter, loc. cit., pp. 185—192.]

¹ Abú 'Uthmán 'Amr b. Bah̄r al-Jáhidh^b of Baṣra was a prolific and learned writer, and died in A. H. 255 = A. D. 869. For a list of his works, see Carl Brockelmann's *Gesch. d. Arab. Litt.*, Vol. I, pp. 152—153. For MSS. of the *Kitabu 'l-Bayán wa't-Tabyin* preserved in the Constantinople libraries, see the *J. R. A. S.* for Jan. 1901, p. 172. It was printed in Cairo in A. H. 1313.

² [Cf. Ibn Khallikán, de Slane's translation, Vol. IV, pp. 441—442. A. G. E.]

(F. 20b). The kingdom of Tabaristán remained in the hands of Jasnasf's descendants until the time of Pírúz († A. D. 484), but when the Turks invaded Khurásán and the confines of Tabaristán in the reign of his son Qubád (Kawádh, A. D. 488—531), it was decided in Council that Kayús¹, the King's eldest son, should be appointed ruler of that province. So matters remained till the glorious reign of Núshírwán, concerning whom Jábir b. 'Abdi'lláh al-Anṣári questioned the Prophet of God, saying, "How hath God dealt with Kisrá and Caesar?" The Prophet answered, "I asked my brother Gabriel this same question, and he said, 'I was desirous to ask God concerning this matter, when behold, a voice came from God's Throne, saying, 'I would not torment in hell-fire kings who made my lands flourishing and my servants prosperous.''" The Umayyad Caliphs (f. 21a), on the other hand, though they professed Islám, are universally condemned for their tyranny and injustice.

One of the early Persian converts to Islám, in answer to the enquiries of the Prophet's companions as to which was the greatest and best of their kings, named Ardashír Babakan, in proof of whose wisdom and clemency he related the following anecdote. Once, in a year of drought, the people petitioned him for help. Thereupon he issued this proclamation: "When rain is scarce, the rain-clouds of the King are generous; therefore distribute amongst them what they have lost." Núshírwán (A. D. 531—578) imitated him in maintaining good practices and suppressing evil innovations, and was especially opposed to the promotion of persons of mean origin to positions of trust, as is shewn by the following anecdote².

¹ See Nöldeke's *Gesch. d. Sasaniden*, pp. 147, n. 1, and 436a.

² Cf. p. 608 of Zotenberg's ed. and transl. of ath-Tha'álibi's *Histoire des Rois des Perses* (Paris, 1900). Cf. also Darmesteter in the *Journal Asiatique* for 1894 (Series IX, Vol. iii), p. 519. An Arabic version of the story is given in Vol. ii of the *Majāni'l-Adab*, pp. 208—209.

Anecdote.

King Núshírwán, being once in need of money for a campaign, instructed his minister to raise the sum required by a loan from the merchants and capitalists. The minister accordingly consulted one of the chief merchants, who at once offered himself to pay the money into the Royal Treasury, asking in return that his only son, a man of remarkable intelligence, in whose education he had for thirty years spared no pains, might be admitted to the government service (f. 22a), and given a suitable rank and title. When this proposal was submitted to the king, he replied, "When the children of the base-born are educated, they seek high offices, obtaining which they seek to abase the noble and the well-born, and to humble the great and mighty; but I will protect the honour of the noble from being shared by base and evil men." The merchant, on hearing this answer, was deeply disappointed, but entreated the minister at least to accept the money, and to honour him by being his guest at a banquet. To this the minister consented, and on the morrow was entertained at an epoch-making banquet (ك). When evening approached (وَلَمَّا الْبَلَلَ نَبَار), wine was brought in, and they sat down to drink. A lamp-stand was set down before the minister, and, at a sign from the merchant, a trained cat ran in, lifted up this lamp-stand in its two paws, and placed it on its head, where it held it. The minister at once perceived that the merchant's object in this exhibition was to say by implication, "If I can so train and educate a cat, which has no rational soul (f. 22b), how can it be supposed that I should fail in the case of my own son, who is endowed with so many natural talents?" Thereupon the minister secretly ordered one of his companions to go and fetch a mouse and shew it to the cat. As soon as the cat saw it, it dropped the lamp

(الْأَدِيب). When evening approached (وَلَمَّا الْبَلَلَ نَبَار), wine was brought in, and they sat down to drink. A lamp-stand was set down before the minister, and, at a sign from the merchant, a trained cat ran in, lifted up this lamp-stand in its two paws, and placed it on its head, where it held it. The minister at once perceived that the merchant's object in this exhibition was to say by implication, "If I can so train and educate a cat, which has no rational soul (f. 22b), how can it be supposed that I should fail in the case of my own son, who is endowed with so many natural talents?" Thereupon the minister secretly ordered one of his companions to go and fetch a mouse and shew it to the cat. As soon as the cat saw it, it dropped the lamp

and rushed towards the mouse; the lamp-oil was upset, some of it on the clothes and hair of the guests. The merchant, overcome with shame, would have retired to his private apartments, but the minister summoned him and said, "I have no doubt as to your son's capacity or training, but at the first promotion which he gets, he will make such disturbance as did this cat at the sight of the mouse." It has been said:

تُولَّ الْعُقُولُ لَكُلِّ أَدْنَى ضَيْغِمَةٍ أَنْتَى لَهُ شَرَفٌ يَنْسَبُ

and again:

تَكْلِبُ كَلْبٌ وَلَمْ كُنْتُ فَلَادَتْهُ صُفْرٌ أَلْدَنَّيْرُ أَوْ حَمْرٌ أَلْيَوَاقِبَتْ

Though Sámír's Calf (f. 23a) was of gold, it was only a calf.

إِنْ أَلْحِمَارَ وَلَمْ يَحْلِ فَضَّةٌ أَوْ سِبَعَ يَنْعَبُ لَكُلِّ حَمَارٍ

Here follows a further dissertation on the impossibility of "making a silk purse out of a sow's ear", concluding with the verse:

از کوشش واز دویدن و خدمت کس
افزدن نشود بذرّه قسمت کس

Anecdote.

It is related that one day 'Abdu'l-Malik b. Qurayb al-Asma'i, seeing the poet al-'Attábi in the presence of Faql b. Rabi', reproached him for wearing such shabby clothes; whereupon the other retorted that a delight in fine apparel was only for women, and that a man was exalted by greatness of heart and high resolve, a silent tongue and an unselfish spirit (f. 23b).

فَسَمِّعَ يَنْسَبُ سَبِيْفَ جَفَنِيْنَ سَمَّقَ دَسَمَ يَنْسَبُ تَحْتَيْنَ تَيْوَسَ

Man is not ennobled by wealth:

سَلْ اَكْرَمِ سَلَيْلِ خَرَانِ نَشْدِيْلِ حَلْقَهْ فَرْجِ اسْتَرَانِ نَشْدِيْلِ

Here follow short and rather irrelevant anecdotes of sundry Sufi saints, *viz.* Hátim "the deaf" (*al-ṣamm*), Báyazid of Bisṭám and Abú Sa'íd Khwár (f. 24a), followed by reflections on Divine Providence and human effort, and the depravity and rebelliousness natural to man when his affairs prosper.

بَسْرَمَا وَكَرْمَهْ چَنَانِ نَشْكِيْلِيْهِ كَهْ اَزْ خَانَهْ نَائِيْهِ هَمِيْهِ تَهْ بِيرَزَنِ

زَكْرَمَا بَسْرَمَا زَسْرَمَا هَمِيْرَهْ مَكْسَ گَشْتِيْهِ اَيْ رَوْسِيْهِ خَوَاعِرِ دَزَنِ

'Ámir b. 'Abd Qays used to say (f. 24b) that though all worldly wealth should depart from him he would be fearful, because of three verses in the Qur'an (xi, 8; xxxv, 2; and x, 107). More traditions on the Divine Providence follow; *e.g.*:

اَنْرِزْقَ يَعْلَمُ بَعْدَ كَمَا يَتَلَبَّهُ اَجْلَهُ

اَنْ لَعْلَمْ وَلَا قَدَرْ جَرِيْهَهْ اَنْ لَذِيْهِ هُوَ رِزْقِيْهِ سَوْفَ يَأْتِيْنِيْهِ

Here follow anecdotes of Sufyán-i-Thawrí and Málík Dínár, two famous Sufi saints (f. 25a), and of Abú 'Abdi'r-Rahmán Ziyád b. An'am al-Ifriqí. The latter was in earlier life a fellow-student of Abú Ja'far al-Manṣúr, afterwards second Caliph of the House of 'Abbás. One day Manṣúr invited him to a meal at his lodging. The meal was of the simplest: there was no meat, no sweets, not even dates. Manṣúr, on learning from his maid-servant that even dates were lacking, sighed and recited Qur'an vii, 126. Long afterwards, when he had become Caliph, Ziyád again stood before him. "O Abú 'Abdi'r-Rahmán!" said the Caliph, "I have heard that thou hast advantaged the Umayyads." "Yes," replied Ziyád, "they reaped advantage from me." "And how was their rule?" enquired the Caliph, "and what thinkest thou of mine?" "Of their rule," replied Ziyád, "I saw this, that thou didst take me to thy house and give me to eat with

out meat, and recite the verse, 'It may be that your Lord will destroy your foe, and will make you succeed him in the earth.' God hath destroyed thine enemy and made thee Caliph (f. 26b): see what thou wilt do, and be not of those referred to in the verse (Qur'an xcvi, 6) 'Verily man waxeth insolent, because he seeth himself abound in riches.' Know that the Devil hath no more potent weapon than tempting man to sin to-day and to repent to-morrow."

Anecdote.

It is related on the authority of Abú Hamza ath-Thumáli¹ that the [fourth] Imám 'Alí b. al-Husayn Zaynu'l-Abidin said to him: "One day I came forth from al-Madina, and while I stood in thought, leaning against this wall, a man clad in two white garments, one over the other, accosted me, saying, 'O 'Alí son of al-Husayn! I see thee sorrowful: if it be on account of this world's provision, God is guarantee therefor.' 'No,' I replied, 'my sorrow is not for this.' 'Then,' said he, 'dost thou grieve for the future life? For that is God's promise, which He is able to fulfil.' 'No,' I replied; 'it is not for this, for I know that what thou sayest is true.' 'Then,' said he, 'since thou grieve neither for this world nor the next, for what dost thou grieve?' 'I grieve,' said I, 'for the mischief wrought by fools, and the contempt I suffer at their hands.' Then the man laughed in my face and said, 'O 'Alí son of al-Husayn! Didst thou ever see one who trusted in God and was disappointed?' 'No,' I replied. 'Didst thou ever,' he replied, 'see anyone who sought anything from God which He did not vouchsafe to him?' 'No,' I replied. And straightway the man vanished from my eyes."

¹ [i.e. Thábit b. Abi Ṣahíyya Dínár (d. A. H. 150). Cf. Najáši (ed. Bombay, A. H. 1317), p. 83; Tusi's *Fihrist*, p. 71; Astarabadi's *Mahājūl-maqāl* (Persian ed. of A. H. 1307), p. 74; *Muṭahāl-maqāl* Tíhrán, A. H. 1302], p. 343. The text has *al-Yamáni* by mistake for *ath-Thumáli*. A. G. E.]

Anecdote.

It is related by Ḥusayn b. Ḥamza, from Abú Ḥamza¹, from Sa‘d², from Abú Ja‘far Muḥammad b. ‘Alī, generally known as [the fifth Imám, Muḥammad] Bágir (المعروف بباقر آل رسول الله)، that ‘Umar b. ‘Abdi'l-‘Azíz during the time of his Caliphate (A. D. 717—720) visited al-Madína, and caused proclamation to be made there that anyone who had suffered wrong at the hands of the Umayyads should present himself before him and receive compensation, so far as was possible. The Imám Bágir presented himself, and al-Muzahim (المزاحم), ‘Umar’s client, notified the fact to his master, who bade him enter, and forthwith fell to weeping. When the Imam entered he found ‘Umar in tears (f. 26a), and enquired as to the cause of his sorrow. Being informed, he turned to ‘Umar and said:

يَا عَمِّ اتَّمَا أَنْدَبِي سُوقٌ مِنْ (الْسَّوْقِ مِنْبَاهُ خَرَجَ قَوْمٌ بِمَا يَنْفَعُهُمْ وَمِنْهَا خَرَجَ [الْخَرْدُونَ] بِمَا يَضُرُّهُمْ وَكُمْ مِنْ قِيمٍ قَدْ ضَرَّتْهُمْ مِثْلُ الَّذِي أَصْبَحَنَا فِيهِ حَتَّى أَذْعَمَنَا مُوتَّ،

Anecdote.

‘Alī, seeing ‘Ammár b. Yásir sad and sorrowful one day, consoled him in the following words:

عَلَمْ تَنْفَسُكَ يَا عَمَّارَ إِنْ كَانَ عَلَى الْآخِرَةِ قَدْ أَخْبَرَكَ رَسُولُ اللهِ يَا تَكْ تَقْتُلُكَ أَنْفُسُ الْبَاغِيَةِ وَإِنْ كَانَ عَلَى الدُّنْيَا فَمَا تَسْحَقُ أَنْ يُوسُى عَلَيْهَا

¹ [i. e. Ḥusayn b. Ḥamza al-Laythí, grandson, by a daughter, of Abú Ḥamza. Cf. Najáshí, p. 40; *Manhaj*, p. 112; *Muntahá*, p. 119. The text has Ḥasan b. Ḥamza, but the only Ḥasan b. Ḥamza recorded in the Shi‘a books of “*Rijál*” died in A. H. 358. A. G. E.].

² [Either Sa‘d b. Tarif al-Ḥandhalí (Najáshí, p. 127; *Fihrist*, p. 152; *Manhaj*, p. 159; *Muntahá*, p. 144), or Sa‘d b. Sa‘d b. al-Āḥwāṣ al-Āsh‘arí (Najáshí, p. 127; *Fihrist*, p. 151; *Muntahá*, p. 144), both of whom received traditions from the Imám Abú Ja‘far. A. G. E.].

فَنَّ مَلَازِمًا فِي سَتَّ اِنْكُولْ وَانْشُرُوبْ وَانْلِبِيُوسْ وَانْشِمُومْ وَالْمِرْكُوبْ وَانْكُوكْ، فَمَا اِنْكُولْ فَفَضَلَهُ الْعَسْلُ وَمَا عَوْقَى، ذِبَابَةٌ وَمَا اِنْشُرُوبْ فَفَضَلَهُ اِنْاءٌ وَهُوَ مِبَاحٌ لَا شَمْنَاهُ وَمَا اِنْلِبِيُوسْ فَفَضَلَهُ الدِّبِيَاجُ وَمَا عَوْنَى نَعَابَةٌ دُودَةٌ وَمَا اِنْشِمُومْ فَفَضَلَهُ اِنْمِسَكُ وَمَا عَوْنَى بَعْضُ دَمٍ وَمَا اِنْكُوكْ فَفَضَلَهُ اِنْسَاءٌ وَمَا عَوْنَى مَبَالٌ فِي مَبَالٍ وَمَا اِنْرِكُوبْ فَفَضَلَهُ الْحَيْلَ وَعَلَى ضَبَيرِعَا يُقْتَلُ الرِّجَالُ، قَلْ فَوَاللَّهِ مَا أَسِبَّتْ عَلَى شَيْءٍ بَعْدَهُ،

The following admonition is also ascribed to ‘Alī:

اِذَا اَرَدْتَ اِنْصَاحَ بَنْتَهُ يَكْفِيْكَ وَاذَا اَرَدْتَ اِنْرِفِيقَ فَنَدَامَ الْكَاتِبِينَ يَكْفِيْكَ وَاذَا اَرَدْتَ اِنْوَسَ فَتَقْرَآنَ يَكْفِيْكَ وَاذَا اَرَدْتَ اِنْوَعْنَةَ فَمُونَ يَكْفِيْكَ فَلَمْ يَكْفِكَ مَا قَلْتَ فَنَتَرَ يَوْمَ اِنْقِيْمَةَ تَكْفِيَارَ

Anecdote.

One day Ḥasan of Baṣra was passing by a group of people who were speaking ill of Ḥajjáj b. Yúsuf. He said to them:

أَنَّ الْحَجَاجَ عَقْوَةَ اللَّهِ عَلَيْكُمْ فَلَا تَسْتَقْبِلُوْنَ بِاِنْسَابٍ وَالْعَنْ وَانْشَتَمْ وَثَلَنْ اِسْتَقْبِلُوْنَ بِاِنْسَابٍ وَالْتَّضَرُّعِ وَالْاِبْتِيَالِ إِلَى اللَّهِ تَعَالَى وَالْبَدَأِ، حَتَّى يَكْفِيْهُمْ عِنْدَمْ قَوْلُوْنَ اِنْلِبِمَ (fol. 26b) حَوْنَانَا مِنْ ذَلِكَ اِنْعَصِيَّةَ إِلَى غَرَّ اِنْتِبَوْنَةَ وَبَدَلَ عَذَّلَ اِعْقَوْبَةَ بَارْجَمَةَ

“I heard,” adds the author, “from a certain pious man in the city of Khwárazm, that the Children of Israel made complaint before one of their prophets, saying, ‘Say unto God, ‘What have we done that Thou hast set over us one who knoweth Thee not, and hast afflicted us at the hands of a people who do not confess Thy Lordship, seeing that we confess Thee and magnify Thee?’’ But God revealed to the prophet the following message to them: ‘Verily when those who know Me rebel against me, I set over them one who knoweth Me not.’’

Section I, ch. II.

First settlement of the kingdom of Ṭabaristán and its cities.

Farshwádgar¹ is bounded by Ádharbayján, Áhár, Ṭabaristán, Gilán, Daylam, Ray, Qúmis, Dámghán and Gurgán, and was first so defined by Minúchihr Sháh. As regards its etymology, some say that it means "Live safe and sound" (بَاشْ خَوْرَ اَيْ عِشْ سَانِمَا صَالِحَا), but certain natives of Ṭabaristán assert that *farsh* means "plain" (*hámún*), *wád* "highlands" (*kúhistán*), and *gar* "sea", and that the name therefore signifies "land of mountain, plain and sea"; this interpretation, however, is modern. Older authorities say that *gar* (*jar*) means mountainous land susceptible of cultivation, where thickets and trees are found, *Far-sháh* (or *Gar-sháh*) being an ancient title of the descendants of Súkhrá, the meaning of which is "King of the mountains"¹. The name Mázandarán is more recent. Its king was killed by Rustam the son of Zál. It was originally called "Múz-andarún", because Múz was the name of a mountain on the confines of Gilán extending as far as Lár, Qaṣrán and Jájarm; and since this territory was "within [the mountains of] Múz", it received this name. But as for what belongs to Ṭabaristán, from Dínár-jári on the east to a village called Malát, beyond Húsam on the west², they say that in ancient days it was all jungle and forest, lagoon and fen, mountain and sea

¹ This, as pointed out by Darmesteter (*loc. cit.*, p. 507, n. 3 *ad calc.*) is a corruption of the ancient *Patashkhwár*, a name properly applied to the chain of mountains which separates Ṭabaristán from Iráq.

² So al-Bírúní says (*Chronology of Ancient Nations*, Sachau's transl., p. 107): "The Persians call the first man *Gayōmarth*, with the surname *Girsháh*, i. e. 'King of the Mountain'..." See also Justi's *Iranisches Namenbuch*, p. 111, *s. v.* *Garsháh*.

Cf. Dorn's ed. of *Dhahíru'd-Dín*, p. 19 where the substance of this passage is reproduced.

(f. 27a), and that until the time of Jamshíd it was in the possession of the demons. He conquered them, and bade them level the mountains with the plains, fill up the lakes, drain the fens into the sea, open up the country, and distribute the rivers and streams. He also caused castles to be made and duly provisioned for the highlanders, and brought water from the mountains to the plains; and so they held Ṭabaristán for a hundred years or more. Thereafter he brought craftsmen and artificers into that province, assigning land to each, and giving the wise and prudent authority over the others. The oldest settlement is Láriján, where, in the village of Waraka (ورکه¹), Ferídún was born; which happened in this wise. When Dahák the Arab (دَهَّاك تَزْعِي) hewed Jamshíd in pieces, the family and descendants of that unfortunate king fled away and hid themselves wherever they could, and the mother of Ferídún and her attendants took refuge in the above-mentioned village, which is at the foot of Mount Damáwand. On the birth of Ferídún, they migrated to the more fertile Jíláb (or Chaláb: *Dhahíru'd-Dín*, p. 11, شَلَاب), where pasture is abundant and the people live by cattle-farming. When Ferídún was seven years old, he used to fix a guiding-rope in the noses of the cattle and ride them², so that one would say that heaven was reflected on earth, and that a second "Sun" (i. e. Ferídún) was arising from "the Bull" (the Sign of Taurus). Later, the other youths had recourse to him for protection and guidance, and he, mounted on a cow (f. 27b), used to go forth with them to the chase. After a time they migrated towards Lafúr (لفور; *Dhahír*, p. 12, مَوْجَهَوْ), and were joined by the Máiwjákúh (مَوْجَهَوْ; *Dhahír*, مَوْجَهَوْ), and were joined by the

¹ *Dhahíru'd-Dín*, p. 11, where the name stands درکه, or درکه.

² *Ibid.*, p. 13.

people of Ummídwár-kúh and Kúh-i-Qárín, who made for the young prince the famous cow-headed mace. As his fame waxed greater, the number of his followers increased, until he felt himself strong enough to invade 'Iráq. On reaching Isfahán he was joined by the blacksmith Káwa, and, acting in conjunction with him, took Dahák captive.

نَهْ فَرِيدُونْ گَادْ پَهْرَوْنْ كَرْدْ شِيرْ گُسْنَهْرَزْ بَرْدَهْ
نَهْ بِيَارَقْ وَسْعَيْ يَكْ دَوْ بِيَا بَسْتَدْ أَزْ بَيُورَسْبْ مَلَكْ نَيَا

Having brought the fallen tyrant to his native village for one night, he conveyed him on the following day to the summit of Mount Dámiáwand, where he left him, bound and helpless, in a cave or pit which is still pointed out. Then, having established his authority over the Seven Climes, he took up his abode in Tammísha, where the ruins of his Palace are still apparent at a place called Bá-naṣrán¹ (بَانَصْرَانْ), also the domes and cupolas of his bath, and the remains of the moat which he caused to be dug from the mountain to the sea. These, the author remarks, he had often seen and examined. Firdawsi says:

فَرِيدُونْ فَرَّخْ تَمِيشَهْ بَكَرْدْ نَشَستْ انْدَرَ آنْ نَامُورْ بَيْشَهْ كَرْدْ

This forest is also called in the books *Bisha-i-Nárwan* ("the Forest of wild Pomegranates"), and the river Báwul (now Bábúl) waters the country to this day. When Karshásf went to China, he sent the Emperor of that kingdom, bound with golden chains and accompanied by eighty other princes, in the custody of Nárimán to Ferídún, who was then in Tammísha.

The Foundation of Sári.

Sári was founded in ancient times by Tús the son of Núdhár, at a place called Túsán to this day. In the time of

Kay-Khusraw (f. 28a), Fársburz, fearing the king's wrath because of some fault which he had committed, fled thither and took refuge with the family of Núdhár, till Rustam came with a great army and carried him before Kay-Khusraw, who forgave him. The site of a castle built by him is still visible at a place called Lúman Dún (لُومَانْ دُونْ)¹. Sári itself was ordered to be built in the time of the Great Farrukhán, king of Tabaristán, by Báv, one of his nobles, on the site of the village of Awhar (أَوْهَرْ), which was chosen because of its high position, abundant streams, and pleasant surroundings. The inhabitants, however, bribed Báv to leave them in peace and choose another site, where Sári actually stands. The king, on becoming aware of his disobedience, cast him into bondage, and caused him to be hanged at the place called in consequence of this *Báv-áviján* (بَأْوَهَجِنْ), while with the money taken as a bribe he built a village called *Dinár-Kafshin* (دِينَارْ كَفْشِينْ). The Mosque of Sári was built in the reign of Hárúnu'r-Rashíd by the Amír Yahyá b. Yahyá, and completed by Mázyár b. Qárín. The four-doored dome (گَنْدَلْ جَهَارْ دَرْ) which stands opposite to the Palace of Bávandán was included by the late king Ardashír in his private garden. It was originally built by Minuchihr Sháh, but fell into dilapidation in the time of the Ispahbad Khurshíd Gávbán. It was then repaired², and is now so strong that it is impossible to detach a single brick from the fabric.

The Foundation of Rúyán.

Its first foundation was in the time of Ferídún (f. 28b). When his sons Túr and Salm slew their brother Íraj, he left a daughter in the district of Lafúr at Máwjakúh. Ferí

¹ See Dorn's *Dhahíru'd-Dín*, p. 29.

² *Dhahír*, p. 30.

dún was then at a very advanced age, and his eyebrows drooped so that they had to be bound up. His earnest prayer was that he might live to see the death of his favourite son 'Irāj avenged, and he gave the daughter of 'Irāj in marriage to one of his nephews. When a child was born to her, it was shewn to the aged Ferídún, who said, "Máñad chihr-ash bi-chihr-i-Írāj" ("His face resembles the face of 'Irāj")¹, so he was called *Manuchihr*; and, as is set forth in the verse and prose *Sháhnámas* of Firdawsi and Mu'ayyidi, he avenged his grandfather 'Irāj ere Ferídún departed from this world. Here are cited the well-known verses of Firdawsi:

فَرِيدُونْ فَرَّخْ فَرِشْتَهْ نَبُودْ زَمْشَكْ دَرْ عَنْبَرْ سَرْشَتَهْ نَبُودْ
بَدَادْ وَدَعْشَ يَافَتْ آنْ نِيكَوْنَىْ تَوْ دَادْ وَدَعْشَ كَنْ كَهْ فَرَّخْ تَوْنَىْ

Thereafter Pashang, the son of Afrásiyáb came with a great army to Dahistán to avenge the death of Salm. Minúchihr, king at Iştakhr in Fárs², ordered Qárin [the son of] Gáwa, his brother Qubád, and Arish of Ray to oppose his advance. Afrásiyáb, having been worsted several times by the Persians, had recourse to a kind of treacherous stratagem of which, as Arab writers assert, he was the inventor. He wrote to Qárin saying, "I have received your letter and have taken note of your professions of loyalty towards me. When I take the kingdom of Persia, I promise, as God is my witness, to hand it over to you." Afrásiyáb then arranged that the messenger who bore this letter should fall into the hands of a Persian noble who was in the confidence of Minúchihr and ill-disposed towards Qárin. This noble (f. 29a), having read the letter, at once reported the matter to Minúchihr, who, entirely deceived by Afrásiyáb's

¹ This is a fair sample of the etymologies which the Persians are so ready to invent.

² See Dorn's *Dhahir*, p. 14.

³ *Dhahir*, p. 15.

cunning ruse (for Qárin was perfectly loyal and meditated no treachery), ordered Qárin to be brought before him, and made over the command of the army to Arish. As soon as Qárin was thus removed, Afrásiyáb attacked the Persians and drove them back on 'Iráq. Then at length Minúchihr perceived that he had been duped, and reinstated Qárin in his command. Qárin advanced to Ray with his army. Afrásiyáb pitched his camp آنجا که دولاپ و نیرانست (گنبد), and daily gained some advantage over Minúchihr, who ordered the Castle of Ṭabarak to be constructed, and there, a year later, after many serious defeats, he was obliged to take refuge. At that date the city stood over against the spot afterwards occupied by the Cupola of Fakhru'd-Dawla شیپنجه فخر الدوّله, which place they now call¹ in Ray *Diz-i-Rashkán*, and it remained thus till the time of the Daylamites of the House of Buwayh, "and," adds the author, "in the house of the Sháhib Ibn 'Abbád I have seen a mound like a hill [which marks its site]." Minúchihr came from Ṭabarak to the city, fortified the walls, and abode there six months, when he was compelled to flee and escape by way of Láriján to Ṭabaristán, while Afrásiyáb made the wide world narrow to him as the eye of a needle:

كَنْ بَلَادْ تَلَهْ وَكَنْ عَرِيْصَهْ عَلَى الْحَنْفَ أَنْتَلَوْ نَفَهْ حَابَلْ

Afrásiyáb pursued him into Ṭabaristán until he reached the limits of Rúyán, a village called Mánahar (مانهار). There, in one face of the mountain, is a great cavern, to the end of which no man hath ever penetrated, and in it Minúchihr concealed his treasures and stores. In the time of Hasan b. Yahyá al-'Alawí², called *kúchak* ("the Little"), this cave was entered, and much wealth found there. Afrásiyáb alighted at a village called Khusraw-ábád near Amul (f. 29b), which

¹ *Dhahir*, p. 16.

² *Dhahir*, p. 17.

village still existed in the time of Washmgír (A. D. 935—967) the son of Ziyár, the father of Qábús. Above this village was a tree called *Sháti-mázi-bun* (شات مازی بن), beneath which Afrásiyáb pitched his tent for twelve years, and during all this time Minúchihr had need of nothing which is imported from foreign countries except pepper, in place of which they used to eat a herb¹ called *kalij* (کلیج), in order that their bodies might be able to resist the moisture of the climate. Finally Afrásiyáb concluded peace with Minúchihr (since he could not capture him) on the understanding that he should surrender to him one bowshot's width of territory. Arish thereupon shot an arrow from there to Merv, a statement recorded in many Persian and Arabic books, both verse and prose²; which some say that he achieved by virtue of some talisman or charm. This is one of the two shots in which the Persians glory, the other being the shot wherewith, in the reign of Kisrá (Anúshírwán), Wahriz slew the king of the Abyssinians³. From the conclusion of this war dates the prosperity of Rúyán, and the depopulation of this region (?Tabarak), for King Minúchihr thereafter established himself in Tabaristán.

Foundation of Amul⁴.

There were two brothers from the country of Daylam, one named Ashtád (f. 30a), the other Yazdán, who, because they had slain one of the nobles of Daylam with an arrow (بنفنگ), were obliged, with their families, to flee from their country. They settled near Amul, where the one founded

¹ *Dhahir*, p. 18.

² See, for instance, my edition of Dawlatsháh, pp. 60—61.

³ This story is so well known that I omit the meagre version here given. See Nöldeke's *Gesch. d. Sasaniden*, p. 233 and *J. R. A. S.* for April, 1900, p. 229—230.

⁴ *Dhahir*, p. 22.

the village of Yazdánábád and the other the hamlet of Ashtád, both of which exist to this day. Ashtád had a very beautiful daughter. The great king of that time was named Firúz, and had his capital at Balkh. One night he dreamed of this maiden, and on awaking cried¹:

صبح آمد و خوشید من از من بربود
خیلک فی الکری و گفت اتنایا و من سلسل ریقک قد سقانا
و یک معاشقی تیلا تهاما فلتما بان وجه آنستی با

In vain did the king strive to expel her image from his mind:

قضی الله ما لا استطیع دفعه ما کان لی ممّا قضی الله عصم

Love so wasted his frame that:

لَوْلَانَ الاشْعَرِيَ رَأَى يَوْمًا لَسْمَى بَعْدَهُ أَمْعَدَوْمَ شِيعَا

He then reflected within himself that the concealment of this secret was injuring his health (f. 30b):

شَفَانِی لَمْ أَفْشَیْتُ سَرَّكَ فِي أَنْبَوَا
كَذِلِکَ أَسْرَرَ أَبْيَقَ لَمْ فَشَتْ شَفَتْ

and finally submits a very rhetorical statement of his condition to the chief Múbad (f. 31a)², who is greatly vexed and perturbed, declaring the king to be the victim of demoniacal possession, reproaching him for his unreasonable passion, and advising him to have recourse to a physician (f. 31b). The king endeavoured for a few days longer to get the better of his passion, and then, in accordance with the proverb, "Man eagerly desires that which is forbidden him," and the verses:

¹ *Dhahir*, p. 23.

² This is much simplified and abbreviated in *Dhahir*, p. 23.

مرا عشق است و جز من مردمان را ازین نوع بسیار افتادست
ملامت چون کنم خودرا نه زاوی زین آئین این کار افتادست
he summoned his ministers and issued orders to all the Wardens of his Marches (*marzubāns*) to seek for the original of that vision. For some time their efforts met with no success, and the king's melancholy increased, until at length he entreated one of his relatives named Mihr Firuz to undertake the quest, promising him a rich reward¹ if he should be successful (f. 32a). Mihr Firuz declared that he would leave no stone unturned in his endeavour to find the king's desire:

فَتَرَبَّ مَعَ الْجَنْفِنِ إِنْ مَسْنَى الْعَدَا
وَأَكَلَ لَهُمْ أَكْفَ إِنْ كُنْتُ أَغْرَثُ

He then questioned the soldiers as to what regions they had left unexplored, and they replied that they had traversed the East and the West, all Persia and Arabia, save only Tabaristán. So on that very day Mihr Firuz set out from Balkh for Tabaristán, followed by a caravan of provisions for the journey and costly presents, until he came to Túsán (شہرستان طوسان), whence, aided by the governor, he pursued his search, grudging no expenditure, for rather more than a year, but met with no success. At length, accompanied by a few followers, he set off to explore the country lying towards the sea-coast. One day, near Ahlam (علم), his horse was drowned while he was fording a stream, and he himself with difficulty reached the further shore. Unable to return, he plunged into the forest, when at length he came upon a clear and beautiful stream, which he followed up till he reached the fountain which was its source.² There, to his amazement, he saw a girl whose appearance exactly

corresponded with her whom the king had seen in his vision. He said to himself, "If she be a *jinniyya*, I will kill her (f. 32b), but if she be a human being, it is she whom I seek." So he drew his sword and advanced towards the fountain. The girl looked up at him and said, "O youth, who art thou, and what is thy name, and what dost thou here? For I wonder to see such an one as thyself in this place." Mihr Firuz replied, "I am a human being. Tell me, now, of thy condition and family." "I too," replied the girl, "am of the human race; my home is in this place; and I have two fathers, to wit my father and his brother, and likewise a mother and many brothers." The girl, on Mihr Firuz's request, consented to take him to her home, and, on reaching it, informed her mother of his arrival. Her mother received him with the utmost respect and courtesy, and sent her youngest son to summon her husband and his brothers, who came with all speed, and, after the fashion of Daylam, entertained him for three days without questioning him as to his business or condition. When, after this period, they enquired as to who he was and what had brought him to the country, he informed them that he was one of the nobles of the King, and had come thither for solitude and the chase, and described his separation from his companions, the loss of his horse, and his meeting with the girl. "Know," he concluded, "that I am not one of whom you need be ashamed, or who has need of your wealth or possessions. If you see fit, then give me this girl in marriage." "Thine appearance," said the father and mother, "sufficiently indicates thy nobility¹, and thy courtesy thy virtue (f. 33a); how then should we not desire thee as a son-in-law?" Then they related to him their history, and how they had been compelled to flee from

¹ *Dhahir*, p. 24.

² *Dhahir*, p. 25.

¹ *Dhahir*, p. 26.

their country, and added that they could promise nothing till they had consulted their elder brother. To him, accordingly, they went in company, and he received them with every honour, saying:

نگاه خوان عنکبوت آمد بیل
وی هیچ بیانه وی هیچ دلیل

On hearing the propose of Mihr-Fírúz he readily agreed to it, and Mihr Fírúz at once sent off a messenger for the presents and supplies which he had left at Túsan, informing the governor that he had fulfilled his quest, and bidding him notify the fact to the King. While one of the girl's brothers took this message, another sought out Mihr Fírúz's missing retainers. The King rejoiced greatly at the news, despatched valuable gifts, and ordered general illuminations and festivities (f. 33b). When the actual greatness of Mihr-Fírúz became apparent to Ashtád and Yazdán, they were overwhelmed with confusion, especially when he related to them the dream, and declared to them that it was not to himself, but to his master the king, that the girl was to be given in marriage. Then they sent off the girl in all haste to the Court, and when the king saw her, he at once recognized in her the original of his vision, and his love for her increased day by day. One day he asked her¹, "Why is it that the women of your country have such beautiful eyes, such fragrant mouths, and such soft skins?" She replied in her own language [of Tabaristán]²:

جاوید فرخ خسرو خدای انشه ور جاوید اج بامدادان سفر دین
چشم افروخ، آج تاوستان کنان وزمستان پرنسان پوشین تن افروخ،
آج سیر و انکسم خوردن دمش افروج،

The King applauded her answer and bade her crave a boon. She asked that a city might be built at Páy-i-Dasht,

her native place, situated above the river Hirhiz (هیریز), and called after her name. Engineers and surveyors were at once sent thither to prosecute the work, and that same year a son was born to her named Khusraw. She desired the king to send her thither for change of air, because the climate of Balkh did not agree with her. They told her that the engineers had been unable to bring the water of the river Hirhiz to the spot which she had indicated as the site of the city, so she ordered that its name should still remain Páy-i-Dasht¹; and there the signs of these buildings are apparent to this day (f. 34a). They called the place which the girl had chosen Sharistána-marz. The projected city was then transferred to the present site, called Ástána-saráy, but at first named Mátá (ماتا), now the site of the Great Mosque [of Amul], wherein was formerly a fountain which drew its water from the Mountain of Wandá-ummid, and which was still running in the time of al-Yazdádí (see p. 3 *supra*). And when they had brought the water thither, they built the city-wall of baked bricks, so thick that three horsemen could ride abreast along the top of it, and dug round about it a moat 33 cubits (ش) in depth, and a bow-shot across; and in the wall they made four Gates, called respectively "of Jurján", "of Gilán", "of the Mountain", and "of the Sea". The area of the city was 400 *jaribs* of land. The Palace of the king's wife, Amula, stood where the "Street of the Washermen" (کوچه کزران) now is, and behind the "Cloth-sellers' Market"; and her Tomb (دخمه) was in the same place. In the reign of Ardashír excavations were made here to a depth of two spears' lengths, and the sepulchre and surrounding buildings were disclosed. When the King's son Khusraw succeeded to the throne, he greatly enlarged Amul, and made it his capital and residence, sur-

¹ *Dhahir*, p. 27.

² For variants, cf. *Dhahir*, loc. cit., II. 3—5.

¹ *Dhahir*, p. 28.

rounding the original wall with another of clay. The space between the two walls they called *ربض*, and what lay beyond the outer wall *رُفَق*, "which terms," says the author, "occur frequently in old title-deeds". The meaning of the name Amul in their tongue is *آهوش*, both of these words meaning (f. 34b) "death", the sense here being "May death never touch thee!" (ترًا هرگز مرك مبار). It is related that when the Ispahbad Mázyár b. Qárin destroyed the walls of Amul¹, they found on the top of the Gate of Gurgán a green casket (بسوقة; *Dhahir*, p. 28, بستوقة), explained by Vüllers as a cervical vertebra) sealed with tin (قلع). The superintendent ordered it to be broken open, whereupon a small copper tablet bearing an inscription in the *kustaj* character² fell out. One who had skill in this character was summoned to read it, which, having mastered its contents, he could scarcely be induced to do. On it was written, "The good construct and the wicked destroy; whosoever destroys this shall not survive the year." And it was even so; for ere the end of the year Mázyár was taken captive and executed at Surra-man-ra'a (A. H. 224 = A. D. 839). The Great Mosque of Amul was built in the time of Hárúnu'r-Rashíd, in A. H. 177 (= A. D. 793—4), by Ibráhím b. 'Uthmán [b.] Nahík³. He could not at first buy the whole site required, until the grandfather of Abu'l-Hasan b. Hárún *al-Faqih*, who was named Anbárak, was converted to Islám and changed his name to Mubárak, whereupon he sold his house for this purpose, and others who possessed land in this quarter followed his example. When the Mosque was finished, they desired to ascertain the direction of the *qibla*, but it rained unceasingly for forty nights and days, and they were obliged

to have recourse to conjecture. The cost of the land occupied by the Mosque was 8032 *dinárs*, its length was 93 yards (ارش), its dome or roof (قبة), ten yards in length, contained 300,640 tiles (فسيب), and the cost of construction was 47,340 *dinárs*. In the time of Fírúz-Sháh, the original founder of the city, a ditch or moat was made from the frontier of Gurgán and Múqán, on the seashore, and traces of this moat, called "Fírúz-kanda" ("the Moat of Fírúz") are still visible in many places in Țabaristán, a fact on which al-Yazdádí has greatly insisted in his book. At the time of the foundation of Amul (f. 35a), a certain man possessed one *jarib* of land, which he refused to sell, lest his sons should forfeit the position of land-owners and sink to that of serfs. He appealed to the King, who admitted that he was right, and ordered him to receive an abundant payment for his little property.

Turicha (تریچ). The name of the place was originally Túrán-char (توران چر). In the time of Farrukhán the Great a treaty was concluded with the Turks whereby it was agreed that, in consideration of the payment of a tribute, they should abstain from invading Țabaristán. Two years later, having fortified the passes, the Persians refused to pay the tribute, and King Farrukhán retired to Fírúz-ábád, near Lafúr, and there entrenched himself. The Turks invaded Țabaristán, but Farrukhán fell upon them suddenly at night and slew them all. Túrán-char marks the site of this massacre.

Mám̄tir (مامتیر). This place was visited by the Imám Hasan b. 'Alí in the Caliphate of 'Umar, he being accompanied by an army of Arabs under Malik Ashtar an-Nakha'i¹, and because of the excellence of the site and its natural advantages, especially its good water and sweet-voiced birds,

¹ See Tabarí (ed. de Goeje), Ser. iii, Vol. ii, p. 1275.

² See *Fihrist*, p. 13 of text and p. 8 of the notes. Cf. Mas'údi's *Kitábu't-Tanbíh wa'l-Ishráf* (ed. de Goeje), p. 107.

³ See Tabarí, Ser. iii, pp. 651—706.

¹ See Baládhuri's *Futūh*, ed. de Goeje, pp. 164 and 228.

he said: **بَقْعَةٌ طَيِّبَةٌ مَا وَطَيِّبٌ**, and the last words of this sentence, *Má wa tir*, became corrupted into *Mamṭir*¹. When Muḥammad b. Khálid was governor of the province (f. 35b) he constructed there a market and other buildings, to which, in A. H. 160 (= A. D. 776-7) Mázyár b. Qárin added a Mosque.

Other important cities of Ṭabaristán beyond Tammísha.

Gurgán was founded by Gurgín son of Mílád². It was always the capital of the *marzubáns* of Ṭabaristán, and has a circuit of about four parasangs. Gurgín's ass-herds (*kharbandagán*) used to graze their beasts about Astarábád, which town sprung up to meet their needs and took its name from their mules (*astar*). The whole land, from Dínár-jáy³ to Maláṭ (which is the extreme limit of Ṭabaristán in that direction), and from Ray and Qúmis to the seashore, was well cultivated and thickly populated, and there were 28 cities within the district of Tammísha, each with its mosques, oratories, markets, judges, and men of learning, as follows:

In the Plain. (1) Amul, (2) Sári, (3) Mámṭir, (4) Rúbast, (5) Arazm (B. Ararm), (6) Turícha, (7) Muthla (مُثْلَة), (8) Mihrawán, (9) Machúri (B. Bijúri), (10) Ahlam, (11) Jálus (B. Sálús), (12) (بِلْسَرَائِيَّة) (B. Mlsarayé), (13) Tís (or Quhsibah, or B. Mahastiya), (14) Tammísha, (15) Gurgán.
In the Mountains. (16) Kalár⁴, (17) Rúyán⁴, (18) Namár, (19) Kajúya⁴, (20) Wíma (وَيْمَة), (21) Shalanba, (22) Wabád (B. Wamád), (23) Abkhama (أَبْخَامَة), (24) Sármám, (25)

¹ The modern Bárfurúsh. Cf. *Dhahír*, p. 80.

² Cf. *Dhahír*, p. 22.

³ *Dhahír*, p. 21, has "Dínár-jári, which is the eastern limit of all Ṭabaristán."

⁴ B. enumerates these three places in the preceding class.

Farím, (26) Hazár-garí¹, (27) Damáwand, (28) Láriján. The revenues of Ṭabaristán in the time of the Táhirids (بعید ایام نافریه, i. e. A. D. 820-872) amounted to 6,003,000 dirhams, according to the following detail:

Sári as far as Tammísha:	1,300,000 dir.
Mámṭir and Turícha:	370,000 "
Amul:	1,400,000 "
Jálus (B. Sálús)-Rúyán: $300,000 + 900,000 =$	1,200,000 "
Rán-Hál (f. 36a):	360,000 "
Damáwand (B. Dunbáwand):	1,200,000 "
TOTAL:	5,830,000 "

The farms (ضياع) of Ṭabaristán were divided into three classes, and they produced in the time of the Táhirids 7,000,900 dirhams, as follows:²

تفصیل امروز	300,000 dir.
امروز ماموند که خلیفه از اصفهان جمشید خرید،	1,000,300 "
امروز حجور و خلاص (ایام سازیار B) هفتاد عشتاد B.	
و دو پاره د بود،	
غلات فضایل مرغ و مانع دریا و آدویه،	1,300,000 "
سفجیه امیار کو، و امور مددود انقره و مددو و مازیار B.	1,500,000 "
ضیاع که محمد بن عبد الله نافر را بقطع دادند،	1,000,000 "
ضیاع غلات مسلمیات بن طاهر،	1,000,000 "
TOTAL:	6,100,300 "

¹ Over this and under (23), which stands immediately above it in the MS., the name *Umyár-kíh* (امیار کو) is written in red.

² As this falls short of the total given above by 173,000 dirhams, it would appear that something has been omitted from the details.

³ The text of what follows I print in the original, as I do not altogether understand it, leaving the sums mentioned (which are plainly written out in full, not in numbers or in the difficult *siyáq* generally used in financial statements) in our numerals, as before. Here again it will be observed that some error has crept in, for these sums fall short of the total of mentioned by 900,600 dirhams.

⁴ B. has only "500,000".

The total income from all the farms, land-taxes and imposts of Ṭabaristán beyond Tammísha in the time of the Táhirids amounted to 13,300,000¹ dirhams.

جمله ضمیع نیروستان و خوارج و تمامت دخل از رسومات ظاهریه
سیزده هزار بار عزار و سیصد و سی هزار درم بود خلاف محصول
سیزده تنیش،

Section I, ch. III.

On the virtues and wonders of Ṭabaristán (f. 36a).

In ancient times Ṭabaristán was always the refuge and stronghold of the old kings and nobles, because of its natural strength, its independence of other countries for the necessities of life (f. 36b), and its fertility. Its only disadvantage, in short, is the moisture of its climate and the excessive rainfall, which result from its proximity to the sea.

Anecdote.

It was related by the Qádí Abú 'Abdí'r-Rahmán Muham-mad b. al-Ḥasan b. 'Abdu'l-Ḥamíd al-Lamrásakí (اللامراسكي) to Abu'l-Ḥasan 'Alí b. Muḥammad al-Yazdádí, on the authority of his father, who had it from men of ancient time, that there lived in the neighbourhood of Lamrásak a man named Shahr-Khwástán the son of Zardastán (شهر خواستان) (بن زردهستان), possessed of great wealth in personal and landed property and cattle, aged, experienced, and surrounded by numerous sons, cousins and kinsmen, all loyally attached to him. When Farrukhán, the great Ispahbad, had completed the construction of Sári and the great Dyke, all the people, save Shahr-Khwástán, offered him their congratulations and eulogies. The Ispahbad was vexed at this omission (f. 37a), and despatched two horsemen to bring Shahr-Khwástán be-

fore him. When they arrived, he was holding a great banquet, at which all the local nobles and gentry were present. Ordering the two messengers to be hospitably entertained, he packed in sacks samples of all the products of Ṭabaristán, garments of wool, silk, linen and cotton, bread-stuffs of all sorts, sweetmeats, apples, cereals, water-cresses, fresh and salted game, birds, fruits, wines, fragrant herbs, flowers, and the like, and, furnished with these, set off for Sári, where he arrived at day-break. By chance the Ispahbad was giving a great banquet, at which he was presiding, seated on a high throne, whence, after pronouncing a *khuṭba* after the fashion of kings, he addressed the people as follows. "O men of Ṭabaristán, know that ye were a people dwelling apart in a corner of the world, of whom no fame was spread abroad, and to whose country none were attracted. Ye dwelt in jungles with the wild beasts and beasts of prey, ignorant of the enjoyments of life, the ways of men, soft raiment, good horses and agreeable perfumes. It was I who introduced you to nobler aims and a richer and more desirable life; who built for you fine cities which attracted travellers and merchants from afar, so that rare and precious merchandises flowed into your country, and ye became notable and famous in the world, and your cities celebrated for their wealth and splendour. For all this I deserve your thanks." Then all those present, except Shahr-Khwástán, rose up and applauded. The Ispahbad, observing with displeasure Shahr-Khwástán's silence (f. 37b), cried to him, "What ails thee that thou art tongueless as a fish and soulless as a serpent?" Said the other, "If permission be accorded me, I will speak;" and, on receiving permission, he produced and opened the ten sacks which he had brought with him, and displayed their contents. Then he spoke as follows: "May the Ispahbad-Ispahbadán live long! O assembly, we were in this land men indepen-

¹ B. has "13,000 and 330,000."

dent of imports from other countries, contented with what sufficed for our needs, and enjoying ample ease and luxury. None hindered us, nor envied us, nor contended with us, nor coveted our country, nor was cognizant of its secrets. We had need of no one; we had houses, corn-lands and hunting-grounds within the Great Dyke, and every two parasangs was stationed a head-man, captain or squire, whom all man readily obeyed. Now this Prince hath made all strangers and foreigners to know us and our land, and hath caused them to flock hither and settle here, and ere long they will pick a quarrel with us, strive to take our land, and drive forth our children as wanderers and exiles." Then the Ispahbad and the people perceived that he spoke truly, and asked what should now be done, to which he replied, "The thing is done, and there is now no averting it. Had you consulted with me sooner, I would have shewn you a way. Please God that by the Prince's good fortune no harm may result."

The virtue, beauty, health and excellence of the women of Ṭabaristán have been already mentioned (f. 38a) in connection with the narrative of the building of Āmul by Fírúz-sháh. 'Abdu'r-Rahmán Khúrzád¹ says in his *Book of Routes and Provinces* (كتاب المسالك والممالك) that physicians and sages have agreed that the two healthiest and most charming countries are Ṭabaristán and Samarqand. Of the latter, Ḥuṣayn b. Mundhir ar-Raqqáshí said:

لَتَّبَنَ السَّمَاءَ فِي الْخَضْرَةِ وَنَهَرَهَا الْمَجْرَةُ لِلْاعْتِنَافِ وَسُورُهَا الشَّمْسُ لِلْأَطْبَاقِ،

while of the former Buzurjmihr said, in reply to a question from Núshírwán, "Its name is *Tarab* ('joy') and *Bustán* ('garden')."² 'Abdu'lláh b. Qutayba (A. has in error for قَنْتَهَهْ قَنْبِيَّهْ) said that it ought to be called *Ṭabaristán* (with ت for

¹ [Probably Ibn Khurdádhbih. See de Goeje's ed. of his *Kitábu'l-masálik*, pp. 171—172, where ar-Raqqáshí's remark above cited is given in substance. A.G.E.]

ط as the first letter), for it was as though it had been pruned with axes (*tabar*). "As for its plains, its mountains, its seas and its swamps," runs another saying, "its mountains are a stronghold and refuge for its kings, its swamps are a treasury for its people, its seas are a hunting ground for them, and its plains are a paradise." (Here follows an Arabic poem of seven couplets in its praise). In it are no noxious reptiles or hurtful beasts, like the snakes of Sístán and India, the scorpions of Niṣíbín, Káshán, Jáshk and Múqán, the locusts of 'Askar, the tarantulas and fleas of Ardabíl, the beasts of prey of Arabia, or the crocodiles of Egypt; nor plagues like the alopecia of Baṣra, or the drought of Syria, or the excessive heat of 'Umán, Shíráz and Ahwáz. In short, all men agree that there is no country so delectable as a residence; there are abundant fruits, fire-wood, spices, mountains, plains, sulphur-mines (f. 38b), sulphate of iron (زَلَقَ), antimony (سُرْمَهَ), gold and silver-mines¹, and all sorts of fabrics for clothing. Of its products in his time al-Yazdádí thus speaks:

وَيَزَادَىْ أَوْرَدْ² اسْتَ كَهْ دَرْ عَبْدَ أَوْلَ اِنْلَسْ وَ نَسْجَ وَ عَتَّابَيْ پِيشْ
بِيَا وَ اِنْوَاعَ دِيَيَاءَ بِهَائِي وَ سَقْلَانْشُونْ مَرْتَفَعْ وَ سَبْ گَرَانْ قِيمَتْ
وَذَفَورَى كَهْ وَرَى آنْ صَورَتْ نَبَنَدَدْ بَنِيكَوَشَى وَ خَوَنَى وَ يَوْدَهَائِي
اِبْرَشِيمَى وَ پِشَمَى وَ مَيْزِرَهَائِي بَارِيكَ وَ اِنَمَادَ بَهْتَرَ اِزْ جَهَرَمَى وَ قَالِبَيَائِي
مَحْفَورَى وَ آبَكِينَدَهَائِي بَغْدَانَى وَ حَصِيرَهَائِي عَبَادَانَى طَبَرِسْتَانَ
آمَدَنَدَى وَ اِزْ آتَجَا بَاقِصَى بَلَادَ عَالَمَ جَلَبَ كَرَنَدَى كَهْ دَرْ عَبْدَ آفَاقَ
مَثَلَ آنَدَهَ آتَجَا يَاقِنَدَ بَوْدَ وَ بَازَارَ مَنَاعَ سَقْسَيَنْ وَ بَلَغَارَ تَا بَعَهَدَ ما
آمَلَ بَوْدَ وَ مَرَدَمَ اِزْ عَرَاقَ وَ شَامَ وَ خَرَاسَانَ وَ حَدَودَ هَنْدُوْسْتَانَ
بَعْلَبَ مَنَاعَ بَمَلَ آمَدَنَدَى وَ بَازَرَ گَانَى مَرَدَمَ طَبَرِسْتَانَ بَلَغَارَ وَ
سَقْسَيَنْ بَوْدَ حَكْمَ آنَدَهَ سَقْسَيَنْ اِزْ آنَ لَبَ درِيَا دَرْ مَقَابِلَ آمَلَ نَهَادَهَ³

¹ Melgunof, *Das südliche Ufer des Kaspischen Meeres*, p. 24.

است و چنین گویند که چون بسقین کشته رود بسه ماه برسد و چون از آنجا آید هفته آدینه آنجا نماز گذارند و آدینه دیگر باعلم باشد از آنکه چون میروی بفرارست و چون می آئی در نشیب و زنان باشند در تبرستان که بروزی پنجه درم کسب کنند حسن صنعت دست خود و هرگز درویشی مرقع چنانکه در سایر بلاد باشند یافته نشود،

In illustration of this last statement, that poverty is unknown amongst the natives of Ṭabaristán, the author relates how a certain man of that province, settled at Mecca, boasted of this fact. The people of Mecca, anxious to disprove his assertion, hunted high and low till at length they found a beggar who said he was from the parish of Házima-Kúy in Amul in Ṭabaristán. Him they confronted with the man who had uttered this boast (f. 39b). "What," said the latter, "do they call a skirt (*dáman*) in your town?" "*Dáman*," replied the other. "And a pocket (*jayb*)?" continued he. "*Jayb*," answered the beggar. "You are a liar," said the other, "and no true-born Ṭabari, for in Amul they call a skirt *lunbur* (لنبر) and a pocket *gurivun* (or *giryún*, گریون)." The man then admitted that he had been born at Ray and only taken to Amul in childhood by his father and mother.

The taxes and imposts of Ṭabaristán are light, and especially was this the case under the rule of the House of Báwand, while the water is abundant, good, and freely accessible to all. The satraps, governors and Ispahbads of Ṭabaristán have always enjoyed a great influence, and Kisrás and Caliphs alike have sought their advice and counsel. Their doctors, scribes, physicians, astronomers and poets also include many famous names, and, from the time of Ferídún and Minuchihr, who have been already mentioned, many great and notable men have sought refuge there.

Thus when Rustam-i-Zál was hurled into the sea of Qulzum (the Caspian) by Akwán Dív, he came ashore in Ṭabaristán, and was hospitably entertained by the inhabitants. His son Suhráb sought him through Túrán, Irán, India and Rúm, and at length found him in Rúyán, at a place called Líkash (لیکش), where the fatal fight took place between them, in which Suhráb was slain. Rustam intended to carry his coffin back to Zábulistán, but, owing to the heat, he deposited it at Sári, at the place called Qaṣr-i-Tús, where, it is said, it was eventually buried (f. 39b). So too Dárá, fleeing before Alexander, took refuge in Ṭabaristán, and sent a message to the invader, saying, "I grant that you have conquered the Seven Climes, but what will you do with Farshwádjar?" The author adds that in A. H. 611 (= A. D. 1214—1215) the Castle known as *Diz-i-Dárá* ("The Fortress of Darius") was still standing near the sea (بکو، تاجی و دارم برویشه نزدیک دریا). Again in the time of Khusraw Parwíz (A. D. 590—627) his uncle Gustahm (Bistám), because the King had cut off his brother Bindú'è's hands and feet, fled from his Government of Khurásán and took refuge in Ṭabaristán, and was only slain at length by treachery on the part of Bahrám Chúbína's sister Gurdiya, who was instigated thereunto by the King. Again in Sásánian times a king named Salyán (سلیان) took refuge in Ṭabaristán, and built himself a residence at the place called *Kiya-Salyán* (کیسا لیان), the meaning of *kiya* (کیا) in the Ṭabari dialect being "house". This building was still standing in the author's time, A. H. 613 (= A. D. 1216—1217).

The Wonders of Ṭabaristán.

Mount Damáwand. 'Alí b. Zayn al-Kátib, in his work entitled *Firdáwsu 'l-Hikmat*¹, says that the ascent is made

¹ Probably the work of this title by Abu 'l-Hasan 'Alí of Ray, mentioned by Hájí Khalífa, №. 9015.

from the village of Ask in two days. It is a conical peak, and is covered with snow, save for a space of thirty *jaribs* at the summit, which is free from snow both in summer and winter, and is covered with sand (? ashes) into which the feet sink. At and about the summit are thirty craters and fissures, whence issue forth smoke, sulphurous fumes, and strange rumbling noises, whereby men know that there is fire within the mountain. No animal can live on it, because of the violent winds which blow about it, and it is said that the Philosopher's stone of the Alchemists (کربیت) is to be found there (f. 40a). Al-Yazdádí relates that in the time of Qábús Shamsú'l-Ma'álí (A. D. 976—1012) there was a youth called the son of Amír Ká (پسر امیر کا) who found this "Red Sulphur" (کربیت) there, and with it made gold, until this matter became known to the King. In Mount Damáwand, it is said, Solomon imprisoned Šakhr, the *jinní* who stole his ring, praying God to torment him there till the Resurrection; and this tradition is vouched for on the authority of 'Alí b. Abí Tálib. But the stories told concerning Bívarasp (*i. e.* Azhidaháka, or Dahák), which were enquired into by the Caliph 'Abdu'lláh al-Má'mún, and [what happened] in the reigns of Hurmuzd and Khusraw Parwíz, the Sásánian kings, and the story of Músá b. 'Isá as-Sarwí, which are related in the *Book of Pírus-Mihrján*, and other similar legends¹) are here omitted as incredible and unauthenticated. In the books of the *Herbeds* and Magians it is related that Núshírwán the Just sent a trusty messenger to Šakhr the *jinní*, who, when the messenger came and saluted him, enquired who had sent him. On learning that it was Núshírwán, he rose to his feet, prayed, and gave three things to the messenger in a sealed packet,

¹ The text here, which I do not understand, has: حوالت کنیزک و حرمۃ السعیدة

bidding him deliver them to the King, and entreat him in return to effect the release of the giver. These three things were three drugs, one to keep off old age, one to quicken digestion, and one an aphrodisiac. When these confections were brought to Núshírwán, he said, "I have no need of them, for old age is the ornament of man, and a source of dignity and honour: would that I were already old! Sexual desire, again, is only necessary for the continuance of the human race: whatever exceeds this is evil, not good. And artificial aids to digestion are only needful to him who eats too much; to the temperate man, who only eats to maintain his strength, they are useless and even pernicious (f. 40b). Over and above all this, these drugs may not possess the properties alleged, and may have been given me for my destruction." Then he ordered the drug which was supposed to be a cure for old age to be given to a dog, and its head swelled up till it was as large as a cow's, until it died in great agony, and was secretly buried by Núshírwán's order.

Anecdote.

There was once a king called Máhiya-sar, whose head was abnormally small, and devoid of hair. He therefore always wore a turban, summer and winter, night and day, so that no one could see his head. Some say that he was a Jew named Sham'ún (Simon) b. Khudádád, others that he was a Magian named Bálí the son of Farrukh-Adín. His mother, Rúz the daughter of Khurshíd, was a cunning witch and sorceress, incomparable in her time in the arts of Magic. They dwelt in a place four parasangs from Amul, called now *Āsi-Visha* and his palace was in a village which still exists and is called Vilír (ویلیر). Between the villages of Kílankúr (کیلنکور) and Shír-ábád is a great forest, thick and high, which is

still called *Máhiya-sari Diz*, and near it is a deep moat or dyke filled with water covered with duck-weed (آب مطحّل), into which anything which falls disappears for ever, while no boat can cross it, and any animal falling into it does but drown the quicker the more it struggles. On that side where the north wind blows there is an open space, where grow daffodils the like of which in fragrance can be nowhere found; while in the village of *Vílir* is a certain species of fig (أنجير خضر عان), superior to those of *Hulwán*. Now this king *Máhiya-sar* was a wicked and unprincipled tyrant, of whom his subjects stood in terror, and he had accumulated vast wealth which he had buried under various buildings. When 'Abdu'lláh b. Maḥmúd b. Núh Abu'l-'Abbás was governor of *Tabaristán*, an old man a hundred years of age came before him from that district, and gave him certain indications as to the site of these buried treasures. Abu'l-'Abbás accordingly sent skilled and trusted man to excavate (f. 41a), and in these excavations they expended much money, but whenever they came on traces of treasure a landslip always occurred, killing several and nullifying their labours, so that at last they were forced to abandon their attempts.

Anecdote.

One of the *Kisrás* sent a confidential messenger to *Máhiya-sar* ordering him to present himself at his court, under pain of incurring the Royal displeasure, *Máhiya-sar* had prepared a talisman which kept all the frogs and other reptiles (بنات) quiet during the day, but at night they made so much noise that the whole heaven and earth seemed to be in commotion. When at night-time *Kisrás*'s ambassador heard this fearful riot (غول، ستاخیز), he was dazed with wonder and fear, and asked what was the matter. They replied,

"The king's watchmen by night." "And where," enquired he, "are they by day?" "By day," they answered, "they rest." When the ambassador returned and related this to *Kisrás*, they told him that he must have been dreaming.

In the *History of the Barmecides* (تاریخ برمکه) it is said that this *Máhiya-sar* originally owned the "Barmecide Ring" (النگشته برمک) which afterwards belonged to the Umayyad Caliph 'Abdu'l-Malik b. Marwán (A. D. 685—705); but this story, as well as many others referring to *Máhiya-sar* which are given by al-Yazdádi, is discredited by the author on chronological grounds.

Anecdote.

Near Ummídwár Kúh is a well called *Cháh-i-Vijan* (? "Bízhan's Well") which no one has been able to fathom, though loads of rope have been brought thither, knotted together, and let down into it (f. 41b). When a stone is thrown into it, the noise of its falling is heard for a long time until at last it ceases. During summer a cool breeze continually blows from this well, and round about it are trees, and thence they carry logs and planks to *Amul*¹, because of the fragrant scent of this wood. And one who sits on this wood in summer feels a coolness, and on these trees always sit birds of the kind called *saqqá* (سق).

Near Rúyán is a well-known village called *Sa'íd-ábád*, where every child born in the summer dies in infancy, so that it has become customary for women who are with child and expect to be delivered during the summer months to quit the place and go elsewhere.

Near *Kalár* (کلار) there is a village called *Dilam* (دیلام), and

¹ The text has: که فرسب و پلور بامل از آنجا یوند, I conjecture the meaning of these two words, with which I have never met elsewhere.

no one who is born there survives his twentieth year.

Near Nátíl (ناتل) is a village called Mandúr (مندور), where over an area of 60 *jaribs* when rice is sown so much water wells up from the ground that it suffices for all that rice-field without need of further irrigation, and at the time of reaping it all disappears. In the same district is another village called Nigáristán, on the summit of a hill, and in it is a rock, surrounded for five parasangs by plain and jungle, as far as Amul; and from this rock five streams of clear water issue forth, which are more abundant in proportion as the summer is hotter, while in winter they cease altogether.

Near Amul grows a herb called *Gunduya Zúma* (گندیہ زومہ), the properties of which are thus described:

اگر اورا بدست ماند و در قصیب مرد ماند انعاظ گیرد و درم
کند و دو چندان شود که بود بشد و بعد یک ساعت با قرار
آید و آن گیاہرا بیگنی خوریک بود،

A peculiarity of the town of Jálús (Shálús) is that it makes people's skins white, so that if an Indian or Kábúlí girl remains there for one year, she becomes fair as a Greek or Slav.

In Wandád-Hurmuzd Kúh there is a place (f. 42a) into which, when there is a year of drought, the people throw triturated onions, whereupon rain at once falls, but the person who has pounded the onions dies within the year.

In Ummid-wár Kúh grows a herb called *Gúr-tir* (کور تیر), and if anyone picks it smiling, or weeping, or speaking well, or playing, and gives it to another to eat, that other, so long as the herb is in his stomach, behaves in the same way as did the gatherer while he was picking it.

Near Tabaristán is a place called Páníra-Kúh (پانیر) or پایزه کو، where, in the time of al-Yazdádí, there was a dyke called Fírúz-Kúh, and adjoining this was another mountain whereon grew a poisonous herb.

Near Rúdbár hyacinths grow, and on Wandád-Hurmuzd-Kúh grow sweet rushes (اذخر)، as at Mecca, which they call *Mushkwásh* (مشکواش) ¹.

In Siyáh-rúd, near Jamanú, in the village of Danakí, there is a whirlpool or eddy called *Kanzgirdáb*, where Alexander the Great buried the vast treasures which he had amassed. Many later kings and rulers have sought to recover them, but have always failed. Mákán the son of Kákí was the last to try, and he spent vast sums of money in removing the water, till at length he reached a point where signs of treasure, bricks and traces of buildings, were visible. "Tomorrow," said they, "we shall finish our task;" but that night the water again broke in and concealed all, while Mákán dreamed that a voice cried to him, "Weary not thyself in vain, for it was not laid up for thee." And thereafter no further attempt was made. Every twenty-five years there is a year of scarcity, and the price of corn goes up.

Anecdote of the Dragon and Sám-i-Narímán.

The poet of Tabaristán ² says:

تنه عشتر تر بوم بدلبیعی ای سوم،

There once appeared in Shahriyár-Kúh a dragon fifty thousand cubits (*gaz*) in length, and in that region, as far as the sea-coast, no animal dared pass through plain or mountain for fear of it (f. 42b), so that they abandoned that district, whereupon it advanced as far as Sári. Then the inhabitants besought Sám to help them, and he came forth, saw it from afar, and said, "With these weapons I

و اشنان دست از آن همی: ¹ I do not understand the following words: سازند.

² Probably Abú'l-Amr, mentioned by the same title or f. 45a (p. 47 *infra*).

can do nothing." By the time he had prepared suitable weapons, the dragon had advanced to Alá rash near the seashore, and he came upon it at a place called Gáw-Kaláda (گاو کلادا). The dragon, on seeing Sám, rushed upon him. Sám smote it on the head with his mace, so that it fell asunder, and the dragon uttered so fearful a cry that all Sám's companions fell to the ground in terror. It then strove to encircle Sám with its tail, but he sprang back forty paces. It continued to move for three days and then died, and to this day no grass will grow on this spot, as is well known.

Section I, ch. IV.

Account of the kings, nobles, doctors, saintly and famous men, scribes, physicians, philosophers and poets of Tabaristán.

1. *Mázyár*. — He was one of the most capable princes who ever reigned. One day his trainer (رایص) was riding one of his favourite horses. "Do you detect any fault in this horse?" enquired Mázyár. "It is one of the finest to be found in all the world," answered the trainer; "what is wrong with it?" "There is no marrow in its shoulder-blades;" answered Mázyár. He then ordered the horse to be killed, and they found it was even as he had said.

On another occasion he was informed that a certain horse-breader in Tukháristán had in his stud a horse valued at 100,000 *dirhams*. He at once despatched several experts in horseflesh to buy it for him. When they reached their destination, the owner would only allow them to look at the horse and not to ride it. It appeared to be a beautiful animal, well-proportioned, graceful and strong. They wrote to Mázyár for instructions. He replied (f. 43a): "Assuredly the owner would not impose such a condition unless he

was aware of some blemish in the animal. Before buying it, you must make it a condition that you shall be allowed to lassoo it. If, when the lassoo falls round its neck, it pricks up its ears, looks sharply down between its fore-feet, and draws its tail inwards, then buy it; but if it strains its neck against the noose, throws out its sides, and lays back its ears, then refuse to buy it." When they tried the experiment, it happened even as he had said, and they rejected it accordingly.

After his death the Caliph put 'Alí b. Zayn in his place in the Foreign Office (ديوان انشا), but the despatches written by him were less rich in meaning than those penned by Mázyár. They asked him why this was so. He replied: "He wrote in his own language; I translate into Arabic." Mázyár's cunning and generosity, as well as his capture and execution at Surra-man-ra'a, will be mentioned in their proper place.

2. *Alandáy*¹ the son of *Sukhrá*, King of Tabaristán. In strength and courage he was reckoned the equal of Rustam. One night he rode forty parasangs after a stag, and at the end swam a river in flood, and slew the quarry.

اورا گفتند موبیلست بورج²

3. *Wandid Hurmuzd* the son of *Alandáy*, also celebrated for his courage. His doughty deeds, and how he slew Farásha and "the Devil of Farán" (Sálím of Farán or Farághán)³, will be told in its proper place. When Hárunu'r-Rashíd reached Ray, he sent [his son] al-Ma'mún to be laid in his lap, and he bestowed on al-Ma'mún villages whereof the revenues amounted to 1,600,000 *dirhams*. When he slew Farásha, he gave to the Ispahbad Sharwín, "King

¹ See Melgunof's *Südliche Ufer des Kaspischen Meeres*, p. 52.

² See Melgunof, p. 50 *ad eale.*

³ *Dhahir*, pp. 156, 158—159.

of the Mountains"¹, who came to help him, one third (دو دانگ) of the spoils; and when, after the death of Fárásha, Hárúnu'r-Rashíd came to Ray, Wandád Hurmuzd went out to meet him (f. 43b). When the Caliph's eyes lighted upon him, he began to upbraid, reproach and fiercely threaten him, whereupon Wandád said, "I do not understand Arabic, but I perceive that the Commander of the Faithful is incensed against me, and is upbraiding me in unkind words. Why did he not speak thus when I was in my own highlands? Now that, unconstrained and of my own free will, I come before him loyally and obediently, it ill befits his greatness to address in such terms his guest and his faithful servant." Hárún, when this was interpreted to him, admitted that he was in the right, increased his rank, and ordered a cushion to be brought that he might be seated. When the cushion was brought, Wandád, instead of sitting down on it, placed it on his head, saying, "A cushion from the Commander of the Faithful is an honour; it is better placed on the head." When he rose up to depart, Hárún ordered the cushion to be sent with him.

Another day, while he was sitting with Hárún, the uncle of the latter entered the room. All those present rose up, except Wandád. This displeased the Caliph and those with him. Immediately afterwards Yazíd b. Murthad arrived and did obeisance. Wandád immediately rose up and paid homage to him. Everyone smiled, and Hárún said, "My uncle is my own flesh and blood, while this man is the least of my servants. Whence that uncalled for rudeness, and this unnecessary politeness?" Wandád Hurmuzd answered, "I did not recognize your uncle, and why should I rise up for one whom I do not know? But this is a brave and capable man, therefore I paid him a tribute of respect.

When thou didst send him to my kingdom, he was encamped against me for a whole year, and every morning he set his army in battle-array in a different fashion. And I had there (f. 44a) a knight who was his equal in courage and valour, whom I sent out against him on the day of battle; but in less time than it takes one to draw a sword from its scabbard, I saw my champion's head fall before him. Next day I myself went out to meet him. He struck me such a blow with his sword as I had never before experienced. Before such a man, though he be my enemy, I willingly rise up." The Caliph was pleased at his speech, and thereafter promoted Yazíd b. Murthad to high rank.

In the palace of Hárúnu'r-Rashíd, in the house of Umm Ja'far, there was a tame monkey, which was treated with the utmost respect. It used to be girt with a sword and girdle, and had assigned to its service thirty men, who rode with it when it went forth. Everyone who came to pay his respect at the court was required to kiss its hand and pay hommage to it; and it was of such evil nature that, in the words of the author:

چنین شنیدم که آن بوزنه چند بخت بدرزا بدارت بر داشته بود و
ابحث و لخان از حیا و دیانت و حرمت شریعت می ورزید،

One day Yazíd b. Murthad went, after taking leave of the Caliph, to the house of Umm Ja'far to bid farewell to her. They brought the ape before him and bade him kiss its hand. He drew his sword and cut it in two, and turned back in anger. Hárúnu'r-Rashíd, being informed, summoned him and asked him what had impelled him to this action. He replied, "O Commander of the Faithful! Shall I serve apes after having served Caliphs? No, by God, never!" So the Caliph forgave him. Muslim b. al-Walid says in a threnody which he composed on him:

قَبْرٌ يَارَانَ أَسْتَنِيرَ شَرِيجَةَ حَطَّرَأَ تَقَاصِرَ دُونَهُ الْأَخْطَارَ

¹ Concerning this title, see Melgunof, *op. cit.*, p. 49.

4. *Khurshid the son of Dázamíhr*¹. A prince of Khurásán once came to pay his respects to him with many gifts and offerings, and a lodging was assigned to him near the Ispahbad. He asked for dishes and trays whereon to arrange the presents (f. 44b). They brought from the Ispahbad's plate-room five hundred silver trays. The Khurásání demanded more. They sent to Farrukhán's daughter, the chief wife of the Ispahbad, and obtained from her five hundred more. The Ispahbad then received the presents from Khurásán on these thousand trays, and in return sent to the prince two thousand trays filled with presents of the produce of Tabaristán, together with 100,000 *dirhams*.

On another occasion a man brought to him as a present a cup set with jewels and shaped like a cock, the two eyes of which were formed by two large red rubies of great value. The Ispahbad accepted it, and rewarded the donor. Some time afterwards it was reported to him that the donor was boasting that he had rendered to the Ispahbad an unparalleled service. Thereupon the latter invited five hundred guests, including the donor of the cup, to a wine-party, and before each of them was set a cup shaped like it, but far better. The donor of the original cup apprehended the rebuke, apologized, and received back his gift together with twice its value in money.

5. *The Ispahbad Pádhúsbán*². He used daily to feed six hundred man in three detachments, 200 in the morning, 200 at noon, and 200 at evening. 'Abdu'lláh Faḍlawayh as-Sarwí had fled from Muḥammed Yazíd and sought refuge with him. He made him an allowance of 200,000 *dirhams* for "bread-money", and continued it to his sons after he died.

¹ Melgunof, p. 50, *ad calc.* Coins of both these kings are extant. See, besides the references given by Melgunof, Vol. v of the *Collections Scientifiques de l'Institut des Langues Orientales Vivantes*, p. 123.

² Melgunof, pp. 50—51; Nöldeke's *Sasaniden*, p. 151, n. 2 *ad calc.*

SAYYIDS OF THE HOUSE OF THE PROPHET WHO RULED IN TABARISTÁN.

1. Ḥasan b. Zayd b. Isma'íl (called *Jálibu'l-hijára*, "the Stone-lifter", because of his strength) b. al-Ḥasan b. Zayd b. al-Ḥasan b. 'Alí b. Abí Ṭálib. He was born and grew up at al-Madína, and was peerless in his time for courage, cunning and determination, as is strongly emphasized by [Ibn] Ṭabáṭabá al-‘Alawí in his book called *Ansábu Ashráfi'l-Amṣár* ("Pedigrees of the Nobles of the Lands"). The cause of his insurrection and occupation of Tabaristán (f. 45a) will be mentioned in due course. One day when he had been bled Abu'l-‘Amr the poet of Tabaristán (شاعر طبری) came before him and recited this verse:

إِنَّمَا تَنْتَهِيَ يَدُ الْحَجَّامِ سَعْرًا أَتَأْتُكَ بِبَيْنَ الْأَمَانِ مِنْ آتِسَقَامِ
فَحَسِّمَكَ دَاهِ جَسْمِكَ بِأَحْتَجَامِ لَحَسِّمَكَ دَاهِ مَلِكَ بِتَحْسِمَامِ

For those two couplets the poet received ten thousand *dirhams*³.

2. Muḥammad b. Zayd *ad-Dá'i ila 'l-Haqq*, brother of the above. Volumes might be filled with his praises. Sayyid Imám-i-Muṣíd Abú Ṭálib relates that he had a learned secretary called Abu'l-Qásim al-Kátib al-Balkhí, noted for his eloquence and excellence, who used to say that this Prince so far excelled all others for whom he had acted as secretary that, to use his own expression, "I could have imagined that it was Muḥammad the Prophet of God dictating one of his revelations." 'Abdu'l-‘Azíz al-‘Ijlí³ composed in his honour a *qasida* in which occurs the following verse:

¹ *Dhahír*, p. 282.

² See *Dhahír*, p. 282, where, at the beginning of the second *bayt*, *لَحَسِّمَكَ* stands for *لَحَسِّمَكَ*.

³ *Dhahír*, p. 296.

إِذَا تَبَسَّمَ سَيْفَةُ بَكَتِ النَّسَاءَ مِنَ الْقَبَائِلِ
وَإِذَا تَخَضَّبَ بِالْدَمَاءِ خَرَجَنَ فِي سَوْدَ الْغَلَائِلِ

and received a gift of 30,000 *dirhams*. When Bakr b. 'Abdu'l-*Aziz* al-*Ijlí*, one of the great captains of that time, came before him at Amul, he alighted from his horse to do him honour, and Muḥammad b. Zayd presented him with a million *dirhams* contained in a hundred bags, besides weapons and other presents. Every year he used to send a thousand¹ gold *dinárs* to the shrines of 'Alí, al-*Hasan*, al-*Husayn*, and other illustrious members of his family; and when the Caliph al-Mutawakkil (A. D. 847—861) destroyed the tombs of the Imáms, he was the first who repaired them.

Anecdote.

One day he was sitting at the Pension Office (*Diwán-i-Atá*) and distributing pay to the troops. They brought before him a certain man, of whom he enquired to what tribe he belonged. "Abdu'sh-Shams," replied the man. "To what family?" asked Muḥammad b. Zayd. The man was silent. "Art thou then of the children of Mu'áwiya?" he continued (f. 45b). The man answered in the affirmative. "By which son?" he further demanded. Again the man was silent. "Art thou then a son of Yazíd?" he asked. "Yes," answered the other. "O lad," said the Dá'i, "didst thou not perceive that thou shouldst not be with the descendants of Abú Tálib?" Instantly the Sayyids there present drew their swords to slay him; but the Dá'i cried out at them, saying: "Muṣab b. az-Zubayr was one day sitting distributing money when the herald announced a son of 'Umar b. Jurmúz. 'O Amír,' they exclaimed, 'this son of Jurmúz is fearful and afraid because his father slew Zubayr.' 'He is

a man of great courage,' replied Muṣab, 'since he has risked being slain in retaliation for my father's death. Bid him approach, and take his gift, and depart in peace.' Then he gave him his journey-money and a horse, and sent trusty attendants with him to 'Iráq, lest he should be slain on the way by the descendants of Abú Tálib, and dismissed him."

3. *Hasan* b. 'Ali b. *Hasan* b. 'Ali b. 'Amr b. 'Ali as-Sajjád b. Husayn b. 'Ali b. Abi Tálib, with the title of *an-Násirú'l-Kabir*, and the *kunya* of *Abú Muḥammad*. His virtue, learning, asceticism, and piety, and the results of his generosity, are still apparent in Gilán and Daylam, where also his way and doctrine command acceptance. His tomb, the College and Library which he founded, and the endowments bestowed by him, are still flourishing in Amul, while his grave is accounted holy, and visited by many pilgrims.

إِذَا ذَرَتْ وَصَافَ أَشْرَافَ عَشَّةَ فَمَذَرَّ ذَرَقَمْ لَا عَلَى صَدَرِ رَقَبَةِ
لَكُمْ يَا بَنِي أَنْوَعَكُمْ زَعْرَ حَسَائِسْ تَحْمِيْ فِيْنَا فَكَرَّةَ اَمْتَقَنَّ
لَيْمَدِ دِيْنِ اَللَّهِ اَنْتُمْ وَقَدْ غَدَ نَمَ صَدَرِ مَحْرَابَ وَذَرْوَةَ مِنْبَرَ

He had four sons, *Muḥammad* (from whom he derived his *kunya* of *Abú Muḥammad*) who died young, *'Ali ash-Shá'ir* ("the Poet"), *Aḥmad Abu'l-*Husayn**, and *Ja'far Abu'l-Qásim*. Three of these left issue, and their descendants reigned for a long while in Gilán and Daylam. The genealogy of each will be set forth in the (f. 46a) *Kitáb-i-Ansáb*. *Aḥmad b. an-Násir* was of the Imámi sect, and of his sons *Abú Ja'far Muḥammad*, called *Šáhibu'l-Qalansuwa* ("the Wearer of the Persian hat") dwelt in Daylamán, and *Abú Muḥammad al-*Hasan**, called *an-Naqib*, in Baghdad. Of the sons of *'Ali as-Shá'ir* were *Abú 'Abdillah Muḥammad al-Utrúsh* (الْعَرْش), and *Abú 'Ali Muḥammad b. 'Ali ash-Shá'ir*, who held a distinguished position at Baghdad. The following verses are by him:

¹ B. has "thirty thousand".

فَنَّ لَنْتَ لَا تَدْرِي مَنْتَ مَنْتَ مَيْتُ وَ قَبْرَكَ لَا تَدْرِي بِسْلَمَيْ مَكَانٍ
فِي حَسِيلَكَ قَوْلَ أَنْسَاسٍ فِيمَا مَلَكْتَهُ لَقَدْ كَانَ هَذَا مَرَّةٌ لِفَلَانٍ

He was a man of many accomplishments, and has written much poetry, and he was for a long while in the companionship of the Imám al-Hasan b. Alí al-‘Askarí (the Eleventh Imám of the "Sect of the Twelve", who died A.H. 260), from whom he received instruction. Amongst his disciples were Ibnu'l-Mahdí al-Mámtírí and Abu'l-‘Alá as-Sarwí, of whose accomplishments ath-Thálibí has spoken in the *Yatímatu'd-Dahr*¹. The following is a specimen of his powers of repartee:

بَدَّ ازْ مُسْتَفِيدَانْ بِتَحْسِينِ اَيْنِ دُوْ بَيْتٍ بَا دِيْكَرِي كِلَمَه مِيْكَفَتْ اَزْ
لَهْ سِيدَ اَنْشُوشَ بُودَ، نَدَانَسْتَ چَه مِيْكَوِيدَ، گَفَتْ يَا هَذَا اَرْفَعْ
مِنْ صَوْتَكَ فَنَّ بِاَنْتِي بَعْضَ مَهْبُوْحَكَ،

4. *Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn al-Mu'ayyad Bi'llah 'Adludu'd-Dawla* and *Sayyid Abú Tálib Yahyá an-Nátiq bi'l-Haqq*, the sons of al-Husayn b. Hárún b. al-Husayn b. Muhammad b. al-Qásim b. al-Husayn b. Zayd b. al-Imám as-Sibtí al-Hasan b. 'Alí b. Abí Tálib. It is said that not one of the Prophet's descendants who endeavoured by arms to claim his rights was more richly endowed with all the qualities requisite in an Imám than these two brothers. Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn carried on his propaganda in Daylamán, and all Gíl and Daylam responded to it. His treatise on the Excellence of 'Alí b. Abí Tálib is so eloquent and so well-reasoned that it might almost be described as a miracle. Of his other writings the best known are the *Kitábū'l-Tajríd*, the *Kitábūsh-Sháh*, the *Kitábū'l-Bulgha*, the *Kitábū'l-Tabšíra* and the *Kitábū'l-Ifáda*, all of which are still

¹ See the Damascus ed. of that work, Vol. iii, p. 278—282, where some account is given both of al-Utrúsh, and of Abu'l-‘Alá as-Sarwí.

in the hands of the Imáms (f. 46b) and are eagerly studied by their disciples. The titles of his other less known works are omitted. His poems form a bulky volume. The following verses are his:

وَ قَدْ سَبَقْتَ عَقِيَّانَ نَارَ مَحْنَةٍ وَ يَسْبِدَ عَقِيَّانَ اَنْجَالَ يَمْنَبْ
وَ قَدْ شَلَّبَتْ اَنْتَيَانَ وَ اِنْمَا تَفْعَ غَصْنَ اَنْدَوْحَ حِينَ يَشَبْ

His early studies were pursued in Baghdad, first with Sayyid Abu'l-‘Abbás, and then with the Qádi'l-qudát 'Abdu'l-Jabbár al-Hamadáni. One night, when every one was asleep, he came to the house of the latter and awakened him to ask him a question on theology. "Did you come only for this?" enquired the Qádi. "Yes," he answered, "I thought that I might perchance die to-night, being in doubt as to a matter of religious doctrine." In his time Ibn Sukkara¹ wrote the following *qasida* against the descendants of 'Alí:

إِنَّ اَنْخَلَافَةَ مُدْ دَنَتْ وَ مُدْ بَدَأَ
مَوْسَوَةَ بِفَتَى مِنْ اَلْ عَبَاسِ
إِنَّ اَنْقَضَى عَمْرُ هَذَا قَامَ ذَا خَلْفَ
فَلَاحَتَ الشَّمْسُ وَ اَمْتَدَتْ عَلَى اَنْتَسِ
فَقَدْ نِنَّ يَرْتَجِيبَا غَيْرَ قَمَ سَقِبَا
تَوْ شِئَتْ رَوْحَتْ كَرْبَ الْطَّيْنِ بَلِيَّاسِ

Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn answered in the following verses:

فَلْ لَبِنِ سَكَرَةَ يَا بَغْلَ عَبَّاسِ
اَنْسَحَتْ خَلَافَتِنَمْ مَنْلُوْسَةَ الْرَّأْسِ

¹ Called al-Háshimí, a descendant of 'Alí b. al-Mahdí b. Abí Jáfar al-Manṣúr al-‘Abbásí. See de Slane's translation of Ibn Khallikán, Vol. iii, pp. 115—118.

فَنَّ كُنْتَ لَا تَدْرِي مَتَى أَنْتَ مَيِّتٌ وَ قَبْرَكَ لَا تَدْرِي بِأَيِّ مَكَانٍ
فَخَسِبْكَ قَوْلُ أَنْتَ اسْ فِيمَا مَلَكْتَهُ لَقَدْ كَانَ فُدَّا مَرَّةً لِفُلَانٍ

He was a man of many accomplishments, and has written much poetry, and he was for a long while in the companionship of the Imám al-Hasan b. 'Alí al-'Askarí (the Eleventh Imám of the "Sect of the Twelve", who died A. H. 260), from whom he received instruction. Amongst his disciples were Ibnu'l-Mahdí al-Mámtírí and Abu'l-'Alá as-Sarwí, of whose accomplishments ath-Tha'álíbí has spoken in the *Yatimatu'd-Dahr*¹. The following is a specimen of his powers of repartee:

یو از مستفیدان بتحسین این دو بیت با دیگری کلمه میگفت از
آنکه سید اخروش بود، ندانست چه میگوید، گفت یا فُدَا ارفع
من صوتِک فَانْ يَأْتِي بَعْضَ مَا يُرْوَحَكَ،

4. *Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn al-Mu'ayyad Bi'llah 'Adudu'd-Dawla* and *Sayyid Abú Tálib Yaḥyá an-Nátiq bi'l-Haqq*, the sons of al-Husayn b. Hárún b. al-Husayn b. Muḥammad b. al-Qásim b. al-Husayn b. Zayd b. al-Imám as-Sibṭ al-Hasan b. 'Alí b. Abí Tálib. It is said that not one of the Prophet's descendants who endeavoured by arms to claim his rights was more richly endowed with all the qualities requisite in an Imám than these two brothers. Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn carried on his propaganda in Daylamán, and all Gíl and Daylam responded to it. His treatise on the Excellence of 'Alí b. Abí Tálib is so eloquent and so well-reasoned that it might almost be described as a miracle. Of his other writings the best known are the *Kitábu't-Tajrid*, the *Kitábu'sh-Sharh*, the *Kitábu'l-Bulgha*, the *Kitábu't-Tabṣira* and the *Kitábu'l-Ifáda*, all of which are still

¹ See the Damascus ed. of that work, Vol. iii, p. 278—282, where some account is given both of al-Utrúsh, and of Abu'l-'Alá as-Sarwí.

in the hands of the Imáms (f. 46b) and are eagerly studied by their disciples. The titles of his other less known works are omitted. His poems form a bulky volume. The following verses are his:

وَ قَدْ سَبَقْتُ عَقِيَّانَ نَارِ مَحْكَمَةٍ وَ بِأَنْسِبْكَ عَقِيَّانَ الْرِّجَالِ يُنَسِّبْ
وَ قَدْ شَلَبْتُهُ أَنْتَ بِيَانَ وَ إِنَّمَا تَفَرَّعَ غَصْنُ الدَّوْرَجِ حِينَ يُشَدْ

His early studies were pursued in Baghdad, first with Sayyid Abu'l-'Abbás, and then with the Qádí'l-quḍáti 'Abdu'l-Jabbár al-Hamadáni. One night, when every one was asleep, he came to the house of the latter and awakened him to ask him a question on theology. "Did you come only for this?" enquired the Qádí. "Yes," he answered, "I thought that I might perchance die to-night, being in doubt as to a matter of religious doctrine." In his time Ibn Sukkara¹ wrote the following *qasida* against the descendants of 'Alí:

إِنَّ الْخَلَافَةَ مَذْ دَنَتْ وَ مَذْ بَدَأَتْ
مَوْسَمَةَ بِغْتَمِي مِنْ آلِ عَبَّاسٍ
إِنَّ أَنْقَضَى عَمْرٌ فُدَّا قَمَ ذَا خَلْفَاءَ
فَلَاحَتْ أَشْمَسُ وَ أَمْتَنَتْ عَلَى أَنْتَاسِ
فَقَلَّ نِعْنَ بَرْتَجِيَّهَا غَيْرَ غَدَ سَفَهَا
تَوَسَّتْ رَوْحَتْ كَرْبَ الْشَّنِ بِالْيَاسِ

Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn answered in the following verses:

فَلْ لَأَبِي سُكَّرَةَ يَا بَغْلَ عَبَّاسَ
أَضَحَّتْ خِلَافَتِنِمْ مَنْخُوَسَةَ الْرَّأْسِ

¹ Called al-Háshimí, a descendant of 'Alí b. al-Mahdí b. Abí Ja'far al-Mansúr al-'Abbásí. See de Slane's translation of Ibn Khallikán, Vol. iii, pp. 115—118.

أَلَا لِمُطْبِعٍ فَلَا تُخْشِي دَوَائِرَةً
يَعِيشُ مَا عَاشَ فِي ذُلٍّ وَ إِنْعَاسٍ
فَلِحَمْدِ اللَّهِ حَمْدًا لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ
خَسْ أَبْنَ دَاعِي بِنَاجِ الْعَزِّ فِي النَّاسِ

Ibnu'l-Khayr the Náṣibi² answered this in a long *qaṣida* containing this verse:

أَبِي اللَّهِ أَلَا مَا شَرَوْنَ فَمَا تَمْ غِصَابًا عَلَى الْأَقْدَارِ يَا آلَ طَالِبِ

The Qádi Abú'l-Qásim 'Alí b. Muḥammad at-Tanúkhí, author of the *Kitábu'l-Faráj ba'da 'sh-Shiddat* (f. 47a) replied to this in the following poem:

مِنْ أَبْنَ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ وَ أَبْنَ وَصِيَّةِ
أَنَّهُ مَدْعُولٌ فِي عَقْدَةِ الَّذِينَ نَاصَبَ
نَشَّا بَيْنَ ثُنُبُورٍ وَ رِقَ وَ مَرْعَرَ
وَ فِي حَجَرٍ شَادٍ أَوْ عَلَى صَدْرٍ ضَارِبٍ
وَ مِنْ ضَبَرٍ سَكَرَانِ أَنَّهُ بَطَنَ قَنْيَةَ
عَلَى شُبَيْبَةَ فِي مَلْكَبَاهَا وَ شَوَّابِ
يَعِيبُ عَلَيْهَا خَيْرٌ مَنْ وَنَسَى الْأَخْصَانَ
وَ أَكْرَمَ سَارَ فِي الْأَنَامِ وَ سَارِبٍ
وَ يُزْرِعُ عَلَى أَسْبَقَيْنِ سَبْطَيْنِ مُحَمَّدٍ
فَقُلْ فِي حَصِيعِ رَامِ نَيْلَ الْكَوَافِبِ
تَشَوَّأْ بَيْنَ جَبَرِيلٍ وَ بَيْنَ مُحَمَّدَ
وَ بَيْنَ عَلَى خَيْرٍ مَاشَ وَ رَاكِبٍ
وَصَنِيَّ أَنْبَيَّ الْمُتَمْطَفِيَّ وَ صَفَيَّةَ
وَ مُشَبِّهَةَ فِي شِيمَةٍ وَ صَرَائِبِ

² Náṣibi is a term of reproach applied by the Shi'ites (or Ráfiḍis) to their opponents.

فَكَمْ مِثْلَ زَيْدٍ قَدْ أَبَدَتْ سُبُونَكُمْ
بَلَا سَبَبَ غَيْرَ الظُّفُونَ الْكَوَافِبِ
أَمَا حَمَلَ الْمُنْعَرُ مِنْ أَرْعَى يَثْرِبَ
بُدُورَ عَلَى يَجْلُو شَامَ الْغَيَّاْبِ
وَ قَطْعُتُمْ بِالْبَغْيِ قَيْمَ مُحَمَّدَ
قَرَائِنَ أَرْحَامَ أَهْ وَ قَرَائِبَ
وَ فِي أَرْضِ بَاحْمَرَ مَعَبِيْحَ قَدْ ثَوَّتْ
مَتَّبَةَ أَبَامَتْ حَمْرَ الْمَرَائِبَ
وَ غَادَرَ عَدِيْكُمْ بِفَيْنَ شَوَّافَا
يَعَادُنَّهُمْ بِنَفْعِ نَفْعِ الْمَوَاعِبِ
وَ هَارُونَكُمْ أَوْحَى بِغَيْرِ جَرِيَّةَ
نُجُومَ تَقَى مِثْلَ الْنُّجُومِ الْشَّوَّافِ
وَ مَأْمُونَكُمْ سَمَّ أَرْضَ بَعْدَ بَيْعَةَ
يَوْمَ ذَرَى شَمَ الْجَبَالَ الْمَرَّاَبَ
فَهَذَا جَوَابُ نَلَّى قَلَ مَأْنَمَ
غِصَابًا عَلَى الْأَقْدَارِ يَا آلَ شَنِبِ

When Sayyid Abú'l-Husayn had occupied Daylámán and established himself therein, men of learning came from all parts of the world to profit by his conversation, so that he even sent a message to the Qádi'l-qudat 'Abdu'l-Jabbár bidding him swear allegiance to him. The Hákím al-Jaysham¹ in his book entitled *Jilá'u'l-Abṣár* relates that he died on Sunday, the day of 'Arafa [i. e. the 9th of Dhú'l-Hijja], A. H. 421 (= Dec. 8, A. D. 1030), aged seventy years and

¹ Or *Jathim*, *Juthaym*, *Jaytham*, etc. See *H. Kh.*, N°. 4133, where a book named *Jilá'u'l-Abṣár* is mentioned by Abu Sa'id al-Hasan b. Muham-mad *al-Hashmi* (or "Joshemí"), who is perhaps identical with the author here mentioned.

أَلَا الْمُطِيقُ فَلَا تُخْشِي دَوَائِرَةَ
يَعِيشُ مَا عَاشَ فِي ذُلٍ وَ إِقْعَادِ
فَلَا حَمْدٌ لِلَّهِ حَمْدًا لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ
خَسْ أَبْنَ دَاعِي بِتَاجِ الْعَزِّ فِي النَّاسِ

Ibnu'l-Khayr the Náṣibi² answered this in a long *qaṣida* containing this verse:

أَبْنَ اللَّهِ إِلَّا مَا تَرَدَّدَ فَمَا تَنَمَّ غِصَابًا عَلَى الْأَقْدَارِ يَا آلَ طَالِبِ

The Qádi Abú'l-Qásim 'Alí b. Muḥammad at-Tanukhí, author of the *Kitábu'l-Faráj bá'da 'sh-Shiddat* (f. 47a) replied to this in the following poem:

مَنْ أَبْنَ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ وَ أَبْنَ وَصَيْبَهُ
أَنْسَى مَدْغَلَ فِي عَقْدَةِ الْتَّدِينِ نَاصِبَ
نَشَا بَيْسَنَ سُنْبُورَ وَرِفَ وَ مَزْقَرَ
وَ فِي حِجْرِ شَادِ أَوْ عَلَى صَدَرِ هَارِبِ
وَ مِنْ ضَبَرِ سَكَرَانِ إِلَيْ بَعْنَيْ قَنْيَةِ
عَلَى شَبَبَةِ فِي مَلْكَبَا وَ شَوَّابِ
يَعِيشُ عَلَيْهِ خَيْرٌ مَنْ وَسَى الْمَخْصَّا
وَ أَكْرَمَ سَارَ فِي الْأَنَامِ وَ سَارِبِ
وَ يَزْرِعِ عَلَى أَنْسَبَتِينِ سَبْطَيْ مَحَمَّدَ
فَقَلْ فِي حَضِيرَنِ رَامَ نَيْلَ الْكَوَافِبَ
نَشَوَّا بَيْنَ جَبَرِيلَ وَ بَيْنَ مُحَمَّدَ
وَ بَيْنَ عَلَى خَيْرِ مَاشِ وَ رَاكِبِ
وَصَيْ أَنْبَيْ الْمُعْنَطَقِيَ وَ صَفَيَةَ
وَ مُشَبِّهَةِ فِي شِيمَةِ وَ ضَرَائِبِ

² Náṣibi is a term of reproach applied by the Shí'ites (or *Ráfidis*) to their opponents.

فَكُمْ مِثْلُ زَيْدٍ فَدَأْدَتْ سَيْفَكُمْ
بِلَا سَبِبٍ غَيْرِ الظُّلُونِ الْكَوَافِبَ
أَمْ حَمَلَ الْمُنْتَصِرُونَ إِنْ أَرْضَ يَثْرَبَ
بُدُورَ عَدَى يَجْلُو دَلَامَ الْعَيْنَعَبَ
وَ قَطَعْتُمْ بَابَيْهِ قَمَّ مُحَمَّدَ
فَرَأَيْتَ أَرْحَامَهُ وَ فَرَأَيْتَ
وَ فِي أَرْضِ بَحْرَمَ مَعَابِيَهُ فَدَأْدَتْ
مَتَرَبَّةَ الْبَمَاتِ حَمَرَ الْشَّرَائِبَ
وَ غَادَرَ عَدِيَّكُمْ بَقَعَ شَوَّافَ
يَعَادِلُهُمْ بَشَقَّ نَفْعَ الْشَّوَّافِ
وَ فَارَقْتُمْ أَهْمَى بَغَيْرِ جَرِيرَةَ
ذُجَّومَ نَقَى مِثْلَ ذُجَّومَ الْشَّوَّافِ
وَ مَامُونَكُمْ سَمَّ أَرِضَا بَعْدَ بَيْعَةَ
يَوْمَ ذَرَى شَمَّ الْجَبَارَ أَرِّوا سَبَبَ
فَهِلَّا جَبَوْتُ لَذِكْرَ قَلْمَنْتَمْ
غِصَابًا عَلَى الْأَقْدَارِ يَا آلَ شَالِبِ

When Sayyid Abú'l-Husayn had occupied Daylamán and established himself therein, men of learning came from all parts of the world to profit by his conversation, so that he even sent a message to the Qádi'l-qudád 'Abdu'l-Jabbár bidding him swear allegiance to him. The Hákím al-Jaysham¹ in his book entitled *Jilá'u'l-Abṣár* relates that he died on Sunday, the day of 'Arafa [i.e. the 9th of Dhul-Hijja], A. H. 421 (= Dec. 8, A. D. 1030), aged seventy years and

¹ Or *Jathim*, *Juthaym*, *Jaytham*, etc. See *H. Kh.*, N°. 4133, where a book named *Jilá'u'l-Abṣár* is mentioned by Abú Sa'íd al-Hasan b. Muḥammad al-Hashmí (or "Joshemí"), who is perhaps identical with the author here mentioned.

odd, and that he was buried on the Monday, the *'Idū'l-Adhā* (10th of Dhu'l-Hijja) in his home at Lanká, where his tomb is still visible. His doctrine is still (f. 47b) followed by the people of that region, and the Ustundár Kay Káüs and his descendants, and the people of Daylam generally.

5. *Sayyid an-Nátiq-bi'l-Haqq Abú Tálib Yaḥyá b. al-Husayn aṭ-Táir bi-ta'yidilláh* was ten years older than his brother *Sayyid Mu'ayyad bi'lláh*, and was famous alike for his wisdom and his virtues. The father of these two brothers was of the Imámi sect, as were they also originally. This Sayyid received instruction first from *Sayyid Abu'l-Abbás*, then from the great Imámi teacher *Shaykh Abú 'Abdi'lláh*; and imparted it to *'Abdu'l-Jabbar Qádi'l-qudáṭ*; and amongst the Zaydís there was no more learned seeker after truth. He taught for several years in the College in Gurgán, where his lectures were much frequented by the learned. Later he went to Daylamán, and when his brother died, allegiance was sworn to him. When he became Imám, *Abu'l-Faraj 'Alí b. al-Husayn* wrote to him:

سَرَّ الْتَّبَرَةَ وَالْتَّبَيَّنَ وَزَقَ الْوَصِيَّةَ وَالْوَصِيَّا
أَنَّ الْدِيَنَمِ بَأَيَّعَتْ يَحْيَى بْنَ عَارُونَ الْرَّضِيَّا

On his son, who died young, the Sayyid composed the following threnody:

عَلَيْكَ سَلَامُ اللَّهِ سَاكِنَ بَلْقَعِ
فَلَيْسَ إِلَيْ دَفْعِ الْحَمَامِ سَبِيلٌ
وَلَيْسَ إِلَيْ غَيْرِ الْتَّصْبِيرِ مَفْرُوعٌ
وَإِنْ عَنْ حَطْبٍ فِي الْمُصَابِ جَلِيلٌ
وَإِنْ كَانَ حُنْنَ النَّاسِ عِنْدَ إِيَابِهِمْ
قَصِيرًا فَهَا حُزْنِي عَلَيْكَ طَوِيلٌ

وَإِنْ كُنْتَ تَحْتَ الْتُّرْبَ فِي الْرَّمْسِ تَازِلًا
فَذَكْرُكَ فِي حَشْوِ الْفَوَادِ تَسْرِيلٌ
وَتَوَلًا مَقْلَلَ النَّاسِ فَسَارَ حَلْمَةٌ
لَشْفَعَ تَسْكَابَ الْدَّمْعِ عَوْيَلٌ

Sayyid Abú Tálib Yaḥyá was born in A. H. 340 (= A. D. 951—2), and died in A. H. 422 (= A. D. 1031), aged 82, less than a year after his brother. Of his philosophical works the best known are the *Kitábu 't-Táhrir*, the *Commentary* on the *Kitábu'l-Mujzi*, and the *Kitábu'd-Dimá'a* (f. 48a).

6. *As-Sayyidu'l-Imámu'l-Faqihu'l-Álimu'l-Mutakallimu'sh-Shá'ir al-Hasan b. Hamza al-'Aláwi*. His tomb is opposite the College of Zaynu' sh-Sharaf. King Ardashír was induced to repair and renovate it by *Sayyid Imám Bahá'u'd-Dín al-Hasan b. Mahdí al-Mámtíri*. He was for many years in religious retirement at the shrine of the Imám 'Alí b. Músá ar-Ridá at Mash-had, in praise of which town he composed the following *qasida*:

أَبْدَرْ شَمَّ زَاغِرْ أَمْ نَرْ شَمْسَ بَاغِرْ
أَمْ غَمْنَ بَانَ ثَاضِرْ يَحْرَزَ فِيهِ الْتَّاضِرْ
أَخْيَرَانَ خَعْرَقَا أَمْ أَفْخَرَانَ تَغْرِقَا
أَمْ جَنْحَ لَيْلَ شَعْرَقَا أَمْ عَنَ تَوْرَ زَاغِرْ
فَصَبْحَ مِنْ غُرْتَهَا وَ أَنَّلَيْلَ مِنْ نُلْرَتَهَا
وَ الْمَسْكَ مِنْ نَدْبَتَهَا لَهَا نَسِيمَ شَاعِرْ
لِنَغْمَةِ قُرْطَقَهَا إِذَا مَشَتْ يُقْلِقَهَا
يَفْتَنِي مَنْضَقَهَا وَ حَلْشُ (?) فَوَاتِرْ
ذَبَدَرْ فِي تَمَثَّلِهِ وَ الْغُنْنِ فِي أَعْتَدَالِهِ
فَتَقْلِبَ مِنْ خَبَابَ لِدَابِدِ مَسْخَامِرْ

4910
BIRMINGHAM LIBRARY

لَا وَاللَّهِ يَعْلَمُ مَا فِي الْأَرْضِ طُرُّا وَ السَّمَا
 مَا نَلَّتْ مِنْهَا مَجْرَمًا كُنْتُ لَهَا أَحَادِيرُ
 غَيْرُ حَدِيثٍ وَ نَثَرْ مِنْ غَيْرِ فُلْكَشِ وَ دَرَرْ
 وَ اللَّهُ خَيْرٌ مِنْ غَفَرْ إِذْ عُوَرَّ غَافِرُ
 فَعَدْ عَنْ تَذَكَّارِهَا وَ خَلَ عَنْ سُمَارِقَا
 إِذْ أَنْتَ بَعْدَ دَارِهَا لِأَرْضِ نُسُوسِ زَائِرُ
 وَ رَبُّ قَفْرِ فَدَفَدَ كَفَارَمِ نَجَرَدَ
 يَتَيِّهُ غَيْدَ الْمَاعِرُ زَيَافَةَ حَفَاقَةَ
 فَسَعْتَ بِبَنَاقَةَ مَفَاقَةَ سَفَاقَةَ
 فِي سَيْرِهَا تَخَاطِلُ
 فِي غَيْرِ مَا كَلَّاهَا تَسْتَنِّ فِي إِرْفَانِهَا
 إِذَا حَدَّاهَا أَلْزَاجِرُ
 مِنْ أَمْلِ وَ نَازِلًا
 يَقْطَعُهَا الْمُسَافِرُ
 حِينَ إِلَيْهَا حَدَّهَا
 إِذَا أَتَسْرَابُ مَائِرُ
 أَطْنَحَ حَشَا نَاعِيَةَ
 يَوْمًا وَأَنْتَ بَاكِرُ
 لِمَهْرَوَانَ ذَاكِرًا
 مِنْ بَعْدِهَا قَوَاجِرًا
 بِرَامِكَ مِنْ عَائِنَهُ
 يَذْعُرُ مِنْهُ الْدَّاعِرُ
 إِلَّا وَقُوفَ الْمُنْتَحِرُ
 وَ الْقَلْبُ مِنْكَ طَائِرُ
 مِنْ أَسْتَرَابَادَ مَعَا

وَ نَلِرِبَاطَ فَاقْطَعَا وَ أَتَرَبَعَ مِنْهُ دَائِرُ
 وَقَفَ بِجَرَجَانَ فِي مَرْبِعِهَا مَا يَسْتَفِي
 بِالْحَقَّهُ وَ يَكْتَفِي وَارِدَهَا وَ الْقَسَادِرُ
 قَدْ أَغْتَدَ أَشْجَارَهَا تُرْصَعْتَ أَشْجَارَهَا
 وَ أَسْتَوْبِقَتْ شَمَارِقَهَا
 أَشْيَارَهَا تَرَاجِهَا يَطْرِبِنِي تَبَيَّنَجِهَا
 فَلَظَلَّ مِنْهَا صَافِرُ تَدْرِجِهَا عَرَاجِهَا
 تَعَهَّهَا وَ عَدَ قَاصِدَا دِينَارَ زَارِي رَائِدَا
 لَقْدِدَهَا مَجَعَدَا أُوسِرُ وَ أَنْتَ شَكَرُ
 قَطْعَتَهَا مَجَادِرَا نَشِيرَاسِفَ (?) جَلَوْزَا
 أَخْطَرَهَا جَلَمِرَا فَسَوْحَشَ مِنْهَا نَافِرُ
 حَتَّى أَتَيْتَ مَعْلِمَا لَاسْفَرَأَيِّمَ مَعَا
 قَصَرَ فِيَهُ عَابِرُ
 وَ مَاءُ كَلَّحَنْثَلَ شَمَ وَرَدَتْ الْمَعْقَلِيَ
 يَنَّلَهُ مِنْ غَرِيلَ تَعَفُّفُ أَلْجَازِرُ

He was commonly called Sayyid Abu'l-Qásim; and it is related that "the Great Násir" (نصر كبيـر), that most accomplished and eloquent scholar, used to say, "Were it lawful to repeat the verses of anyone in one's prayers, it would assuredly be the verses of Abu'l-Qásim!"

7. *As-Sayyid Shamsu 'Alí Rasúl'lláh*. He was a dervish, skilled in the traditions, and of ascetic and devout life. His tomb still stands outside the Gate, in the 'Awámma-kúy quarter (بدر دروازه محله عوامه کوی). Other learned Sayyids (? descendants of the above) contemporary with the author were: Sayyid Dhahíru'd-Dín Nassába of Gurgán, whose skill in scholastic theology and jurisprudence are recognized by all; Sayyid Ruknu'd-Dín of Sári; and his learned and vir-

tuous brother Sayyid Sharafu'd-Dín, whose tomb is in the College of Sayyid Imám Khaṭib, opposite Mashhad-i-Sar, and who did much to check the Zaydí and propagate the Imámi doctrines in those districts.

8. *As-Sayyidu'l-Imám Abú Tálib ath-Thá'ir.* He was one of five brothers, whose grandfather was called "Husayn the Poet" (حسین الشاعر). His brother was "the Great Náṣir", and his father was known as Muḥammad al-Fáris. Náṣir-i-Kabír's daughter had a servant named 'Umayr, and after the men of Gíl and Daylam had taken Tabaristán from the Sayyids, this servant also revolted, went to Gílán, and gave over all his master's property to be plundered. The men of Gílán rallied round him and forsook the Sayyid, who expressed his feelings in the following verses:

بَآلَ يَسَّ امْرَنِمْ عَجَبْ بَنَ آنَورِيْ قَدْ جَرَتْ مَقَادِيرْ
لَمْ يَنْفَلَمْ فِي حِجَازِكُمْ عَمْ حَتَّى بِجِيلَانَ جَاءَ تَعْغِيرْ

RULERS OF THE HOUSE OF BÁWAND.

This section opens with a glowing panegyric on this noble family, whose court is described, in very florid language, as an ever-open refuge to the distressed and the unfortunate.

1. *The Ispahbad* 'Alá'u'd-Dawla 'Ali b. Sháhriyár b. Qárin. His virtues, his doughty deeds, and how he secured the kingdom to himself in spite of jealous brothers and kinsmen will be mentioned subsequently. Amongst those who took refuge at his court were the following. *Shirzád*¹, son of Sultán Mas'úd (III) of Ghazna, who for a while shared the throne of Ghazna with Bahrámsháh (his brother). When he expressed a desire to perform the Pilgrimage to Mecca,

¹ See Lane-Poole's *Muhammadan Dynasties*, pp. 289 and 290. He reigned A. H. 508—509 (= A. D. 1114—1115).

the *Ispahbad* arranged his journey and supplied all that he needed day by day at every stage. After his return he was enabled to proceed once more to Ghazna.

Sultán Mas'úd b. Muḥammad the Seljúq, nephew of Sinjar, twice took refuge with the *Ispahbad*; first, when the Caliph [al-Mustarshid] was assassinated [A. H. 529 = A. D. 1135] he came thither with his son; secondly, when he quarrelled with Tughril, he brought his women-folk thither, and placed them in the hamlet of Aram (أَرَام) in the palace of the *Ispahbad*'s son Sháh-i-Gházi Rustam, while he himself received help to enable him to return to 'Iráq.

When Muḥammad b. Maliksháh died, all his sons took the oath of allegiance to Maḥmúd, and when he died they fell to fighting with one another, and Tughril, being defeated, fled to his [the *Ispahbad*'s] house. At the Pass (*Darband*) of Kilís he was stopped by 'Alí b. Zarrín-Kamar, and his two brothers Muḥammad and Abú Shujá'. He told then that he was flying from pursuing foes, but they told him that without the King's permission he could not advance. When news of this was sent to Sháh-i-Ghazi Rustam, he at once rode out as far as the village of Maqṣúra, brought in Tughril, and sent him to Sári to his father the *Ispahbad*.

Khwárazmsháh-i-Sa'íd Muḥammad had four sons, who, on his death, fell to quarrelling, and two of them fled to the *Ispahbad*, who heaped such favours upon them that men still talk of his bounty.

The Amir 'Abdu'r-Rahmán Tugha-Turk (طغاترخ) the Atábek came to his court from Ardabíl with a number of his retainers, and was hospitably entertained and then sent back along the coast to his kingdom. 'Imádi the poet, who was the panegyrist of this Atábek, speaks of him as follows:

عبد الرحمن که گر خواهد، از عفت سپه شش بکاهد

¹ MS. مخواهد, which must, I think, be wrong.

The *Amir* of *Hilla*, the son of Șadaqa "King of the Arabs", one of the most puissant, noble, generous and high-minded princes of the world, accompanied by 200 of his mounted retainers, took refuge with the *Ispahbad*, who on the first day of his arrival sent him a present consisting of 200 caparisoned horses, 300 coats and caps (قبا و نلا), 100 girdles, swords, coats of mail, helmets, and suits of horse-armour, and 10,000 gold *dinárs*. On another occasion Baraka (بارکا), the brother of the above-mentioned *Amir*, came to beg the *Ispahbad* to intercede for him with the Caliph, whom he had offended. The *Ispahbad* did so, obtained for him a written pardon and assurance of safety, and supplied him with money and other necessaries to take him back to his kingdom.

When Qatírmish (قطیرمیش) rebelled against the Sultán, he confided his brothers, children and women-folk to the *Ispahbad*'s care; they received from him the utmost kindness and attention, and, when it was safe, were sent back to their home.

2. The *Ispahbad* *Nuṣratu'd-Dín Rustam*, son of the above. He was, according to the author, the greatest ruler of Țabaristán since the time of Ferídún and Minúchihr, and the greatest possessor of treasures since Khusraw Parwíz. His power extended from Jájarm, Gurgán, Bisṭám and Dámghán to Múqán. He was the first of this House to sit on a throne at his receptions. Even in the author's time there remained forty castles filled with the gold and jewels and other precious things which he had amassed. When Kayká'ús Ustundár, with the approval of his chief judge, revolted against him, he marched to Rúyán to meet him, devastating and setting fire to the whole country. On this the *Ispahbad* Khurshíd b. Abu'l-Qásim Mámtírí composed the following verses in the dialect of Țabaristán¹:

¹ Variants: B. بسوجن before لاس; C. بسوجن for بوجن; A. تدبیر.

تدبیر کرد کاری کی کوشک بسوجن
اون که شیء کوشک بر بد و تا بلوچن
نون کشور بیس سوجن کیهون اروچن
تدبیر کرد کاری دیر هار موجن

After the death of Sinjar, his nephew Sulaymán Sháh fled from Maḥmúd Khán, the successor of Sinjar and his sister's son, and took refuge with the *Ispahbad* Rustam while he made preparations for attempting to recover Iráq. During the two months that he spent there, he and his followers were entertained daily at tables set in the Maydán-i-Tápán, till he had collected 20,000 men of Gilán, Daylamán and other parts of Țabaristán. The *Ispahbad* further supplied him with the necessary arms, stores and munitions of war, brought him to Ray, and set him on the throne. The *amirs* of Iráq and Adharbayján gathered round him, and Ray and Sáwa were surrendered to the *Ispahbad*. When Sultán Maḥmúd Khán learned his absence from Țabaristán, he marched thither with all Sinjar's *amirs*. In two days the *Ispahbad* hastened thither from Ray, and encamped at the hamlet of Kúsán at the foot of the Castle of Ab-Dara; and one night gave permission to king Qárin (قدیر) to attack the Turks with 400 *ghuláms* and 500 men of Báwand. These penetrated to Sultán Maḥmúd's quarters, inflicting considerable losses on the Seljúq troops. Next day Maḥmúd sent his kinsman Mu'ayyid Ayi Aba to attack and plunder Sári. The *Ispahbad* sent his son Iḥasan Sharafu'l-Mulúk by way of Lákash-i-Mihrawán to lie in ambush for the raiders, who fell into the ambush. A thousand Turks, including a kinsman of Sultán Maḥmud, were taken captive, while Mu'ayyid, with a few followers, succeeded in effecting

A. om. [سک] ; B. بودد; C. کوشک [کوشک] ; A. om. [سک] ; B. substitutes ^۱; C. هار for مار.

his escape. The *Ispahbad* treated the prisoners kindly, bestowed on them robes of honour, and sent them to Maḥmūd Khán with the following message: "Our people are independent house-holders, and what they do is done without our sanction." Maḥmūd than sent one of his chief nobles, "Azíz-i-Ṭughrá'i, to the *Ispahbad*, and it was agreed that in consideration of the sum of 20,000 *dinárs* the Sultan should withdraw to Gurgán, and that the *Ispahbad* should pay over this sum to the tithe-collectors (*muḥaṣṣilán*). When Maḥmūd had retired to Gurgán, the *Ispahbad* drove away the collectors, bidding them say to their master, "We gave up the money for [fear of] their maces"

بِوَدْ وَ اُورَا بِكُونِيدْ مَا زَرْ بِرْوِينْ دَادِيمْ،

The trouble which at this juncture broke out in Khurásán prevented Sultan Maḥmūd from taking any further steps; and he was nick-named in Ṭabaristán "Maḥmūd the Wheat-crusher" (*gandum-küb*), because his soldiers, finding no bread, used to cut and crush the ears of wheat which they found, and eat them.

Rashídu'd-Dín Waṭwáṭ, the Court-poet and secretary of Atsiz Khwárazm-sháh, composed many *qaṣidas* in praise of the *Ispahbad*, who in return used each year to send him 500 *dinárs*, a turban and coat (*jubba*), and a fully caparisoned horse. He composed the following *qaṣida* on the occasion when the *Ispahbad* went to Ray and seated Sulaymán Sháh on the throne:

جَلَّاكَ بَادَ فِي خَرَاسَانَ بَاهِرٌ وَ ذَكْرُكَ سَارٍ فِي الْعَرَاقِينَ سَائِرٌ
وَأَنْتَ حَسَامُ الْدِيَنِ فِي نُصْرَةِ الْهَلَقِيِّ حَسَامٌ إِذَا كَلَ الْبَوَاتِرُ بَانِرُ
غَدَا الْرَّى وَ الْأَيَادُ فِيهَا جَرِيَّةٌ لَقْدَكَ وَ الْأَجْفَانُ فِيهَا سَوَاعِرُ
تَفَرَّقَ مِنْ بَعْدِ الْتَّاجِمَعِ شَمِيلَكَ وَ دَارَتْ عَلَيْهَا بِالْبَلَالِيَا الدَّوَائِرُ
فَمَا قَائِلٌ إِلَّا لِتَقْوَاكَ ذَاكِرٌ وَ لَا سَائِلٌ إِلَّا لِتَجَدُّوكَ شَاكِرٌ

أَيَا مَلِكًا رَحْبَ الْقُضُورِ عَرَاعِرَا لَسَانُ الْلَّيَانِيِّ عَنْ مَسَاعِيَكَ قَاصِرٌ
جَلَّادَ فِي أَعْلَى الْسَّمَوَاتِ صَاعِدٌ وَ صَيْنُوكَ فِي أَفْصَنِ الْأَقْلَمِيِّ سَائِرٌ
أَيَا مَنَدَا نَلَمِرَ وَ أَنْبَهِيِّ فِي أَبْلَدِيِّ
مُحَيَّيَا بَدْرَ فِي الْغَيَّابِ زَاغِرٌ
وَ أَنْتَ أَيَّ رَفِيْقَ الْمُبَشَّمَانِ قَادِرٌ
وَ لَا نَعْبُدَ أَنَّهُ غَيْرُكَ تَاصِرٌ
أَمَّا نَبَمَّ عَنْ مَصْرَعِ أَنْبَغِيِّ حَاجِرٌ
أَمَّا نَبَمَّ عَنْ مَوْتَبِ الْفَلَمِ زَاجِرٌ
إِنَّا عَدَدْتَ نَلَادِمِينَ الْمَفَاخِرِ
وَ لَنَّنِيِّ فِي مَدْحَ صَدَرَكَ سَاحِرٌ
وَ لَمْ غَيْرِمَا مَا حَرَرَ الْنَّفَمَ شَاعِرٌ
غَيْشَ سَلِيمَ مَا حَرَرَ أَنْتَرَ دَيْبَ

On another occasion, when the *Ispahbad* went to Ray, set his own governor over it, and held it for a year and a half, Rashíd-i-Waṭwáṭ composed and sent to him the following poem:

جَبِينَكَ تَبَدَّرِ الْمُضِيِّ يَلْوُحُ
وَ تَلَلَكَ الْقَيْصَرِ تَغْدُو غَيْوَمَةَ
تَكَ الْرَّاهِةَ الْزَّرْقَرَ فِي لَلَّ وَقْعَةَ
بِهَا لَجَبِيشَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ فَتُوْحَ
صَفَاحَ بَاسِرَارِ الْكِفَاحِ تَبُوْحَ
وَ تَلَكَ صَعْبَ الْكَفَرِ وَ غُوْمَدَرَ
فَهَنَّ لَغْلَى يَا آلَ قَرَنْ سُورَةَ
فَفَعَنَنَهُ لِلْمَعْصَلَاتِ دَوَافَعَ
يَسِمَانَهُ يَمِمَّ الْقَبَاحِ صَوَرَمَ
نَجِنَدَهُ فِي أَرْضِ الْعَرَاقِ وَفَانَعَ
عَلَيْهِنَّ رَبَّاتِ الْجَاجِلَ تَنَوْحَ

فَلَا بَلَدٌ إِلَّا وَفِيهِ زَلَزْلٌ وَلَا خَلَدٌ إِلَّا وَفِيهِ قُرْوْجٌ
بَقِيَتْ مَدْنَى الْأَيَامِ فِي عَرَّةِ النَّعْمِ عَلَيْهِنَّ أَنْوَارُ الدَّوَامِ تَلْوَحُ

The following verses are from a *qasida* which the same poet composed in honour of the Ispahbad when he took the Castles of Mihrín and Man'ur-kūh (منور کوہ) from the Assassins:

لَأَرَائِهِ شَبْبُ آنَّدِيَاجِي سَوَاجِدُ
إِذَا أَشْعَلْتَ نِيرَانَبِينَ الشَّدَائِدُ
وَلَهُنَّهُ بِالْجَسْمِ إِنْ عَدَ وَاحِدٌ
بِهَا نُصِبَتْ لِلْتَّازِلِينَ الْمَوَائِدُ
وَأَنْتَافُهَا لِلرَّاغِبِينَ مَعَافِدُ
سَوْقَ الْمَانَ كُلُّهُنَّ فَوَائِدُ
وَهُنَّ لِأَعْنَاقِ الْمَعَانِي قَلَائِدُ
زَوَاعِرُ أَجْرَامِ الْسَّمَاءِ حَوَاسِدُ
مُحَمَّدَ تَقْنِي الدَّفَرَ وَهُنَّ خَوَالُ
وَتَسْبِيرُ وَالْأَجْفَانُ مِنْهُمْ رَوَافِدُ
وَعَلْ يَتَسَاوِي قَاعِدُ وَمُجَاهِدُ
مَمْهَدَةُ الْمَكْرُمَاتُ آنَّقَوَاعِدُ
وَمَنْزِلُكُمْ رَحْبٌ لِمَنْ هُوَ وَافِدُ
وَمَنْتَمْ رِيَاحُ الْفَانِيَاتِ رَوَاكِدُ
وَعَمَّةُ أَقْلَى الْعَصْرِ غَيَّدَكُمْ نَاعِدُ
وَأَنْتَ لَهَا فِي عَامَةِ الشَّرْكِ غَامِدُ
مُوَكِّدَةُ الْلَّدَنِينَ مِنْهَا الْمَعَادُ
بَقِيَتْ رَصَى الْخَالِ مَا لَاهُ بَارِفُ وَدَمِتْ رَحْمُ الْبَالِ مَا صَلَحَ رَاعِدُ

The author says that, through many Arabic-writing poets

have praised the House of Báwand, he has only cited Ra-shíd-i-Waṭwát because he was the greatest and most famous of their panegyrists, and because his own eulogies would be discounted by reason of his connection with the Dynasty, and the country over which it ruled.

One of the customs of the Ispahbad Rustam was that at the close of a wine-bout he would give permission to his boon-companions to take what they liked from his treasury. On one such occasion his kinsman the Amír Sábiqú'd-Dawla 'Alí Gílkhwárán, 'Alí Ridá the chamberlain (وكيل دري) and his sons, As'adu'd-Dín Husayn "the madman" (*diwána*), the Nidhám Muhammad and the Qiwám Farámarz went together, when they rose up from drinking, to the treasury, but found that all the money and jewels and most precious things had been already taken, and that only some bundles of silk were left. So each of them took three bundles of silk on their backs and twisted the contents of another round their feet. Being thus heavily laden, certain wits likened them to asses carrying bales of merchandise, and Bárbad-i-Jarídí, the Tabarí poet, extemporized the following couplet over them in the dialect of Tabaristán:

أَيْنِ دُوْ خَرْ كَهْ دَارَنَهْ پَادَشَاهِ اِبْرَوْنَ يَهْيَ خَرْ بَرِينَ نِيدَهْ يَكِيْ بِيَلَوْنَ

Another of the Ispahbad's customs was that he would not suffer poets to recite his praises in his presence, saying, "They falsely ascribe to me deeds which I never performed, and thereby I am put to shame." At length a poet named Mudhaffári came from Khurásán and said, "I will praise you for deeds that you have done," and he than recited a poem beginning:

جَنَتْ عَدَنَسْتْ كُوئِيْ كِشُورْ مَا زَنْدَرَانَ
دَرْ حَرِيمْ حَرَمَتْ اِسْفَيَدْ اِسْفَيَدَانَ

For each couplet he was rewarded with ten gold *dinárs*, and he also received a horse, a coat (قبا) and a hat (نلا).

3. *The Ispahbad Táju'l-Mulúk 'Ali b. Mardáwij.*

He was sent by his father to Merv in the reign of Sinjar, who gave him his sister in marriage, and held him so dear that he would not go forth from his palace until he had first seen him. On his father's death, he was made ruler of the Castle of Jahína and the country round about Tammísha (تامیشا). On the death of Sinjar, Sulaymán Sháh, who succeeded to the Seljúq throne, first took refuge with him.

Mardáwíj was one of the hardest and most expert riders ever seen. He would sometimes, on mounting, put a gold coin between each foot and the stirrup and gallop till midday without letting either slip out. One day when he and Sulaymán Sháh were encamped together at Gulpáyagan, there was a wager between them, the former betting a certain Arab horse, 4000 royal *dinárs*, and 100 silken garments, etc., against a favourite slave belonging to the latter. Mardáwíj won the wager, but at once sent back the slave-boy mounted on the Arab horse fully caparisoned, and accompanied by two other slaves. The great poet Anwarí composed in his praise, besides other poems, the *qaṣida* beginning:

أَنْدَلَّتْ حَيْدَرْ كَرَّارْ رَوْزَكَارْ تَلَّهْ الْمُلُوكْ صَفَدَارْ صَفَدَارْ رَوْزَكَارْ

In the service of Sultán Masúd the Seljúq was a certain champion called Sábiq of Qazwín, whose fame had spread throughout 'Iráq, Arabia and Khurásán. Him the Ispahbad induced to enter his service, giving him Bishtám, Dámghán and Jájarm in order that he might combat the Assassins. This Sábiq was very prodigal, and on one occasion he wrote to the Ispahbad complaining that he lacked money to pay his troops. The Ispahbad turned to his nobles and said, "He is an ocean (in munifence): what adequate gift can one confer on the ocean? Let 20,000 *dinárs* be now

sent to him, and let an order be written that henceforth all that he can conquer in those regions shall be his, together with the fief-holds there."

4. *The Ispahbad 'Alá'u'd-Dawla Hasan b. Rustam b. 'Ali.*

He also was a man whose generosity and statesmanship "had transcended perfection by several parasangs." His only fault was that he was too impetuous and self-confident, which qualities brought disaster both on him and his subjects. Yet:

كَفَىَ الْمَرْضَانَ تَعْدَ مَعْيَنَةً

When 'Il-Arslán Khwárazmsháh died (A. H. 568 = A. D. 1172), and his son Tukush wrested the throne of Khwárazm from his brother Sultán Sháh Mahmúd, the latter with his mother took refuge with the Ispahbad, who came to Tammísha to meet them, and sent forward his governors and officers from Gilán and the districts of Ray with presents, while in the plain of Ganjína, as far as Ispíd Dáristán, for a distance of a parasang, he caused such a feast to be spread as no man ever saw before or since.

5. *The Ispahbad Husámu'd-Dawla wa'd-Din Ardashir b. Husayn*¹. He reigned for 35 years over Tabaristán. — Eulogy of his virtues and talents.

After the death of the Atábek Muhammád b. Ilduguz, Sultán Tughril (II) b. Arslán, in consequence of a dispute which arose between him and his brother Qizil Arslán, wrote from 'Iráq:

إِنَّمَا غَلَقْتُ أَبْوَابَ قَوْمٍ أَرَانِيلَ فَبَابَكَ مَفْتُوحٌ وَلَيْسَ بِمُرْتَجٍ
وَقَمَّكَ مَقْسُورٌ عَلَيَّ تَلْبِيَّ الْعَلَىٰ وَسَيْلَكَ(؟) مُوقِفٌ² عَلَىٰ كُلِّ مُرْتَجٍ

The Ispahbad, in response to this appeal, being encamped at Dih-i-Fulúl in Láriján, sent out his *amirs* and nobles to

¹ Lower, "Hasan", which seems to be correct.

² A. B. مَرْفُوعٌ.

Ray to meet the Seljúq king, and himself went forward to Lár, where, on meeting him, he alighted from his horse, brought his royal guest to Fulúl, and there enthroned and entertained him royally. Qizil Arslán, hearing of this, sent 'Izzu'd-Dín Yahyá to Ardashír to persuade him, by reminding him of the favours which he had formerly received from his father and brother, to arrest and bind Tughril and surrender him to his antagonist, promising the Ispahbad in return for this service the rule of Ray, Sáwa, Qum, Kashan and Qazwín, and full authority over 'Iráq and Adharbayján. The Ispahbad indignantly rejected the proposal that he should betray his guest, and after a while sent Tughril to Dámghán and Bisṭám, bidding his officers there supply all his needs day by day until he reached his capital.

In A. H. 579 (= A. D. 1183—4) an ambassador named Khujand (?), with two companions, came from the Maharaja of India to the Ispahbad, stating that an 'Alawí of the Imámi (Shí'ite) sect had come to that country to endeavour to persuade men to his views, and had prevailed in argument against their doctors; whereupon the Maharaja had despatched a letter to "the just and upright king in Ṭabaristán, who is descended from the Kisrás (House of Sásán), and who holds this doctrine" with an embassy of 40 persons, of whom 38 had perished on the way. At the command of the Ispahbad, the answer to this letter was written at great length by Sayyid Bahá'u'd-Dín al-Hasan b. al-Mahdí al-Mámtírí, who was living at this time. A long extract from this letter, written in very florid Arabic, and celebrating the praises of Ṭabaristán and its ruler Ardashír, here follows. Indeed it seems to have been not so much a letter as a tract, bearing the formal title *Risálatu'l-Hunud fi ijábati da'wa dhawi 'l-Anúd* ("the Epistle to the Indians in reply to the pretensions of the obdurate").

On one occasion Núru'd-Dín Ṣabbágh came to the Ispah-

bad as an ambassador from Tukush b. Il-Arslán at Dawlat-ábád near Sári, (f. 56b) and there he caused a pulpit to be erected and preached a sermon, concluding with the following verse:

دیدم عمردا و گست بللہ جز بر تو حرام نام شنای

Indeed, says the author, there was never a more law-abiding (بَالِيْن تَر) king than he. His capital was at Sári, where dwelt his ministers, and where was situated their *diwán*, called the *Diwán-i-Waṣl*. Every year he used to disburse in pensions more than 100,000 gold *dinárs*, and every Friday, wherever he might be, he used to give 100 *dinárs* out of the palace treasury to the Minister of Justice (أمير العدل), who used then to go to the public square (*maydán*) and distribute the money amongst the most deserving persons whom he found waiting there. Sayyids, men of learning, poets and literary men used to flock to his court with books, poems and prayers which they desired to lay before him; and amongst the most distinguished men who were his pensioners were Sayyid 'Izzu'd-Dín Yahyá, the judges (قصَّة) of Ray, and the Shaykhul-Islám Ruknu'd-Dín عَجَلَان (?), each of whom used to receive 700 *dinárs*, a fully caparisoned horse, a turban and a cloak (*jubba*), Khwája Imám Faqíh-i-Al-i-Muhammad Abu'l-Faḍl Ráwandí, Sayyid Murtadá Káshání, Afḍalu'd-Dín Máhabádí, the judges of Isfahán, the family of the poet Shafarwuh, and all the Sayyids of Qazwín, Abhar and the districts round Kharaqán. From Egypt, Syria and Arabia also two or three thousand 'Alawís used to come yearly to pass the winter in Ṭabaristán, where they received free entertainment, clothes and money for their expenses. When the Ispahbad rode out, these 'Alawís marched beside him in ranks, and whatever boon any one of them craved was granted to him, the Ispahbad saying, "In all the world these have no other door than this court;

give them therefore what they need." On one occasion he gave a sum of 29,000 *dinárs* of Amul from his treasury to enable poor 'Alawís of both sexes to marry. Every year at the season of the Pilgrimage, also, he used to disburse the following sums:

For "water-money" (آب سبیل), 4000 *dinárs*; and his standard was carried side by side with that of the Caliph, while the standards of all the other kings and rulers of the time followed behind.

For the *Amíru'l-Hajj*, or Leader of the Pilgrimage, 2000 *dinárs* and a fully caparisoned horse, in substitution for the tax which they used to levy on the pilgrims; and a herald used to proclaim. "All the pilgrims are the freed men of the King of Mázandarán."

For the Shrine (*mashhad*) of Sámarra, or *Surra man rā'a*, 500 *dinárs*.

For the Shrine of 'Abdu'l-'Adhim in Ray, 200 *dinárs*.

For the Graves of Quraysh, 300 *dinárs*.

For the Shrines of the sons of the Imám Hasan at Mádá'in, 200 *dinárs*¹.

For the Shrine of 'Alí b. Abi Tálib, 2000 *dinárs*.

For the Shrine of Salmán the Persian at al-Mádá'in, 150 *dinárs*.

For the Shrine of Imám Husayn at Kerbelá, 6000 *dinárs*.

For the Shrine of Abu'l-Hasan 'Alí b. Músa al-Báqir (*sic*), 1000 *dinárs*².

For the Amírs of Mecca, 200 *dinárs* for turbans and cloaks.

For the Shrine of the Ka'ba and the water-carriers (سدنه کعبه و سقا), 1000 *dinárs*.

For the pigeons of Mecca, the produce of a village, mill and hot bath.

¹ Inserted in B.

² Omitted in B.

(کبوتران مکه و گرمابه و آسیا وقف بود مخصوصاً میفرستان)

For the poor of Mecca, 5 bales (رزمه) of silk.

For al-Madína, 3000 *dinárs*.

For the Shrines of the Imáms buried at al-Baqí^c, 1000 *dinárs*.

For the poor of al-Madína, the value of 5 bales (رزمه) of silk. These bales were sold in Baghdad, and the money thus obtained was spent on linen (کربلاس), which was divided amongst the poor.

The most eminent of contemporary poets, Dhahíru'd-Dín Fáryábí, has many *qasídas* in praise of this Ispahbad, amongst them the following:

سپیله دم که شوا مزنه بپار دعد
دم شوا مدد نفه تترز دعد
دل مرا که فراموش کرد عید وصال
نسیم باد صبا بوی زنف یلر دعد
زآب دیده بمحی فقاد ام که جند
خیلرا سوی بالین من گذار دعد
زست نا خوشی آنکس رعنده دند
بلست من می صافی خوشکوار دعد
حسام دولت و دین آنده در مقام نبرد
قرار ملک بشمشیر بیقرار دعد
ستود خسرو عله که خاک درگه او
سپیله سر زدرا تچ افتخار دعد
سپیله خرقه در اندازد از شوب چو بحرب
زیان خنجر او شرح کارزار دعد
ایا شنبی نه یمینت بکار خشش وجود
بلان و دریا سرمایه یسار دعد

حایات تو شب قیرزرا اگر خواهد
 ز زخم خنجر خوشید زینهار دهد
 خفت بخت حسودت چنانکه پنداری
 زمانه روز و شبش کوک و کوکنار دهد
 سریر ملک عطا داد کردگار ترا
 جش خوش بود عرجه کردگار دهد
 در آن زن که بد اندیش روز کورترا
 قضا بمیل سنان اغبر غبار دهد
 سپاه بی عدالت بیم آن بود آنروز
 که عفت قلعه افلاکرا حصار دهد
 عروس ملک کسی در سنار گیرد تنگ
 که بوسه پر لب شمشیر آبدار دهد
 ز صد دنیار یکی باشد آنکه توفیقش
 حسام قفع و بازوی کامکار دهد
 اگر پنه املا متفهم شود یزدان
 ز حفظ خوش ترا حصن استوار دهد
 عدوت مثل تو آنکه شود که خنجر بید
 بر روز معزکه آثر ذو الفقار دهد
 عیشه تکه مرین چرخ بد معامله را
 برای دار فنا مهلت مدار دهد
 تو پایدار بمان ز آنکه جای آن داری
 که کردگار ترا عمر پایدار دهد

After the poet had been for some time at the Ispahbad's court, and had received at his hands many favours, he asked and received permission to visit the Atábek Qizil Arslán, son of the Atábek Ilduguz, who was at that time

in possession of Iráq and Adharbayján. There he composed a *qasida* in which occurred the following verse:

شاید که بعد خدمت د ساله در عراق
 نامه عنوز خسرو مازندران دهد

(f. 58a) Some of the servants of the Ispahbad Ardashír were present when this poem was recited before Qizil Arslán, and they sent a copy of it to their master, who thereupon sent the poet 100 *dinárs*, a fully caparisoned horse, a necklace, a cap and a coat.

NOBLES AND NOTABLES OF TABARISTÁN.

1. *Abdu'lláh al-Husayn b. Sahl*, known as *Táji Duwayr* (المعروف بناجي دويير). His yearly income was 200,000 *dinárs*. One night at Amul some of the courtiers and boon-companions of the Ispahbad came to visit him, and he bestowed on them 500 silken garments, and wrote them a cheque for 20,000 *dinárs*:

بیست هزار دینار پر املاک چک نوشت

One day his master the Ispahbad Pádhúsbán went out hunting, and was beset by a number of petitioners (متظلمان), of whom he asked, "whom do ye seek?" Being answered that they sought the Ispahbad in order to lay their needs before him, he said: "If ye seek the Ispahbad who is king and ruler, and who has wealth, servants, retinue, pomp, glory and a merry life (عيش خوش), then it is Táji Duwayr at Amul; but if you seek that one who night and day is with his falcons, his cheetahs and his dogs, then it is I."

2. *Abú Isháq Ibráhim b. al-Marzubán* constructed, out of his own income, most of the roads and bridges of Tabaristán and Rúyán.

3. *Muhammad b. Músá b. Hafṣ*. The daily expenditure of his kitchen at Amul was 1000 *dinárs*, and at his own charges he sent 1000 pilgrims to Mecca, whom he fed so

delicately during the journey thither that in the middle of the desert they had fresh fish and cress from Ṭabaristán to eat.

4. *Abú Ṣádiq Hárún b. 'Ali al-Āmulí* visited Mecca in this same fashion.

5. *'Ali b. Hishám al-Āmulí* visited Mecca in this same way in the days of 'Abdu'lláh al-Ma'mún, and every day in the desert heralds proclaimed, "Come to the banquet of the Amír!" And at his table men of note and persons of no consequence alike sat down as his guests. Al-Ma'mún ordered that no one in Baghdad should sell him fire-wood or cress, but he brought paper to burn instead of fire-wood, and in place of cress he garnished his table with green silk torn up into shreds.

6. *Sahl b. al-Marzubán* possessed Láriján. He constructed a road through country which before his time was impracticable both in summer and winter, by cutting and tunnelling the mountains, making bridges, and building rest-houses; and made this road the best and safest.

LEARNED MAN OF TABARISTÁN.

1. *Muhammad b. Jarir at-Tabari*, the celebrated author of the great History, the great Commentary, the *Dhaylu'l-Mudhayyal*¹, and other works. All men of learning agree that no nation has produced so great a scholar as him. It is said that 400 riding-camels might daily be seen waiting at the gate of his house in Baghdad, belonging to sons of the caliphs, kings, ministers and *amírs*, besides some 30 mules, each watched by an Abyssinian groom, the owners of all these having come thither to glean what they could from Ṭabari's incomparable learning.

¹ See the *Introduction* to de Goeje's monumental edition of Ṭabari's *Annals*, pp. xiii—xv. It is called here in our MS. *كتاب الذيل و المذيل*.

2. *Imám-i-shahid* ("the Martyr") *Fakhru'l-Islám 'Abdu'l-Wáhid b. Isma'il Abu'l-Mahásin*, who is called "the second Sháfi'i", and for whom the *Nidhámu'l-Mulk* built a college at Amul which still flourished in the author's time. Of him Abu'l-Ma'áli of Juwayn said: ابو تحسین کله محسن. He was the author of many works on Jurisprudence, the Ascetic Life, and other religious subjects, of which more than 40 volumes are in general circulation. His acuteness and discernment are illustrated by the following story, which also explains how it happened that he incurred the resentment of the Assassins (ملاحدہ، ملاعین) and perished by the daggers of their *fida'is*:

کیاست او تا بغاۓ تو بود کہ بعید او ملاحدہ ملاعین فتویٰ
تلبیددند و پر گاغد نوشته کہ چکوپند ائمۂ دین در آنکہ مدعیٰ و
مدعیٰ علیہ پر حق و راستی راضی شوند گواہ بیتید و خلاف
دعوٰ مدعیٰ و اقرار مدعیٰ علیہ گواہ دعد، چنین شہادت بشرع
سمیع باشد یا نہ، واپس گاغد پر بحرمتین فرستادند، امامان حرمین
محمد جوینی و محمد غزالی و ائمۂ بغداد و شام جملہ جواب
نوشتند کہ چنین گواہ مسمیع نیست تا پیش او آورند، در
کاغذ نگرید و روت بھر کوڑہ گفت ای بد بخت چندین سعی نا
مشکور بر تو ویل باشد و بفرمود کہ اورا باز دارند و قصاء و ائمۂ
جمع آمدند، گفت این فتویٰ ملاحدہ نوشتند واپس مدعیٰ و
مدعیٰ علیہ جبود و ترسا اند و این گواہ رسول ما صلیع را میخواوند
کہ قرآن مجید شاعدست وَمَا قَتَلُواْ وَمَا صَلَبُواْ وَلَئِنْ شَهَدَتْهُمْ^۱
ملاحدرا باز پرسیدند اقرار کرد کہ یاک سالست تا مرا جہان بطلب
جواب این استفتہ می دوئند، عوام آمد اورا سنگسار کرند و فخر
اسلام فتویٰ فرمود بسبی ذرا تی ایشان تا ملاحدہ بفرستادند و

¹ Qur'án, iv, 156.

بغدر برو در مقبره جامع آمل بدم حد که مناره است بترخم کارد
آن اسما را شهید گردانیدند و هنوز آن کارد مدرسه بخانه ایشان
نهاده من بنوبتها دیدم،

3. *The Qádi'l-qudát Abu'l-Abbás ar-Rúyáni*. He was Chief Judge in the time of Shamsu'l-Ma'álí Qábús (A. H. 366—403 = A. D. 976—1012), and his descendants still exercise judicial functions in Ṭabaristán. Many anecdotes are told of him, of which the one here outlined is included amongst the stories printed at the end of Forbes' *Persian Grammar* (London, 1869, pp. 28—29, Story Lxxi).

RELIGIOUS LEADERS (IMÁMS) OF ṬABARISTÁN.

1. *Ibn Mahdi Mám̄tiri*. His grave at Mám̄tír had been visited by the author.

2. *Muhammad al-Yazdádi*. His writings are so well known as to need no mention.

3. *Ibn Fúrak*, the preacher of the *Masjid-i-sálár* at Ámul. The pulpit which still stands there by the *mihráb* was erected for him. "I have heard," says the author, "from my master Ibráhím b. Muhammad Násíhí, that the Ṣáhib [Isma'il b.] 'Abbád, prompted by fanaticism, arrested and imprisoned him in a darkened house at Ray. Abú Isháq of Isfára'ín the scholastic philosopher (*mutakallim*) used at this time to go to the Ṣáhib and hold discussions with him every day. One day while they were thus engaged in a garden, the discussion turned on the 'creation of actions' (خلق الافعال). The Ṣáhib stretched out his hand, picked an apple from a tree, and said, 'Is not this my act?' (f. 59b) 'If it be thine act,' replied Abú Isháq, 'restore it to the same place.' The Ṣáhib, unable to reply to this, said, 'Ask thy boon.' 'My boon,' said the other, 'is [Ibn] Fúrak.' The Ṣáhib immediately ordered his release; whereupon he came to Ámul." There

he remained till the end of his life, and then the Sálár built for him the Mosque still known as the Sálár's Mosque. While in prison Ibn Fúrak composed two books on Scholastic Philosophy (علم کلام). He is buried in the quarter of 'Alí Kaláwa (محله علی کلاؤ) above the Dome of the Cross-roads (سر بالاء گنبد چهار راه).

4. *The Qádi'l-qudát Abu'l-Qásim al-Bayyá'i*. He was remarkable for his knowledge in Jurisprudence, Scholastic Philosophy, Poetry, Epistolary style and Philosophy. He wrote, both in prose and verse, in Arabic, Persian and the dialect of Ṭabaristán.

5. The Great Master *Abu'l-Faraj 'Ali b. al-Husayn b. Hindú*¹. Though his ancestors came from Qum, he himself was born and brought up in Ṭabaristán. His grave is at Astarábád, in a house which was his property. Of him al-Bákhárí says:

كَانَ اَنْفَضْلُهُ لِخَلْقِ الْاَنْهَارِ،

The following are the best-known and most widely read of his works:

كتاب البلغة، كتاب نزعه، كتاب امذکور و المؤقت، كتاب امثال اموده، كتاب مفتاح الغنیمة، كتاب انساحة، كتاب دلمة الروحانية في حكم اليونانية، كتاب الوسائط بين الزنا و اللواط،

Besides these he has written much on Philosophy, Medicine and Philology, and his collected poems amount to 15,000 couplets, or even more, "pure as limpid water and like unto lawful magic." His Arabic treatises form five volumes in his writing.

و يک منشور فضایی آمل بخانه جمال بازرغه محله جوله کوی نهاده
که بعد شرف المعلی بروئی اسلاف بازرغه نوشته بود مثل آن خط

¹ He died, according to *H. Kh.*, in A. H. 410 or 420 (A. D. 1019 or 1029).

بغدر پر در مقصیره جامع آمل بدم حد که مناره است بزخم کارد
آن امیرا شهید گردانیدند و هنوز آن کارد مدرسه خانه ایشان
نهاده من بنویتها دیدم،

3. *The Qádi'l-qudát Abu'l-Abbas ar-Rúyáni*. He was Chief Judge in the time of Shamsu'l-Ma'álí Qábús (A. H. 366—403 = A. D. 976—1012), and his descendants still exercise judicial functions in Ṭabaristán. Many anecdotes are told of him, of which the one here outlined is included amongst the stories printed at the end of Forbes' *Persian Grammar* (London, 1869, pp. 28—29, Story Lxxi).

RELIGIOUS LEADERS (IMÁMS) OF ṬABARISTÁN.

1. *Ibn Mahdi Mámíri*. His grave at Mámír had been visited by the author.

2. *Muhammad al-Yazdádi*. His writings are so well known as to need no mention.

3. *Ibn Fúrak*, the preacher of the *Masjid-i-sálár* at Amul. The pulpit which still stands there by the *mihráb* was erected for him. "I have heard," says the author, "from my master Ibráhím b. Muhammad Nášíhí, that the Sháhib [Isma'il b.] 'Abbád, prompted by fanaticism, arrested and imprisoned him in a darkened house at Ray. Abú Isháq of Isfará'ín the scholastic philosopher (*mutakallim*) used at this time to go to the Sháhib and hold discussions with him every day. One day while they were thus engaged in a garden, the discussion turned on the 'creation of actions' (خلق الاعمال). The Sháhib stretched out his hand, picked an apple from a tree, and said, 'Is not this my act?' (f. 59b) 'If it be thine act,' replied Abú Isháq, 'restore it to the same place.' The Sháhib, unable to reply to this, said, 'Ask thy boon.' 'My boon,' said the other, 'is [Ibn] Fúrak.' The Sháhib immediately ordered his release; whereupon he came to Amul." There

he remained till the end of his life, and then the Sálár built for him the Mosque still known as the Sálár's Mosque. While in prison Ibn Fúrak composed two books on Scholastic Philosophy (علم کلام). He is buried in the quarter of 'Alí Kaláwa (محكمة على كلوا) above the Dome of the Cross-roads (سر بلا گنبد چهار راه).

4. *The Qádi'l-qudát Abu'l-Qásim al-Bayyá'i*. He was remarkable for his knowledge in Jurisprudence, Scholastic Philosophy, Poetry, Epistolary style and Philosophy. He wrote, both in prose and verse, in Arabic, Persian and the dialect of Ṭabaristán.

5. The Great Master *Abu'l-Faraj 'Ali b. al-Husayn b. Hindú*¹. Though his ancestors came from Qum, he himself was born and brought up in Ṭabaristán. His grave is at Astarábád, in a house which was his property. Of him al-Bákharzí says:

لَمْ يَنْفَعْهُ الْفَضْلُ لَمْ يَخْلُقْ الْأَنْوَارَ،

The following are the best-known and most widely read of his works:

كتاب تبلغه، كتاب ترغمه، كتاب اندثار و الموقت، كتاب امثال نويده، كتاب مفتح الغرب، كتاب المساحة، كتاب فضة الروحانية في حلم اليونانية، كتاب الوسائط بين الزنا و اللواز.

Besides these he has written much on Philosophy, Medicine and Philology, and his collected poems amount to 15,000 couplets, or even more, "pure as limpid water and like unto lawful magic." His Arabic treatises form five volumes in his writing.

و بدو منشور قصائی آمل خانه جمال بازرغه بمحکه جوله کوع نهاده
لَمْ يَعْنِدْ شَرْفَ الْمَعْلَى بِرَأْسِ اَسْلَافِ بَازْرَغَةِ نُوشْتَهْ بُودَ مِثْلَ آنِ خَطَّ

¹ He died, according to *H. Kh.*, in A. H. 410 or 420 (A. D. 1019 or 1029).

درین عهد و سالها کسی ننوشت و یکی از کبار علماء در حق او میکوید (بیت)

سَمَا فِي الشِّعْرِ أَعْلَمُ كَبَارَ فَصَارَ لِكُلِّهِمْ شَرْفٌ وَ مَجْدٌ
فَأَوْتَهُمْ إِذَا ذُكِرَ أَبْنَ حَجَرٍ وَ أَخْرُقَمَ أَبْوَ الْفَرْجِ أَبْنَ هِنْدُو

6. *The Imám 'Abdu'l-Qádir al-Furjáni*, concerning whom al-Bákharzí says:

اتفقت على امتهنة الاسنة و تجلت بمكانه و زمانه الامكنته و الازمنة
و اثنى عليه طيب العناصر و ثنيت به عقود الخناصر فهو فرد في
علماء العرب لا بد تعلم الفرد في الايام المشاهير،

His grammatical works include the *Jumal* and its commentary, the commentary on the *Idáh-i-‘Aqdí*, and the *Talkhiṣ*. Some of his poems are cited in the *Dumya* [*tu'l-Qaṣr* of al-Bákharzí].

7. *Abú Sa‘íd Mudhaffar b. Ibráhím*. He was a learned jurisconsult, and was for some time attached to the *Šahib* [*‘Isma‘íl*] b. ‘Abbád, after whose death he sought the patronage of *Abú Tálib Hárún ath-Thá'ir al-‘Alawí*, who bestowed on him ample favours, and dismissed him to his home, but he was unfortunately drowned in the Caspian Sea while crossing to *Ābasgún*. These verses are his:

أَسْخَرْ بِأَجْفَانِهِ أَمْ خَمَارْ وَ مَسْلَكْ بِعَارِصِهِ أَمْ غَدَارْ
غَرَّالْ بِخَدِيَّهِ وَرَدْ أَنْجَيَاءَ وَ طَلَّ الْجَمَالِ عَلَيْهِ نَثَارْ
فِينْ رِيقَهِ يُنْعَاطِي الْرَّحِيفُ وَ مِنْ خَدَهِ يُجْتَنِي الْجَلَنَارْ

Al-Bákharzí gives an account of him in the *Dumyatu'l-Qaṣr*, and cites these verses which occur in a *qaṣida* composed by him in praise of Qábús:

أشيم عفوك و الامل تبسطه و موقفی منك مثل الاخذ بالکظمِ
اذا رقدت فان الروح في حلمي و لان افقت قطعه الموت ملء فمِ
لا يامنَّ اخ طالث سلامته و الدُّفُرُ مَغْرِبُهُ لَمْ نَامْ لَمْ يَتَمِ

Mention is also made of his son *Abu'l-Majd* and his brother *Abu'l-Faraj al-Mudhaffar b. Isma‘íl*, the jurisconsult, traditionist, anchorite and man of letters.

8. *‘Adi b. ‘Abdu'lláh*; 9. *Abú Sa‘íd as-Saydaláni*; 10. *Abú Hanifa Muḥammad b. Muḥammad al-Astarábádi Bári‘-i-Furjáni*:

نَصَحَّتْ أَخْرِيَّ وَ تَحْرُّرَ لَا يَعْلَمُ وَ قَلَّتْ لَهُ قُوَّةٌ مِنْ يَغْبَهُ
تَعْلَمَ إِذَا كَنْتَ فِي شَرْوَةٍ فِي مَالِ يَحْسَنُ مَا تَعْلَمُ
وَ فِي الْعِلْمِ زَيْنٌ نَذْعَنُ دَرْعَمْ

11. *Abu'l-‘Alá al-Mihrawáni*, lawyer, mathematician, poet, jurisconsult, etc.

12. *Muḥammad b. Farír b. Rustam as-Sarwí*, jurisconsult, philosopher, traditionist, etc. He was a fervent Shi‘ite, and was for a long while in attendance on the Eighth Imám, ‘Alí b. Músá ar-Ridá. His most famous works are the *Kitábu'l-Mustarshid* and the *Kitábu 'Khudhú'n-na‘r* ("Book of 'Pluck off thy shoes'").

13. *Khwája Imám ‘Imád Kujaj*², called *Faqih-i-‘Al-i-Muḥammad*, a learned, pious and ascetic man. The Amir Ibn Darrám³ detained him for a couple of years at Ḥilla. The people of Baghdad and Kúfa and the Shi‘ites of Arabia sought him out to profit by his learning, and subscribed yearly a sum of 1000 *dinárs* for his maintenance. Ibn Darrám³ married his daughter, and one of their descendants was living at Ḥilla in the time of the author (who had visited him), and enjoyed the favour of the reigning Caliph an-Násir li-dínilláh (A. H. 575–622 = A. D. 1180–1225), by reason of his learning, virtue and nobility.

¹ The last hemistich is wanting in all the manuscripts.

² This name occurs as كَجِيج in A, كَجِيج in B, and كَجِيج in C. It also occurs in Dawlatsháh, pp. 310–316 of my edition.

³ Or *Warrám*.

WRITERS AND SCRIBES OF TABARISTÁN.

1. 'Alí b. Zayn was noted for his originality and eloquence. Amongst his works are the *Firdawsu'l-Hikmat* and the *Baḥru'l-Fawā'id*. He was originally secretary to Mázyár (put to death A. H. 226 = A. D. 840—1), and afterwards of the Caliph al-Mu'taṣim (d. A. H. 227 = A. D. 842).

2. 'Abdu'lláh, known as *Ibnu't-Tabari*, came to Sámarra in great poverty in the Caliphate of al-Mutawakkil (A. H. 232—247 = A. D. 847—861), and, when in such dire straits that he had to sell most of his clothing for food, was fortunate enough to attract the notice of the Caliph's son al-Mu'ayyad bi'lláh, and so attained to affluence and wealth.

(f. 61a) SAINTS AND ANCHORITES.

1. *Shaykh Abu'l-Abbás Qaṣṣáb* ("the Butcher"), whose fame still endures, and whose tomb is still frequented.

2. *Shaykh Abú Ja'far al-Hanáti*. In his shrine is preserved a Qur'án said to have been written by 'Alí's son Muḥammad called *Ibnu'l-Hanafíyya*, which has such virtue that any person daring to swear falsely on it dies miserably within the year.

3. *Shaykh-i-Záhid*. His tomb is in the quarter called 'Alí-ábád, by the Gate of Zindána-kúy. Anyone who drinks wine in this quarter and passes by his shrine inevitably becomes an outcast from that quarter. (لا محله از آن محله). (آواره شود).

4. *Shaykh Abú Turáb*. His tomb is still visible by the Gate of the Mosque in the quarter of Darlabash (محله درلبش).

5. *Shaykh Abú Na'im*.

6. *Qutb-i-Chálusi*. Sultán Sinjar wore his mantle (*khirqa*) and visited his retreat, which still exists. Sinjar's minister Naṣru'd-Dín Muḥammad Bú Tawba hated and persecuted

him, and was always trying to persuade his master that he was a hypocrite and impostor. One day at Bisṭám they brought the saint a melon. He laid his finger on it, saying, "We have killed Muḥammad-i-bi-Tawba ('the Unrepentant');" and it so happened that at that very moment the minister was put to death by Sinjar at Merv.

7. *Qádi Hishám*. His tomb is close to that of Shams-i-Ál-i-Muḥammad in the quarter of 'Awámma-kúy. The following extraordinary *qaṣida*¹, written in a mixture of Arabic and Persian, satirizing one of his contemporaries, is by him:

نی بفرعنَد و علم دریا و نیس مرا بجزر تو خسته
منه و تو که لا حیه لنا غزلرا کردیه احیا و
تیر یاد از ما شد مشار تید در جین عمجو ید بیضاؤ
من بشعر و نجم و حمق و جنون تو برزیش و بسفتواد
ل و نک از دو چیز تقصیرست درجه عستیم عز دو داناؤ
نیس نی عقد و لا حیه ترا غر وورا غنیمت سوداؤ
عست فی ایچشم قظر اماؤ نیست فی ایچشم جن خنیدن
خواه امروز و خواه فردا و آند و نیاد از من شیدا
نید از من بیه و عقلاؤ آند از من که اخرب ای خراف
عمیچو آتش فرین منجاو² جعبد شعران قرین منست
قد فبیس تقرین و بک مدار نست تدری که ایش معناو
مسحیت آید از خواهر ما عمجو نر از میان دریا و
که چه بلهره ایم و رعناؤ که ندانند قدر ما جنبل شر دو دل کرده ایم یکتاو

¹ This *qaṣida* affords an excellent specimen of Persian macaronic verse. of which the most ancient European specimen is, I believe, the *Opus Merlini Cocaii poetae Macaronicorum*, first printed at Venice about 1521.

² Variants in this line are: A. B. جعبد بیون. C. جعسده سنجاجاو.

خانه خویش دان تو خانه من چون عطارد ببرج جوزاؤ
 مهر مهر مهر من شکنی چونکه تنها شوی بیه جاؤ^۱
 بر فلك نیست مهر تنهاو
 بر زمین همچو مهر بر فلكی
 مهر بر مهر تو نهادستم مهر بر مهر ساخت زیباو
 مهر بازی شی و سغبه کنی می ستانی چو مهره ماؤ
 گه ستانی عمامهی دراز گه عتابی و خنز و دیباو
 گه شبیخون بری بامل و ری از سمرقند تا بالخاراو
 گه سوی رود بست حمله بری گه بپالیز^۲ و گه بلوراو
 آمل و ری کلاعما کردی این بتاراج و آن بیغماؤ
 چونکه با خود مرا عی نبری ارمغانی فرست غبراؤ^۳
 دوستون زمانه چنین اند کلیم حسد و اعداؤ
 یام آید ز دوستان چنین عرکه بر خوانم الاخلاو^۴
 آن آبائی آذین مصوا سمعوا قستی چه رساؤ
 وتبوا عن قبورغم از ننک حلفوا انت لست میتاو
 زوجتی عر شبی تخاصمنی^۵ بیننا عر شبی محاکاو
 مر مرا گوید او که ای احمق تا کی این شعر واين محاکاو
 ماند این شعر تو باسفل تو راست گوید که ساخت گنداؤ
 نیت عقل بدی ازین دو یکی تا مگر بفعل المداواؤ
 بس فما بالنا لسایلکم^۶ انا مجنون و تلك حمقاؤ
 چون شبانگه بسوی خیمه^۷ شوم دونه اخ بنات و ایناؤ^۸
 حمله آرند و سوی من تازند همچو مشهد شکاف غوغاؤ
 هرچه در خانه منکرند مرا نحن من دستهم عاجزناو

^۱ بپالیز. A. بپالیز. C. بپالیز و. B. تنهای for شبهایا. ^۲ تنهای for شبهایا. ^۳ C.
 اوست سلیطه و معبد من: B. adds: از اخلاو. C. عنبراؤ
 که نه. ^۴ C. خانه for جونه. A. B. نسائلکم. C. for من.

انا تنها و شم قد اجتمعوا لا جرم بسته فون تاناؤ
 گر نصیحت کنید و پند دعید جمع کردید پیر و بیناؤ^۹
 تا مگر رحمتی فرود آید بر حوتی نه بر علیناؤ
 پند کس نشنوند و مغذورند عست دشان چو صخر حتماؤ
 ما استجبرا نکم و نو سمعوا قد شقا فی بفون مامو^{۱۰}
 شلم ونکه درن شمرزا پک ان شلمتتم فقد کرزناو^{۱۱}
 یا امام زمانه نو سئلت شل نمغد نقل که لا لاو
 خانه تیز من بدان سبب است^{۱۲} نیک پروردام ز مبداؤ
 مر مرا عز زمان بجهی نین ممکم داد عز کتسباو^{۱۳}
 عزکه بشنید این فصاحت من گفت نیت اللسان ایندو^{۱۴}
 اوذجنون فتنه فصاحت من که دبغی و کون و سیلاو^{۱۵}
 شعر آن بود که وق من آسا بو^{۱۶} دارمی دیری تیز بشعراو^{۱۷}
 جعبه شاعرون جه کون بیین^{۱۸} عمدرا چون بدء تیلاو^{۱۹}
 عزکه می دوسته ای من این برسی^{۲۰} بو من آس بشر و جیناؤ^{۲۱}
 خرکه می دشمند آمل بیلی واری وا وار کون لندکاو^{۲۲}
 فی شلم ای فضول جعبه پر^{۲۳} ایند نه وا دره بمن لاو^{۲۴}
 اونکه آورده می بروان اشعار برد و شیسولا اشیلاو^{۲۵}

سلبست. ^۱ A. omits. ^۲ B. C. omit. ^۳ B. C. omit. ^۴ C. ^۵ A. ^۶ B. C. ^۷ شقون and ما استجبارا. ^۸ C. ^۹ مانکم. ^{۱۰} مانکم. ^{۱۱} یون چون. ^{۱۲} A. ^{۱۳} التساو. B. ^{۱۴} التساو and نیست. ^{۱۵} C. ^{۱۶} بیرون. ^{۱۷} A. ^{۱۸} بیرون. ^{۱۹} B. C. ^{۲۰} داده ای. ^{۲۱} A. ^{۲۲} بود for بو. ^{۲۳} و کون و سیلاو. ^{۲۴} بدا یتلاء و. ^{۲۵} C. ^{۲۶} سع و شداؤ and وا for را. ^{۲۷} C. ^{۲۸} بو for و. ^{۲۹} برسی for which A. B. have before جعبه. ^{۳۰} B. C. and من منکم. C. من مشکم. ^{۳۱} آیند. B. ^{۳۲} جعسه.

من و توهر دوئی سخن مونی این بندانچ و آن بخرماؤ
هر دوق نامه وا ایلی کبرن¹ هر دو هستیمه ها هرازو²
بمیریم رسکت و کلیناؤ³ چون بییچ سودمن و المنون⁴
کتن از دست من بفرماؤ⁵ چه این شعروون و نوموزون⁶
تو چه ها ساختنا و وامن وا⁷ دا مرا کس بنوبتی جاؤ⁸
من چه عا واردم ارم مردم⁹ تو چه هارومه بمنی لاو⁸
سحر انکرم هر دوون بوزیم¹⁰ چون وزی وشنتر ای کلیناؤ¹⁰
وا بشو یضخدون فی ریشی¹¹ من یرانی چرا نخنداؤ¹²
خر خندی نه من سین شنی¹³ هر یسته یتساک من آساؤ¹⁴
و باساري و استراباوا¹⁵ بمن سین بشنیوں بعیشه درون¹⁶
پارهشت جندکا بزیراوا¹⁷ دن جادست نوانه ینفعنی¹⁶
غار معجون شد¹⁸ بضرطاوا¹⁹ بتفل تر شد سیمیو بیماریم¹⁸
با اوی حی و لام حلواوا²¹ کشمش اوذچنون که مش دنبو²⁰
ما سفرجل جل جلن²² یا کمشوی و دراء رازا و²³

کلناو¹. بییچ امسون². فامهرا ایری³. هر دوینی⁴.
کتن ای ... بفریاوا⁵. شیعرون بو عودون⁶.
تو چه عا ساجیباء و امن وا⁷. تو چه ها خباد د ... وامن دا⁸.
لردم⁹. چه ملو¹⁰. ⁸ B. adds another verse nearly identical with the last:

من چه وا وارومه تو دوی جا بو چه وارومه بمنی تاؤ
چاؤ¹². بی رئی¹¹. وشنتر کلناو¹⁰. هر دون بورم⁹.
پارهشت جند کازراوا¹⁷. باربیت چندکا بزیراوا¹⁸.
ادی¹⁹. یا²¹. دمو²⁰. بضرطاوا¹⁸ and هار for ماز¹⁹.
یا سفرجل جل جلن²². ²³ A. B. om. and [و]

ای ور² شیر مست بجا بای توا ای بزرو³ نسبود داداوا²
اون بزونی بزم بلید و نبار بو یارون کنی چرا راؤ⁴
پار و پیزار ما فعلت دوا⁴ لا جرم عالکسته ای جاو⁵
دو نهونی سمعته کجلا⁶ خرجه تو نست بکر دو سناوا⁷
ان کتمد فی میون حدث هرودرا سو بنو انباؤ⁸
ای اند خوجی ینی مرا⁸ عو علم تا یجی مسیحکاو⁹
این مجذب شعر خساجه امم کس ندیلسست مرغ عنقاوا¹⁰
عرک وات نمی وغا مردم⁹ دونی که وا بیع ای داو¹⁰
این باون وزنه دقیقی کت¹¹ تی تلی نی تنا تناؤ¹²

SAGES AND PHILOSOPHERS OF TABARISTÁN.

1. *Buzurjmihr*, the celebrated Prime Minister of Núshirwán “the Just”, concerning whom Firdawsi relates many anecdotes, as how he read the writing after he had become blind. On the conquest of Persia by the Arabs, and the fall of the Sásánian dynasty, he fled to Tabaristán. When asked, “Why did the kingdom of the House of Sásán fall when it contained such a man as thee?” he replied:

لئم استعانا باصغر از جل الى الکبر الاعمال فل الامر الى ما آل

“Because they sought the help of small men in great matters, and so affairs came to what they did.” One day they said to him “Come, let us discuss Fate and Predestination.”

جراواو⁴. یارون³. داؤ². مه¹. در². که³. دا⁴. دو⁵. نی⁶. عا⁵. نیست⁵. بیزار⁶.
لجدسو⁷. سمعته⁸ and دو⁹. بخونی¹⁰. داعی¹¹. خوجی¹² for جی¹³. بغردوسناؤ¹⁴.
مش¹⁵. وغا¹⁶. دای¹⁷. دایپی¹⁸ ای داو¹⁹. دا بیای ای داو²⁰.
تندمو²¹. تلی²². دونه²³. زونه²⁴.

He answered, "What have I to do with such a discussion? I behold an external appearance whence I deduce the underlying reality: I see fools prosperous and wise men in want, and I know that the ordering of results is not in man's hands." A number of similar wise sayings of his are reported, including the following: "Man is troubled at the waning of his wealth, but not at the waning of his life."

2. The *Ispahbad Marzubán b. Rustam b. Shirwin Parim* (پیریم), who wrote the book called *Marzubán-náma*, which our author prefers to that of *Kalila and Dimna*¹, and also a *Díván* of poetry in the Ṭabarí dialect, known as the *Niki-náma*. In the same dialect Ibráhím Mu'íní says:

چنین² کنه دونی زرین کنار به نیکیده نومه که شرجاد یار
این پیش بیاجه اندوشن کار³

PHYSICIANS AND POETS OF TABARISTÁN.

1. *Abu'l-Faraj Rashid b. Abdu'lláh*, the physician of Astarábád, flourished in the time of Qábús Shamsu'l-Ma'álí (A. H. 366—403 = A. D. 976—1012), and was peerless in his time, not only in medical science, but in eloquence and skill both in prose and verse. He is mentioned in the *Dumyatu'l-Qásr* of al-Bákharzí.

2. *Sayyid Abu'l-Fadl Isma'il b. Muhammad al-Músawi* of Jurján, the author of the well-known medical Encyclopædia entitled *Dhakhira-i-Khwárazmsháhi*, the *Kitáb-i-Yádigár*, the *Kitábu'l-Aghrád*, the *Kitáb-i-Tíbb-i-'Alá'i* and the translation of Avicenna's *Qánún*.

¹ See the *Notice sur le Merzban Naméh* in Vol. ii of Scheler's *Christo-mathie Persane* (Paris, 1885), pp. 194—211, and pp. 161—198 of the texts in the same volume.

² A. چنین.

³ B. omits this line, which in C. is preceded by a blank space. C. ساجه اندوشن.

[ASTRONOMERS OF TABARISTÁN.]¹

1. *Gúshyár b. Lisán al-Fíli*.
2. *Abhádúd-Dahr ad-Dániši*, who compiled a complete set of astronomical tables (بیخ کمل).
3. *Bizist b. Firúzán*, whose name al-Ma'mún arabicized into Yahya b. Mansúr, and who compiled the *Zij-i-Ma'múní*².
4. *Ustád 'Ali Pirúza*, the panegyrist of 'Aqdúd Dawla Sháhinsháh Fanákhusráw. Hamadán is said to have been given to him in fief. The following verse in the Ṭabarí dialect is by him:

پر و جه که خورد شمین شودارو ای وعی بسینون کمته ب نیرون³

One day both he and Mutanabbí were visiting 'Aqdúd Dawla. He was bidden to sit down, while Mutanabbí was left standing. Mutanabbí, vexed at this, spoke scornfully of this "speechless (i. e. barbarous) poet", but when the meaning of some of his verses was explained to him by 'Aqdúd Dawla, he admitted their excellence, saying, "Honour is due to the meaning, which is, as it were, the spirit of speech, not to the language [in which it is expressed], which is but as its material body."

5. *Diwáriwas Mastamard* (دیواروز و مسند مرد). The following account is given of the manner in which this poet obtained these titles. He came from Ṭabaristán to Baghdad to visit the Shahinsháh 'Aqdúd Dawla, and (according to the proverb⁴ عقیدہ یلتفت لی اتفقیہ⁴) sought the assistance of his compatriot 'Ali Pirúza, who, however, fearful lest his

¹ As some poets are included in this section also, it would appear that no separate heading is required here, but that we should add "Astronomers" after "Physicians" in the last heading.

² B. here inserts the heading "Poets of Ṭabaristán".

³ C. بیخ وعی دارو بیخون for دارو for بیخون.

⁴ Equivalent to "Birds of a feather flock together".

eloquence and wit might make him a dangerous rival in that prince's favour, made excuses for delay, hoping that the new-comer would weary of waiting and return home. After a while, however, Díwárwaz formed some idea of the truth; and, when 'Aqdu'd-Dawla was one day drinking in a garden with some of his friends, he climbed over the wall and approached him. Some of the attendants, thinking him to be a robber or assassin, rushed upon him with blows and cuffs. 'Aqdu'd-Dawla, hearing his cries, caused him to be brought before him and questioned him, whereupon he told his story, and how 'Alí Pirúza had treated him, after which he recited a *qaṣida* which he had composed. 'Aqdu'd-Dawla, charmed with its grace and sweetness, expressed a doubt as to whether he was really its author, and, to prove him, bade him extemporize some verses on a singing-girl clad in blue silk who happened to be near. Thereupon he recited the following verses in the Tabarí dialect:

کو و سدره تیله بدوا آین
وا دیم کنی دیم ای مزدمون و شاین^۱
خیت بنیون گردو نرگیس نماین
اک خیت خو خو دادستی و راین^۲
کو خوره شی با بن بو مداین
ای دریا و نیمی و نیومه آین^۳

'Aqdu'd-Dawla was delighted, and gave him gifts, and caused his name to be inscribed in the register of his poets, and he received the title of *Díwárwaz*.

^۱ C. and om. [د]; به نیون کرد. مزدمون and om. [B]. ^۲ B. and om. [د]; باین بوید and نیی or بیی. کو خوره. در آین. C. داوستی و نیومه. B. آین.

After the death of 'Aqdu'd-Dawla he came to Amul, while Shamsu'l-Ma'álí Qábús was still reigning over Tabaristán. One day he had been drinking with his friends, and, while returning home, passed the gate of the Shrine of Násir-i-Kabír, whence the clergy and custodians, seeing his state, came forth, seized him, beat him, and cast him into prison. Thence he made his escape, came to Gurgán, and described his adventures in the following Tabarí verses, which he laid before Qábús, who honoured and rewarded him, and gave him the title of *Masta-mard*:

دا گیبیون ای خور خرمی وند
مسست آو و مستو آتشن بیفت^۱
دا شاه بکینیون سیله سری دنشا
بریه و کت اونرا آه خور عسا^۲
آو داد از اینی آ اینی^۳
شرای وک وارسته گیبیون و جا
مردم خروم ای خور نیرو نه بومی
زنش بمن چون کنه کیون شومی^۴
آین پس پسی شومست موبی مونس^۵
بدلی شمنی دل دنبراسن ای کس^۶
ناگاه بمن اوئن یکی دونا دون^۷
عا کتن مرا برون زن بزندون^۸

منستوس ساما
عوئی سست; سست; C. ends the verse: ^۱ C. and om. [د]; ب. کنه کیون. ^۲ B. and om. [د]; ب. بیره دکت و. ^۳ C. om. و زنبراسن. ^۴ C. شمنی. ^۵ B. شمنی; ب. ای. ^۶ C. موس. ^۷ B. C. بیردن. ^۸ B. C. نادون [دو] before نرپذون.

Section II (f. 64b).

The Houses of Washmgír and Buwayh.

Abú Isḥaq Ibráhím b. Hilál as-Ṣábi's great history of the Buwayhid Dynasty entitled *Kitabu't-Táj* is praised. He and the Ṣáhib Isma'il b. 'Abbád are intended in the saying "More eloquent than the two *Sáds*" (أَلْفَغُ مِنْ الْقَدَيْنِ). How Mu'ayyidu'd-Dawla, the brother and viceroy of 'Aḍudu'd-Dawla Fanákhusráw b. Ruknu'd-Dawla Ḥasan b. Buwayh came with the Ṣáhib to Ṭabaristán, conquered its fortresses, and drove out its ruler Qábus, who for eighteen years after lived in exile at Níshápúr, will be described in another volume. Praise of 'Aḍudu'd-Dawla, and of his noble encouragement of all branches of learning and letters, which were better represented in his time than in any other. The author states that he had heard his father say that, being curious to know the reason of this, he enquired of Khusraw Sháh, the Magian astrologer of Sháh Gházi Rustam b. 'Alí, who said that it was because his reign fell in the beginning of the cycle of Mercury. Amongst the most notable of these men of learning were Abu 'Alí Fáris, the Grammarian and lexicographer, who wrote the *Idáh-i-'Aḍudi* and the medical work entitled *Kámilu's-Ṣaná'at*; Abu'l-Faḍl (f. 65a) b. al-'Amíd and his son Abu'l-Fáth; the Ṣáhib himself; Abu'l-Qásim 'Abdu'l-'Azíz b. Yúsuf; as-Ṣábi Abú Isḥaq Ibráhím; the poets Ibn Nubáta as-Sa'dí, Abu 't-Ṭayyib al-Mutanabbi, Abú Bakr al-Khwárazmí, and Ustád 'Alí at-Ṭabarí. Of these it is related by the last but one that his patron was in the habit of asking his poets to extemporize verses on any object which happened to be placed before him. On one occasion this happened to be rice-pudding (برنج بشير): he invited the poets to extemporize on it, but,

before they could do so, himself described it in the following verses:

بِطْهَ تَعَاجِزُ عَنْ وَصْفِهِ يَا مَدْعَى الْوَصَافِ بِالْزَوْدِ
كَانَ وَعِيَ عَلَى جَامِيَا لَأَنِّي فِي مَا كَافِرَ

For 42 years 'Aḍudu'd-Dawla resided at Baghdad, whence he practically exercised sovereign sway over the Hijáz, Yáman, Egypt, Syria, the two 'Iráqs, Ṭabaristán and all the districts of Farshwádgar. Verses addressed to 'Aḍudu'd-Dawla by Bakhtiyár Mu'izzu'd-Dawla:

أَفَتْ حِينَ وَنَيْتَ ضِيقَ حَنَقَهُ يَبْغِي إِلَمْنَ وَ كَانَ يَبْغِي صَارِمَا
فَلَأَرَكَبَنَ عَزِيزَةَ عَصَدِيَّةَ نَاجِيَّةَ تَدَعُ لَانُوفَ رَاغِمَا

Anecdotes of 'Aḍudu'd-Dawla related in the *Siyaru'l-Muluk* (i. e. *Siyásat-náma*) of the *Nidhámu'l-Mulk al-Hasan* b. Isḥaq, including that of the money entrusted by a poor man to a fraudulent judge. — Verses on him by the Ṣáhib:

فَوَاللَّهِ لَوْلَا اللَّهِ قَلَ لَكَ الْوَرَى مَقْلَلُ النَّعَارِيِّ فِي النَّمْسَيْحِ بْنِ مُرِيمِ
وَنَوْ قَلْتَ أَنَّ اللَّهَ لَمْ يَخْلُقْ الْوَرَى نَغِيرَنَّ لَهُ بِخَرْجٍ وَنَمَّ أَقْلَمَ

Núh b. Mansúr "the king of Bukhárá" (the Sámánid) sent presents to him by al-'Utbi when the latter went on the Pilgrimage, amongst which were included 500 robes embroidered with Núh's name. 'Aḍudu'd-Dawla was incensed at this, and, turning to 'Utbi, said:

سَنَجْعَلُ فَبِلَ عَوْدِكَ مِنْ وَجِيْكَ سَوَالِلْ جَحْمَنَ مَرَابِطَ لِلْجَحَافِلِ وَ
مَرَاثِ الْقَتْلِ وَ الْقَبْيلِ

Account of the House of Washmgír b. Ziyár,
the kings of Gilán.

The title of Ispahbads is properly applied to two different dynasties of Ṭabaristán, the House of Bawand of the author's own time, and the Qarinwands, or House of Washm-

gír, who governed Tabaristán for nearly 80 years after the Tálibí Sayyids. Anyone, says the author, who wishes to appreciate the greatness and splendour of Qábús b. Washmír, called Abu'l-Hasan, should read what is said of him by Abú Mansúr ath-Tha'álíbí and al-'Utbi in their works.¹ Abu'l-Hasan 'Alí b. Muḥammad al-Yazdádí made a compilation of his sayings, which he entitled *Qara'īnu Shamsi'l-Ma'áli wa Kamálu'l-Balágha*, from which the author here cites some 33 lines, praising especially the remarkable eloquence of Qábús in the Arabic language, his courage and skill in manly exercises, and his knowledge of Philosophy, Astronomy and Astrology. An Arabic letter which he wrote to his maternal uncle the Ispahbad Rustam b. Sharwín Báwand on the occasion of a quarrel which arose between them is next cited. (This fills rather more than a page, and brings us to f. 67a, l. 18). Qábús also composed in Arabic a treatise on the Astrolabe, and submitted it to Abú Isháq aṣ-Ṣábi, whose laudatory criticism is cited in full (ff. 67b, l. 7—68a, l. 4). Qábús also maintained a regular correspondence with the Ṣáhib, of which the intermediary was one of his chamberlains named 'Abdu's-Salám. — Anecdote to illustrate the virtue of Qábús. — His servant Aḥmad Sa'dí, and his minister Abu'l-'Abbás Ghánimí, who was never known to take a bribe, and who was in friendly correspondence with Abú Naṣr al-'Utbi. — Specimens of this correspondence.

Account of Kayús (f. 69a: كيوس).

In the time of Qubád the son of Pírúz (A. D. 488—531) the sovereignty of Tabaristán was in the family of Gushnasp-sháh (جشنپشاد), and Kayús, "the man of the House of

¹ i. e. the *Yatimati' d-Dahr* (Damascus ed., vol. iii, pp. 288—290) and the *Ta'rikh u'l-Yamini* (Cairo ed., vol. i, pp. 389—412, and vol. ii, pp. 1—26).

Báwand", was sent thither by the king to help the representative of this family to expel the Turks from Khurásán, which was successfully accomplished. At that juncture appeared the false prophet Mazdak the son of Námdárán (sic, for Bámídádán), whose history is fully related in the Nidhámu'l-Mulk's *Siyaru'l-Muluk* (i. e. *Siyásat-náma*); by whose influence Qubád was ruined and deposed in favour of his younger son Nushírwán, who extirpated the heresiarch and his followers. The Kháqán of the Turks, hearing of these internal disturbances in Persia, advanced with his hosts to the Oxus. Thereupon Núshirwán wrote to his brother Kayús to inform him that he was collecting Persian and Arab levies to oppose the Turks, and that Kayús must be ready to join him in Khurasán to punish the Kháqán's insolence (f. 69b). Kayús at once collected his troops in Tabaristán, marched on Khurasán, routed the Kháqán, crossed the Oxus, took much spoil from the Turks, and established his kinsman Húshang as governor of Khwárazm. Thence he proceeded to Ghaznín, appointing governors over the towns as far as Nahrawála (نهرالا), and levying tribute on Turkistan and India, after which he returned to Tabaristán and despatched one of his nobles to Núshirwán with the spoils of victory, and a letter in which he wrote: "Thou art several years younger than me, and knowest how without thy help or aid I have defeated the Kháqán and exacted tribute from the Turks and Indians. It is not fitting that thou shouldst wear the crown while I am a mere retainer: yield up to me the throne and crown and treasures of our father, that I, according to thy wish, may create a more ample kingdom." This request was promptly refused by Nushirwan in a letter of which the text is given (f. 70a). Kayús thereupon collected his army and marched from Tabaristán on Madá'in (Ctesiphon), but was defeated and imprisoned by his brother, who, on his refusal to repent of his action and

promise amendment, caused him to be put to death, and detained his son Shápúr a prisoner at Madá'in until the Kháqán of the Turks again invaded Khurásán and Ṭabaristán (f. 70b). Núshírwán again marched against him, and in the battle which ensued the tide of victory was turned in favour of the Persians by a mysterious troop of two or three thousand horsemen clad in green and with green standards, who only on Núshirwán's most urgent entreaty consented to disclose their identity. It then appeared that, in the reign of Qubád's father Pírúz the son of Yazdigird the son of Bahrám Gúr the son of Yazdigird "the Wicked", the lands beyond the Oxus and Balkh river were by treaty committed to the care of Khushnuwaz (here جستوار, for خشنواز) the king of the Hayátila (or Huns), afterwards called Şighániyán (f. 71a), who however, violated his pact and ravaged the country until, when Pírúz marched against them, they treacherously attacked him, defeated his army, took him and many of his nobles captive, and cut off his head. Now he had left at Madá'in Súkhrá the son of Qárin the son of Súkhrá, one of the descendants of Káwa (the blacksmith who headed the revolt against Dahák in favour of Ferídún) as his viceroy. This Súkhrá, on hearing of the disaster, gathered an army and marched against Khushnuwáz, who, knowing that he could not resist him, restored the captives and spoils he had taken and apologised for his conduct, so that Súkhrá, without striking a blow, returned victorious, and received from the *múbads* the title of *Ispahbad*. Now Pírúz left three sons, Qubád, Balásh and Jámásp, of whom the first fled to Khurásán and implored the Kháqán's help to recover the kingdom, which had been given to the second, with the last-named to assist and advise him. When Qubád, assisted by the Kháqán, had advanced against his brothers as far as Ray, Balásh died, and Súkhrá proclaimed Qubád king, and sent him a message

asking him to send back his Turkish allies from Ray, and to hasten himself to Madá'in, which he did. So Qubád became king of Persia, and Súkhrá grew in honour and favour until envious slanderers traduced him to the king, and he, being informed of this, fled with his nine sons to Ṭabaristán (f. 71b). Súkhrá was treacherously slain, but his sons fled to Badakhshán, where they acquired territory and established themselves. These and their retainers it was who, hearing of Núshirwán's accession and favourable disposition towards them, had afforded him such opportune assistance against the Kháqán's troops. He, in gratitude for their services, bade them choose such lands as they liked for a possession to them and their children. Thereupon the eldest of them, Zármíhr, chose Zábulistán; and the youngest, Qárin, Wandá-ummíd Kúh, Amul, Lufúr and Farím, which is called Kúh-i-Qárin ("Mount Qárin"). The latter returned with Núshirwán on his homeward march as far as Ṭabaristán, and was there installed (f. 72a) as Ispahbad. To the author's time the nobles of Lufúr and Astarábád, and the people called Qárinwands, represent the descendants of this Qárin; and the author promises to give at the end of his book genealogical tables shewing the descent of the Bawands, Qárinwands, Surhánwands, Láriján, Marzubán, Us-tundár, Dábuwán, Kúla'ij, Walásán, Sa'ídúhá, Ulán-mihán, Amír Ká, and Kabúd-jáma, and the reasons of their being thus named. Thus was Ṭabaristán divided up between Qárin and the chiefs established in Tamísha in the time of Núshirwán, till he died, and was succeeded by his son Hurmázd, who reigned twelve years.

Successors of Kayús (f. 72a).

In the reign of Hurmázd, Shápúr the son of Kayús died, leaving a son named Báw, who accompanied Khusraw Parwíz in his campaign against the Greeks, and distinguished

himself in the war with Bahrám Chúbína, receiving in reward for these services Iştakhr, Adharbáyján, 'Iráq and Țabaristán as his government. He extended his territories to the north-east so as to include Khurásán, Khwárazm and all Turkistán as far as the Desert of the Tátars. Shírúya the parricide on his accession destroyed Baw's house at Ctesiphon (Madá'in), plundered his possessions, degraded him, and interned him at Iştakhr. But Shíruya's ill-gained power soon ceased with his early death, and he was succeeded by Queen Azarmí Dukht, of whom the Prophet said "Woe to that people over which women reign!" (وَيْلٌ لِّأُمَّةٍ مَّلَكْتُهَا نِسَاءٌ). At this epoch the Prophet was at al-Madína. The nobles of Persia (f. 72b) counselled Azarmí Dukht to summon Baw to the Court and place him in command of the army, but he declined to debase himself, as he considered, by serving a woman, and retired to worship in the Fire-temple. Then followed the disastrous reign of Yazdigird the son of Shahriyár, the last Sásánian king, when the Caliph 'Umar sent Sa'd b. Abi Waqqás (whose skill with the bow is still proverbial amongst the Arabs, in the phrase أَرْمَى مِنْ سَعْدٍ) against the Persians, till he inflicted on them and their general Rustam-i-Farrukházad the crushing defeat of Qádisiyya, as is described in full in the *Sháhnáma* and other histories. Then Yazdigird summoned Baw from Iştakhr, restored to him his fiefs, estates and possessions, and retained him in his service, while Țabaristán, neglected by its lawful lord, fell into the hands of Gáw-bára.

The Descendants of Jámásp and the Story of Gáw-bára (f. 72b).

When, on the death of Balásh, Qubád, the father of Núshírwán, succeeded to the throne, Jámásp, the youngest of

the three brothers, fled to Armenia, whence, from Darband, he attacked and subdued the countries of the Khazars and Sclavs (سَلَابِ). In these lands he married and settled. Of the sons whom he begat, one was Narsí, the lord of Darband, who on his death left behind him a son named Fírúz, beautiful as Joseph and brave as Rustam, who enlarged his father's dominions as far as Gílán, from one of the noble families of which country he chose a wife, who bore him a son named Gílánsháh. To him in turn was born a son named Gíl, who, as the astrologers predicted (f. 73a), became a mighty king, and brought under his rule all Gílán and Daylam. He then turned his attention to Țabaristán, whither he proceeded on foot, driving before him two Gílání cows. At this time the Sásánian governor of Țabaristán was Adhar-valásh, and into his service Gíl insinuated himself. About this time the Turks, taking advantage of the difficulties which the Arabs were causing to the Persian Empire, attacked Țabaristán, and Gíl, or "Gáw-bára" as he was now called, greatly distinguished himself in repelling them. After this Gíl obtained from Adhar-valásh permission to return home to see his family; but when he returned it was at the head of an army of several thousand men of Gílán and Daylam. Adhar-valásh, greatly alarmed, despatched tidings of this to Yazdigird the king of Persia, who, advised by the Múbads, ordered him to relinquish his government to this descendant of Jámásp and scion of the Royal House. Thereupon Gíl sent to Yazdigird suitable presents and offerings (f. 73b), and received in return the title of Gíl-gílán Farshwádgár-sháh. Some time afterwards Adhar-valásh was killed by a fall from his horse at polo, and all his possessions passed to Gíl: and this happened in the 35th year of the New Era which the Persians had lately inaugurated. Gíl made his capital in Gílán, but from thence to Gurgán filled the land with lofty castles and other

buildings. Fifteen years after his accession to power he died, and was buried in Gilán. He left two sons, Dábúya and Pádhúspán, of whom the former, a severe and cruel ruler, succeeded his father on the throne of Gilán, while the latter reigned over Rúyán.

Account of the reign of Báw in Tabaristán
(f. 73b).

When Yazdigird, routed by the armies of Islám, fled to Ray, Báw, who was with him, sought and obtained permission to go by way of Tabaristán to Kúsán, there to visit a Fire-temple which his grandfather Kayús has founded, promising to rejoin his sovereign in Gurgán. His absence, however, was somewhat prolonged, and he was still in these lands when he received news of Yazdigird's death at the hands of the traitor Máhú'i-i-Súrí. (Here 5 couplets of the *Sháhnáma* are cited). Báw thereupon shaved his head and retired into religious seclusion in the Fire-temple of Kúsán, while the Turks (f. 74a) ravaged all Khurásán and Tabaristán, and the Arabs, led by the Imám Hasan b. 'Alí, 'Abdu'lláh b. 'Umar b. al-Khattáb, Hudhayfa of Yaman, Qutham b. al-'Abbás, and Málík b. Ashtar an-Nakha'i advanced to Amul, where the traces of their encampment are still visible in the place called Málíka-dasht. The people of Tabaristán, driven to despair by these calamities, agreed to elect and obey one ruler in whom they should all feel confidence, and unanimously chose Báw, who was ultimately induced to accept this responsibility, on condition that they gave him absolute power, even to life and death, over them. So he expelled the invaders from the country and reigned for fifteen years, till one day Bashár, the mother of [Adhar-] valásh, struck him on the back with a brick and slew him, and herself reigned for eight years. Báw left a little son named Suhráb, whose aged mother carried him off

safely and hid him in the house of a gardener near Sári, where he remained unmolested during these eight years. At the end of this period some of the servants of Kúlá Khurzád Khusraw Ispáhí (كولا خورزاد خسرو اسپاهی) saw the lad, questioned the gardener as to his origin, and finally extracted the truth. They then carried off the lad to Kúlá, when the people gathered round him, and, joined by the men of Mount Qárin, made a sudden raid on Panjá-hazár (بنجاخوار), captured and slew Valásh, massacred as many of his partisans as they could, and crowned Suhráb king at Parím. Then they built for him a palace, hot bath and *maydán* above the village of Tálpur, which lies at the foot of the castle of Kúz, and these buildings were afterwards enlarged by the Ispahbad Sharwin (f. 74b), and were still visible when the author (who had himself seen them) wrote, no one of the various rulers ('Alawi Sayyids, descendants of Gáw-bára, Daylamites of the House of Buwayh, and sons of Washmgír) who had successively held possession of this district having thought fit to destroy them, though the 'Abbásid troops wrought great devastation.

History of the House of Dabuya after the
death of Baw (f. 74b).

When Dábúya died, he left a son, who, under the style and title of Dhu'l-Manaqib Farrukhan-i-Buzurg, subjugated Tabaristán even as far as Nishapur (in Khurasan), reduced the people to his allegiance, and, by building and cultivation, raised the country to a condition of prosperity which it had never before enjoyed, and repeatedly repelled the covetous Turkish raiders. Then the Daylamites revolted against him, and compelled him to flee to Amul, where, in a castle then called Firuz-Khusra, but now Firuz-abad, distant two parasangs from that city (f. 75a), he fortified himself. The Daylamites besieged him, and hoped to starve

out him and his garrison, but he ordered his people to knead clay into the shape of loaves of bread and set these loaves on the walls in sight of the besiegers, who, thinking them to be bread, and despairing of being able to reduce so well provisioned a place, withdrew to Daylam, whereupon Farrukhán emerged from his fortress and followed them, constructing in the way which led to their country dykes, ditches and canals which rendered the road impassable to horsemen.

Invasion of Ṭabaristán by Maṣqala b. Hubayra ash-Shaybání (f. 75a).

It was now the Caliphate of 'Alí b. Abí Ṭálíb. A tribe called the Banú Nájiya reverted to Christianity. 'Alí attacked and crushed them, and sold their women and children by auction as slaves to the Musulmáns. Maṣqala b. Hubayra ash-Shaybání bought them for 100,000 *dirhams* and set them free; but being unable to pay more than 30,000 *dirhams* he fled to Mu'áwiya. 'Alí thereupon destroyed his house at Baṣra (the first time such a thing had been done in Islám) and said of him:

قَبَحَ اللَّهُ مَحْقَلَةَ فَعْلَ اسْنَادَةَ وَ فَرَّ فَرَّارَ الْعَبِيدِ

Maṣqala's descendants are still settled at Kúfa. Concerning 'Alí he said (f. 75b):

فَضَىٰ وَطَرَا فِيهَا عَلَىٰ فَاصْبَحَتْ اِمَارَتَهُ فِيهَا اِحْدَادِيَّتَ رَاكِبٍ

After 'Alí's death he promised Mu'áwiya that with 4000 men he could effect the conquest of Ṭabaristán, but, after waging war with Farrukhán for two years, he was killed on the road between Kajú and Kandasán, where his tomb still stands, and is ignorantly visited by the common people, who imagine its occupant to have been one of the Prophet's Companions¹.

¹ See al-Baládhuri's *Futúh*, ed. de Goeje, p. 335.

Further History of Farrukhán (f. 75b).

At this time the Mas-mughán Valásh was *marzubán* (warden of the marches) by the Ṭayzana Rúd (or Mayándarúd, as it is now called), and whenever the Ispahbad went on a hunting expedition in this direction, he used to stay a few days there to drink and make merry at Tanparast under Tardawíní, where the ruins of the palaces of the Ispahbads Farrukhán and Khurshíd are still visible. He presently asked and obtained in marriage the Mas-mughán's daughter, for whom he built a residence in this place, which he connected by a canal with the sea; but later he was offended with his father-in-law, beheaded him, and annexed all his domains as far as Dárán, but respected the descendants of Báw, on whom he inflicted no injury.

The Ispahbad Farrukhán and Qaṭarí the Khárijite.

Qaṭarí b. al-Fujá'at al-Máziní (f. 76a), the chief of the Khárijites or 'Sectarians', one of the bravest and most eloquent of the Arabs, took refuge with the Ispahbad, in the time of the tyrant Ḥajjáj b. Yúsuf, together with 'Umar Fannáq¹, Sáliḥ Mikhráq and other Khárijite chiefs, all of whom were hospitably entertained by their host during the winter. But when they and their horses were rested and strengthened, they threatened the Ispahbad that they would seize his country unless he accepted their creed.

The author here gives a brief account of the origin of the Khárijites after the Battle of Ṣifín and the arbitration of Dawmatu'l-Jandal. Their first leaders were 'Abdu'lláh b. al-Kawwá and Ma'dán al-Ayádi, who, at the head of a thousand men, first raised the Khárijite war-cry, "Arbitration belongs to God alone!" (حُكْمُ اللَّهِ لَهُ), to which 'Alí replied:

¹ Some of the MSS. have فَتَّاقْ for فَيَّاقْ. Cf. p. 104 *infra*.

أَسْكَنْتَ قَبْحَكَ اللَّهُ يَا أَثْرَمْ فَوَاللَّهِ لَقَدْ ظَهَرَ لِلْقَفْ وَ كَنْتَ فِيهِ ضَيْلًا
شَخْصَكَ خَفِيًّا صَوْتَكَ حَتَّى إِذَا نَعَرَ الْبَاطِلَ نَجَّمَتْ نَجَومُ الْمَاغْرِبِ

And on that day 'Ali's soldiers kept reciting this verse:

سَلَامٌ عَلَى مَنْ بَأْيَعَ اللَّهَ شَارِبًا وَ لَيْسَ عَلَى الْخَرْبِ الْقَعُودِ سَلَامٌ

The first person to whom the Khárijites swore allegiance as "Commander of the Faithful" (*Amíru'l-Múminin*) was 'Abdu'lláh b. Wahb ar-Rásibí, and the first who drew his sword in support of this heresy was 'Urwa b. Udayya, who, turning to Ash'ath b. Qays, said:

مَا هَذِهِ الْدِينَةُ وَ مَا عَدَا أَنْتَ حَلِيمٌ أَعْلَى شَرْطٍ أَوْتَقْ بِنْ شَرْطِ اللَّهِ

Ash'ath turned from him, and 'Urwa struck with his sword the hind-quarters of the mule he was riding. At the battle of Nahruwán, 'Urwa (f. 76b) fled from before 'Ali's sword, but later he was taken prisoner and brought before Ziyád ibnu Abí-hi, who asked him what he thought of 'Ali and 'Uthmán. He declared them both infidels, whereupon Ziyád caused his head to be struck off.

The Khárijites are known by four names, to wit:

(1) *Harúriyya*, because of Harúrá, a place where they encamped. This name was given to them by 'Ali, who exclaimed, on hearing a verse read from the Qur'án (xviii, 103—104) concerning "those whose effort miscarries in the life of this world while they suppose that they do well," "By God, these are they of Harúrá!"

(2) *Máriqiyya* ("disobedient", "rebels", "heretics"), in allusion to the saying of the Prophet: "They shall slip from the Faith as the arrow slips from the bow" —

يَرْجِعُونَ مِنَ الدِّينِ كَمَا يَرْجِعُ السَّمَوَاتُ مِنَ الْقَوْسِ

and another of his sayings to 'Ali: "Verily thou shalt fight the covenant-breakers, the doers of injustice, the rebels:"

أَنْكَ تَقَاتِلُ النَّاكِتِينَ وَ الْفَاسِدِينَ وَ الْمَارِقِينَ

(3) *Shurát* ("sellers" of their lives to win Paradise), alluding to Qur'án, ii, 203, and ix, 112, which verses they were accustomed to apply to themselves.

(4) *Khárijites* (*Khawárij*, "rebels", "dissidents" or "seceders"), because they came out in revolt against 'Ali.

Whenever one of their chiefs was slain, they at once swore allegiance to another, until it came to the above-mentioned Qaṭari b. al-Fujá'at al-Mázini, who was one of the bravest and most famous of them, and whose poems are preserved in the *Ghuraru'd-Durar* of Sayyid Murtadá, the *Hamása* of Abú Tamám, and the *Kámil* of al-Mubarrad. Thus, when the Khárijites elected him their chief and swore allegiance to him, he wrote to Abú Khálid:

أَبَا خَالِدَ أَيْقَنْ فَلَسْتَ بِخَنْدَ وَ مَمْ جَعَلَ أَرْحَمَنْ عَذَّرَأَ نَقَعَدَ
أَنْرَعَمْ لَنْ الْخَارِجَيْ عَلَى الْبَلَقَ وَ أَنَّتَ مَقِيمَ بَيْنَ لَقَ وَ جَحَدَأَ

To which Abú Khálid (whom the author curses) replied:

لَقَدْ زَادَ أَنْجَيْهَ إِلَيْ خَبَا بَنَاتِي أَنْبَنْ بَنَ أَنْضَعَفَ (f. 77a)
مَحَقَّ لَنْ بَيْنَ الْفَقَرِ بَعْدَ وَ لَنْ يَشْرِبَنْ رِيقَ بَعْدَ صَفَ
وَ سَوْلَنْ لَلَّا سَوْمَتَ مَهْرَيَ وَ فِي الْحَمْنَ لِلْضَعَفَ كَفَ

Imrán al-Ittán, one of the most eloquent and learned jurisconsults of the Khárijites, wrote the following verses in reply to Abú Khálid:

لَقَدْ زَادَ الْخَيْرَ إِلَيْ بَغْصَ ، خَبَا لِلْكَلَّا وَ جَوْ بَلَلَ
أَخْلَدَ لَنْ لَمْبَرَتَ عَلَى مَوَاهِي ، دَاجَتِ الْمَبَتَ تَحْتَ ذَرَى لَعْوَزَ
وَ يَدَ لَتَهَ الْكَلَّا فَانَّ ، لَبَا مَالَ ، وَ الْمَبَتَ فَرَ

This Imrán it was who when it war with 'Ali said

إِنِّي أَدِينُ بِمَا دَانَ الْشَّرِيكَةُ مِنْ قَتْلِ الْمُحَلَّيْنَا
وَبِالَّذِي دَانَ يَوْمَ الْقِبْرِ دِينُهُ وَشَارَكَتْهُ مَعًا كَفَّيْ بِعِصْبَيْنَا
تَلَكَ الْدِمَاءُ مَعًا يَا رَبِّي فِي عَنْقِي وَمِثْلُهَا فَاسْقِنِي آمِينَ آمِينَا

The following verses are also by him:

أَنْتَ بَعْدَكَ مَنْ قَدْ كُنْتُ أَعْرَفُهُ مَا الْنَّاسُ بَعْدَكَ يَا مُرْدَاسُ بَالْنَّاسِ
أَمَا تَدْرِي ذُقْتَ دَسَا دَارَ أَوْلَاهَا عَلَى الْقَرْوَنِ فَدَافُوا نَهْلَةَ الْكَلَّاسِ
قَدْ كُنْتُ أَبْيَدَ حَيَا تَمَ قَدْ يَتَسْتَ قَنْسِي فَمَا رَتَنِي مِنْ عَبْرَتِي يَاسِي

Hājjáj b. Yúsuf slew many of the “blue-clad” Khárijite heretics (ازرقة) by the hands of his general Muḥallab b. Abí Šufra, and sent Sufyán b. Abi'l-Abrahád al-Kalbí with an army drawn from Syria and the two Iráqs to attack the Khárijites in Ṭabaristán, bidding them not rest till they could bring him Qaṭarí alive or dead. When Sufyán reached Ray, the Ispahbad Farrukhán, who was encamped with his army at Damáwand, sent an ambassador offering his help, provided that he should be recompensed in some way for his services. Sufyán promised to give him whatever he desired, and his request was that the Arabs should not molest or interfere with his kingdom, on which understanding the pact was concluded. Qaṭarí, being informed of this, marched from Damáwand to Samnán, pursued by the Ispahbad, who overtook him at the spot last named, where a battle took place between them. The two leaders, singling one another out, engaged in a duel. Qaṭarí missed his stroke, fell from his horse and broke his leg, and was decapitated by the Ispahbad. 'Umar Fannáq, Šálíh Mikhráq and the other Khárijite leaders were also slain, while others were brought captive to Mázandarán, where the traces of their encampment are still visible in the place called Qaṭarí Kaláda. The Ispahbad spared the lives of the captives and common

¹ B. has الْوَصِيُّ (i. e. 'Alí b. Abi Tálib) for الْشَّرِيكَةُ.

soldiers (ضُعَفَ), and sent the heads of the slain and a portion of the spoils to Sufyán, who forwarded them on to the Caliph as account of the victory to Hājjáj b. Yúsuf. Hājjáj thereupon sent a messenger to Sufyán with an ass's load of gold and an ass's load of dust, bidding him, in case Sufyán should prove to have gained the victory himself, to bestow on him the gold; but if otherwise, to cast the dust on his head at the chief cross-roads in the bázár, which disgrace Sufyán had to suffer when the true state of the case was made known.

Soon afterwards 'Abdu'l-Malík b. Marwán died and was succeeded by his son Walíd, while Hājjáj b. Yúsuf also fell from power, and Qutayba was made governor of Khurásán and Transoxiana, in which capacity he shewed much friendship towards the Ispahbad. Yazíd b. al-Muḥallab (f. 78a) was in the service of Sulaymán b. 'Abdu'l-Malík (who succeeded his brother Walíd in A. D. 715), and whenever Qutayba wrote despatches describing a fresh victory in Turkistán, he would write back belittling them and saying, “All the accounts of thy victories are from a place where the Commander of the Faithful cannot test their reality: why dost thou not conquer Ṭabaristán, which is a garden in the midst of the domains of Islam?” But Qutayba knew that Yazíd b. al-Muḥallab was his enemy, while the Ispahbad, on the other hand, was his friend, so that he naturally restrained from attacking him.

Sulaymán, on his accession, gave the government of Khurásán to Yazíd, and ordered Qutayba to be slain. And when Yazíd sent him accounts of his victories over the heathen in Transoxiana, the Caliph used to reply. “Why does he not effect that which he blamed Qutayba for not doing?” So Yazíd, hearing this, collected an army of Arabs and men of Khurásán and Transoxiana, and came to Gurgán. When the Ispahbad heard this, he sent all his people with

their families and cattle into the mountains, leaving the plains empty of their population. Meanwhile Yazid reached and occupied Tammisha, and continued his advance in the level country towards Sári, while the Ispahbad Farrukhán marched parallel with him in the hills. On reaching Sári, Yazid alighted in the Ispahbad's palace, and the people were afraid, and the Ispahbad himself was inclined to flee into Daylamán and there seek help against the invaders, but his son dissuaded him from an act which would be regarded as tantamount to abdication (f. 78b), and counselled him rather to sent messengers into Gilán and Daylamán asking for re-inforcements, which finally arrived to the number of some ten thousand men. Yazid, hearing this, sent Khidásh b. al-Mughíra b. al-Muhallab b. Abí Šufra and Abu'l-Jahm al-Kalbí with twenty thousand horsemen against the Ispahbad. When they drew near, Salmán the Daylamite came out to meet them, and was attacked by the van-guard of the Muslims under Muhammád b. Abú Surra al-Ju'fi, who defeated Salmán's troops, slew him, and pursued the fugitives into the hills, where, however, the Ispahbad's army put them to rout with a storm of stones and arrows. Then, withdrawing by another road from this position, they prepared an ambush into which the Muslims fell, so that fifteen thousand of them, including some of Yazid's own kinsmen, perished. Continuing their advance, they plundered and burned Yazid's camp, after which the Ispahbad despatched a courier to Gurgán, bidding the Nahapets of Súl¹ rise against Darís and the Arab soldiers who occupied their country, slay them all, and seize for themselves their cattle and possessions. This was done, and amongst the slain

¹ نَهَابَةٌ صَوْلَيَّةٌ. The first word seems to be a broken plural of the word occurring in Armenian as *nahapet*, "patrician"; the latter is also a foreign word, and is explained by de Slane (*Ibn Khallikán*, iv, 172) as meaning "a king of Jurján".

were fifty of Yazid's cousins (f. 79a). Then the Ispahbad sent men to destroy the high road from Sári to Tammisha and render it impassable (داراجن کند) to horsemen, after all of which deeds he ceased to fear Yazid.

So Yazid, unable to prevail by force, had recourse to strategem, and summoned before him Ḥayyán an-Nabaṭí ("the Nabathean"), a Daylamite client of Maṣqala b. Hubayra, who had been nick-named "the Nabathean" because he was dumb, and said to him: "O Abú Ya'mar! I entreated thee evilly in Khurásán, confiscated thy goods, and put thee in bonds. I have now a favour to ask of thee: think no more of the past, and meditate no treachery or guile." "O Amír," replied Hayyan, "since thou hast shewn me so much honour and favour, I bear no malice; and God forbid that I should neglect the claims of Islám or protect the Magian faith!" Then Yazid told him the news from Gurgán, the strait in which he found himself, and the discouragement of his troops, begging him to devise some plan whereby the Muslims might save themselves in the present and take their revenge in the future. Hayyan answered: "This *gabr* (i. e. the Ispahbad) hath now waxed bold: if he should not hearken to my words, but should say, 'For two years he has ravaged my country and raided my cattle and property,' what answer shall I make?" Yazid answered, "I will give as much as 300,000 *dirhams* in compensation, if he will accept it, and let us depart in peace."

Then Ḥayyán came to the Ispahbad and said, "Yazid b. al-Muhallab (f. 79b) hath sent me to say that if you will serve him in this matter, he will quit your country, but if not he will summon re-inforcements from Syria, Iraq, Khurásán and Turkistán and destroy you and your kingdom." So the Ispahbad was prevailed upon to accept the 300,000 *dinárs*, of which he gave 5000 to Ḥayyan, and to let Yazid go: and he encamped in Tammisha by the moat to give

time for the captives and fugitives of his army to join him. Then Yazíd passed onwards to Gurgán, where he swore to shed enough blood to turn a mill; but after killing many of the *marzubáns* and principal men of the country, he was glad to escape from his oath by a device suggested to him by the Nahapets of Szúl, who bade him mix blood with a mill-stream and eat of bread baked from the flour which it ground. Then he returned to Syria to the court of the Caliph Sulaymán.

Anecdote (f. 79b).

Ibn 'Aísha relates that this Caliph, Sulaymán b. 'Abdu'l-Malik, one day mounted the pulpit, having anointed his beard with perfumed unguent (غابيہ) so that it utmost dripped from him, and said, "I am the youthful King who is confident in his kingdom and his youth": and ere another Friday had come he was dead¹. He was succeeded by 'Umar b. 'Abdu'l-'Azíz (reigned A. H. 99—101; A. D. 717—720), whose piety, justice, learning and clemency are become proverbial. He abolished the hateful practice of publicly cursing 'Alí, Fátima, Hasan and Husayn (f. 80a), which, introduced by the Umayyads, had become pretty general throughout the Muhammadan world, and substituted the reading of the verse (Qur'án, xvi, 92): "Verily God enjoins on you justice, well-doing, and charity towards kinsmen, and forbids you evil speech, unseemly acts and disobedience; He exhorteth you that perchance ye may be admonished."

He also restored to the descendants of Fátima the property of Fadak, of which she had been wrongfully deprived, and it remained in their possession until the time of the 'Abbásid Caliph al-Mutawakkil (reigned A. H. 232—247: A. D. 847—

¹ Cf. *Al-Fakhri*, ed. Ahlwardt, p. 153.

861)¹. Concerning this reparation [the Sharíf] ar-Rađí says:

يَقِنْ عَبْدُ الْعَزِيزِ تَوْبَكَتْ أَعْيُنْ فَقَى مِنْ بَنِي أَمْيَةَ بَيْتَكَ غَيْرَ أَنِّي أَفْرَأَ إِنَّكَ قَدْ سَبَّتْ وَلَمْ يَطْبَ وَلَمْ يَرُكَ بَيْتَكَ²

"In Khwárazm," says the author, "I heard Nidhám [u'd-Dín] Sam'áni say in the pulpit: 'I saw in a dream one of the Substitutes (*Abdál*) of the Prophet seated in the chief seat of apostolic honour, and beside him 'Umar b. 'Abdu'l-'Azíz, and somewhat lower 'Umar b. al-Khaṭáb. 'How,' I enquired, 'hath 'Umar b. 'Abdu'l-'Azíz attained to such proximity?' 'Because of his justice,' was the answer. 'But,' said I, 'was not 'Umar b. al-Khaṭáb more just than he?' 'He,' came the answer, 'was just in an epoch of justice; but the other in an epoch of tyranny and injustice.'"

Yazíd had written to Sulaymán that so great were the spoils of his campaign in Ṭabaristán that the string of camels bearing them would reach continuously even to Syria. 'Umar, into whose hands this letter passed on his accession, demanded of him these boasted spoils, and, as he made excuses, declaring that he had found himself unable to effect their transport, he was cast into prison. Meanwhile the Ispahbad Farrukhán restored in great measure the prosperity of his raided domains, but died in the course of the next year or two, after a reign of seventeen years. And it was he who was the grandfather of Mansúr al-Mahdi.

Reign of the Ispahbad Dázmíhr the son of Farrukhán (f. 80a).

Dázmíhr, the eldest son of Farrukhán, succeeded his father, and reigned for twelve years, during which no one

¹ This Caliph was conspicuous for his insane hatred of the House of 'Alí and their followers (the Shi'a).

² These verses, with another which stands between them, are cited in *al-Fakhri*, ed. Ahlwardt, p. 155.

attempted to molest him. He repaired and restored the Palace of the Ispahbads; and in his days Abú Muslim began his propaganda in favour of the House of 'Abbás at Merv. The Umayyad Marwán II, nick-named "the Ass" (*al-Himár*) was then (A. H. 127—132: A. D. 744—750) Caliph, and he was so called because the Arabs name the year which ends a century "the Year of the Ass", in allusion to the Ass of Ezra; and from the foundation of the Umayyad Caliphate until Marwán was slain exactly one hundred years had elapsed¹. Al-Jáhidh relates in the *Kitábū'l-Bayán wa't-Tabyín* that when Marwán was hard pressed by Abú Muslim's troops, he ordered one of his trusted servants to bury in the sand the staff and cloak of the Prophet, and to cut off the head of one of his daughters, lest she should reveal the hiding-place of these secret relics. But later this servant, being taken captive, said, "If you slay me, the inheritance of the Prophet will be lost for ever." So they spared him, and he shewed them where he had hidden these relics, which were sent to two villages in Tammísha where the councils of the propagandists were at that time held.

Abu'l-Faraj 'Alí b. al-Husayn b. Hindú relates in his *Kitáb-i-amthál-i-Muwallada*, on the authority of Ibn Durayd, the author of the *Kitáb-i-Humayra*, that Ka'b b. Zuhayr received this mantle from the Prophet in reward for a *qasida* which he had composed in his praise, and sold it to Mu'áwiya for 20,000 *dirhams*. It is now in the possession of the 'Abbásid Caliphs.

There was never a more wonderful story than that of Abú Muslim. To a villager of humble origin and lowly position God gave so much power that he took in hand and successfully carried out one of the greatest enterprizes ever planned. It is related that when he conquered the

¹ This statement is incorrect, even if we reckon from the death of 'Uthmán (A. H. 656) till the death of Marwán (A. H. 750).

Umayyads, and Marwán (f. 81a) took account of his deeds, he caused his secretary, 'Abdu'l-Hamíd, who was a master in epistolary composition, to write him a long letter, full of threats and promises, ending with the words:

ان تجمع عدك و الا فالليلك

When this long and wordy letter was read to Abú Muslim, he laid it before him, broke in pieces one of his arrows, and wrote in reply these two couplets:

محاتسيف اسغار ابلاغة و انتحبي عليك ليوط اغاب من كل جانب
فنقدموا نعمل سيفاً شحيدة يسرون علينا انتقب من كل عتب

Then they said to 'Abdu'l-Hamíd the secretary, "Write to Abú Muslim again in words briefer, weightier and more concise, so that he may not answer thee in this fashion." So 'Abdu'l-Hamíd wrote:

يا ابا مجرم لو اراد الله بانتملة صلاحاً لما انبت نبا جناحاً، و على
قدر امצעد يكون انسقة

But Abú Muslim's plans prospered, until he brought Abu'l-'Abbás 'Abdu'lláh as-Saffáh b. Muhammád b. 'Alí b. 'Abdu'lláh b. 'Abbás from al-Madína and proclaimed him Caliph, who, on his death, was succeeded by his brother Abú Ja'far al-Mansúr 'Abdu'lláh b. Muhammád b. 'Alí b. 'Abdu'lláh b. 'Abbás.

It is related that once 'Abdu'llah [b.] 'Abbás was travelling in company with 'Alí, who always showed the greatest consideration for this family (f. 81b), and bestowed on them the governments of Başra, Yaman and Tá'if, while Qutham, the foster-brother of Husayn b. 'Alí was the governor of the two sacred cities (Mecca and al-Madína). Concerning this the Amír Abú Firás says:

اما على فقد اذنى قرابتكم عند الولاية ان لم يكفر النعم
عل جاحد يا بني انتباس نعمته ابوكم لم عَبَيْدَ الله ام فتن

When 'Abdu'lláh's son was born to him in Qatífa, he asked 'Alí to name the child with a noble name:

يَا امِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ رَزَقَنِيَ اللَّهُ الْبَارِحَةَ وَلَدًا فَسَمِّهِ مَشْرَفًا وَ كَنْهَ مَتَوَّخًا،
فَأَخْذَ مِنْهُ امِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَلَلَّ ثُمَّ قَلَ عَلَى أَنَّهُ أَبُو الْمُلُوكِ الْأَرْبَعِينَ سَمَّهُ
عَلَيْهَا، وَ كَنْهَ أَبَا الْحَسِينِ

When al-Mansúr had been enthroned as Caliph, he gave Abú Muslim permission to return to Khurásán. When he reached Hulwán, however, he was overtaken by a messenger from the Caliph bidding him return, since his advice was needed on an affair of importance which had arisen.

Abú Muslim suspected treachery, and consulted with one of his friends, saying, "How dost thou think that I stand with Abú'l-Abbás?" The other replied, "Like the lion whose foot was pierced by a reed, so that it was unable to move; and a simple-minded, well-meaning man, seeing its weakness and hearing its moaning, took pity on it, approached it, and (f. 82a) drew forth the thorn from its foot. Thereupon the lion slew the man, in spite of his cries and protests; 'for,' it said, 'thou art a meddlesome fellow, and perhaps thou may'st assist some other lion as thou hast assisted me, and it may drive me from this my hunting-ground, and make me an exile and a wanderer.' Abú Muslim replied, "If I do not tend, nurse and care for that tender sapling which I have planted, but abandon it to its fate, passers-by will pluck it up by the roots, and my labour of many years will be rendered null and void." So he left his treasure and baggage in the charge of his vicegerent Sindbád at Ray, and himself returned to Mansúr, where that fate overtook him which is well known, and to which he alluded in the punning epigram:

تَرَكْتُ الْمَلْكَ بِالْمَرْيَ

When al-Mansúr had killed Abú Muslim, he gave the

post of *Wazír* to Abú Ayyúb al-Múriyáni; and all men were filled with fear of him because of what he had done to Abú Muslim. Abú Ayyúb's intimates once remarked to him that however often he entered the Caliph's presence his countenance always shewed signs of fear. He repeated to them the parable of the hawk and the cock, when the former reproached the latter with ingratitude for fleeing, screaming and terrified, from men when they called him, notwithstanding the food he had eaten at their hands, and the benefits he had received from them.

Khurshid was called Farshwád Marzubán, and the Nahapets were his maternal uncles and kinsmen. His paternal uncle actually ruled the country until Khurshid reached the age of manhood. This uncle had a hand-maiden named Ramja and called Harúya (حرودي) who was skilled in all sorts of tricks and conjuring, and who used to exhibit her skill to Khurshid whenever he came to see his uncle. To her from his childhood he was deeply attached, so that they used to send letters and messengers to one another. His uncle, who was aware of this state of things, used to say to him -This hand-maiden I hold in trust for thee, and when thou comest to man's estate, I will bestow her on thee."

The Ispahbad Khurshid

When Khurshid was grown to man's estate, his uncle summoned his sons before him and said, "My nephew is grown up, and hath sent me a message, saying, 'The kingdom is my father's, who set thee on the throne under covenant with me; therefore surrender unto me the trust.'" His sons said, "Thou art king, and the kingdom ought to pass from thee to us. We will never consent (f. 83a) to thy surrender of the kingdom to him." The father replied, "Talk not like children, neither hammer cold iron, for I

will be faithful to my covenant. Should I contravene the agreement, no blessing would it bring either to me or to you." Then said they, "Since it is so, send and bid him come hither, that thou may'st make it over to him." So he, knowing not their secret intentions, sent for Khurshid, who, fully confiding in his uncle's integrity, came with a few followers from Tammisha, and was received by his uncle with paternal kindness. On an auspicious day a great banquet was held; but Khurshid's cousins had conspired to kill him with a blow from a mace as soon as he should rise from the banquet and sit down to drink wine. The girl Ramja Haruya, however, was aware of their intended treachery, and informed Khurshid of it. He thereupon summoned a foster-brother of his named Jalwanan, and bade him have two horses ready at the gate. Then, on some pretext, Khurshid slipped out from the banquet, mounted his horse, drew his sword, and, with Jalwanan, rode away, with cries of defiance, back to Tammisha. His uncle reproached his sons bitterly for their meditated treachery, and wrote humble apologies to Khurshid, declaring that he had no part nor lot in the conspiracy. For a year Khurshid did not see his uncle, and was busy, assisted by the Nahapets of Sarí, in preparing for battle. Finally (f. 83b) he met his cousins in battle at Qaṣr-i-Dádaqán, a place midway between Tammisha and Sarí built by his father. He was victorious, slew or captured all of them, and pursued their army as far as Sarí. He then came before his uncle, exonerated him from all participation in the crime, and bade him choose for himself whatever residence and companions he pleased. His surviving cousins he banished to a mountain called Farrukhán Fírúz, where they remained till the end of their lives; and he married Ramja Haruya, and possessed himself of all the treasures of his father and his uncle, of whom the latter had reigned eight years. Khurshid's kinsmen gathered

round him, amongst them Wandarand, Fahrán and Farrukhán, the sons of Jusnas (Gushnasf) b. Sáruya b. Farrukhán the Great, who were his cousins on his mother's side. Of these he made the first *marzubán* of Amul, the second *marzubán* of the highlands (*kuhistán*), and the last he kept with himself. The command of his army he gave to Shahr-Khwástán b. Yazdán-Kard. He repaired the Palace of the Isfahbadán, enclosed 400 acres (?) of land (now called Kísa), used in the author's time by king Ardashír as a breeding-ground for Arab horses, and constructed a strong fortress called Si-dila (سیدلہ)¹, and a market where he settled skilled artisans chosen from all parts of Ṭabaristán. Outside the fortress he built a great caravansaray, and he gave the city five gates, to wit the Highland Gate (دروازہ کوختان), the Sea Gate, and the Gílán, Gurgán and Hunting Gates (دروازہ صید). He also had a channel cut from the mountain to the sea to bring water to the town: and this he called Gílána-júy (f. 84a). Further he made fish-ponds (مصبید ملک), and, outside the Hunting Gate, a great *maydán* and a deep ditch, of which the traces still remain. Near this were covers well preserved and stocked with all sorts of game, such as deer, wild pigs, hares, wolves and leopards; and during his absence none dared to interfere with his preserves. He never remained for more than a month in any one place, and at each of his hunting-lodges he caused a month's provisions to be kept. In the highlands he had ninety-three wives, each of whom had her own special palace and servants and plate and furniture. For his first and favourite wife, Ramja Haruya, he built a lofty palace on the sea-shore at the village of Yazdán-ábád, on which he spent much money, furnishing it in the most sumptuous fashion; and he used to visit her

¹ C. Shihdila, شیدلہ.

always once a month, while to her care were entrusted his most precious possessions. If by any chance he was prevented from paying her this monthly visit, he used to send her an apology, and a gift of a thousand *dinárs*. She bore him a son named Hurmuz, whom he nominated as his successor. Amongst his other wives was Azarmí Dukht, the daughter of the Ispahbad Farrukhán, called *Girán Gúshwár* ("She of the Heavy Ear-rings"), and his cousin Yákand ("Jacinth" or "Hyacinth", *ὑάκινθος*), the daughter of Farrukhán the Lesser. The Ispahbad was particularly attached to the former, and often used to make his hunting expeditions a pretext for visiting her. Yákand was a quarrelsome and masterful woman, and, having discovered her husband's clandestine visits to *Girán Gúshwár*, instructed her servants and the villagers to go with spades, pick-axes and other implements, and destroy and obliterate the road to Ispahbadán, where *Girán Gúshwár* dwelt, and to clear and improve the road to her own palace. So at midnight the Ispahbad, who had drunk freely, mounted his horse to go to Ispahbadán, but was directed by Yákand's coadjutors to the abode of their mistress. On arriving there, he knew that a trick had been played on him, and he sent in a message, saying, "I have four hundred men with me: canst thou provide food for such a multitude?" Yákand ordered 400 cows to be sent out to them, and with each cow 400 sheep and 400 ass-loads [of provisions], and entertained them all for three days, at the end of which time she gave to each horseman a foal and a calf, and to each footman three suits of clothes and an embroidered blanket (علم *كليمي* معلم).

The Ispahbad Khurshíd had a general named Qárin, after whom was named the village of Qárin-ábád in Panjáh-házár and Mayándarúd, wherein he stored his treasures. It is now in ruins. His body-guard comprised 4000 men, and he always wore brocade, and sat on a golden throne, and

exercised the fullest authority over the Ispahbad's people, both men and women. And when the Ispahbad had reigned a long while (f. 85a), he became filled with pride and self-assurance, and took no heed of anyone, and paid no attention to the nobles, so that the hearts of his people were alienated by his tyranny and arrogance, and they sought a pretext to rebel against him.

How the Ispahbad Khurshíd revolted against
the Caliph Mansúr.

When the Caliph al-Mansúr slew Abú Muslim, and news of this came to his friend and ally Sindbád in Ray, he sent all the treasures and cattle which Abú Muslim had confided to him to the Ispahbad, as a trust, together with a present of six million *dirhams*, and at the same time cast off his allegiance to al-Mansúr, and revolted against him. The Caliph thereupon sent Jumhúr b. Marár from Baghdad to fight against him; and he came to Ray and defeated Sindbád at Jurjunbáni (? Jurkhiyáni). Sindbád fled to Tabaristán and sought protection with the Ispahbad, who sent his cousin Tús out to meet him, with provisions, presents, horses and arms. When Tús met Sindbád, he alighted from his horse and saluted him, while Sindbád answered him from his saddle, and did not alight to do him honour. Thereat Tús was angered and said, "I am one of the Ispahbad's cousins, and he sent me out to do thee honour. It was not contemplated that thou shouldst treat me with disrespect." To this speech Sindbád returned a harsh answer, and Tús, remounting his horse, soon found an opportunity to smite Sindbád with his sword and cut off his head, after which he brought all his retainers and stores to the Ispahbad, who was greatly vexed, reviled Tús, and took possession of all Abú Muslim's and Sindbád's property. News of this

was sent by Jumhúr to the Caliph, who instructed his general to demand the surrender of this property from the Ispahbad. At this time 'Abdu'l-Jabbár b. 'Abdu'r-Rahmán was in Khurásán. The Ispahbad sent one of his chamberlains named Firúz with Sindbád's head to the Caliph, who received him with great honour. On learning this, the Ispahbad sent Firúz once more to the Caliph with a gift of precious stones and rare products of Ṭabaristán. The Caliph then requested him to hand over the treasures of Abú Muslim and Sindbád, but the Ispahbad persisted in declaring that they were not in his possession, and finally broke out into open revolt against the Caliph, who thereupon sent his son al-Mahdí to Ray, bidding him seize the Ispahbad's son Hurmuz as a hostage for the father's loyalty. The Ispahbad, on receiving this demand, replied that his son was too young to bear the fatigues of the journey, and al-Mahdí wrote to his father the Caliph, advising him not to press this demand, lest the Ispahbad should break into more open revolt. So al-Mansúr sent him a royal crown and robe of honour, and the Ispahbad, being pleased thereat, consented to send to the Court of Baghdad the same tribute which Ṭabaristán had formerly paid to the Sásánian kings, to wit: a poll-tax of one *dirham* of gold for each inhabitant; 300,000 *dirhams*, each containing four *dángs* (i.e. $\frac{4}{6} = \frac{2}{3}$) of "white" silver; 300 bales of green silk carpets and quilts; (f. 86a) the same amount of good coloured cotton; the same amount of gold-embroidered garments of the kinds called Rúyání and Lafúraj; the same amount of saffron, which is of a kind unequalled in all the world; and a certain amount of sea-fish. All this tribute was laden on forty mules, on each of which was mounted a Turkish slave or hand-maiden.

Now the sight of this tribute of Ṭabaristán did but inflame the Caliph al-Mansúr's desire to possess so rich a

povince; and he sent a verbal message to the Ispahbad bidding him help his troops in repelling the attacks of 'Abdu'l-Jabbár. He also wrote to his son al-Mahdí, who was at Ray, bidding him write to the Ispahbad that, owing to the drought and consequent scarcity of food, it was impossible for all his army to follow the same route, and that he desired the Ispahbad's permission for one division of them to pass through Ṭabaristán.

Account of the Caliph's treachery towards the Ispahbad.

At the command of his father the Caliph, al-Mahdí sent as ambassador to the Ispahbad a certain Persian (مردعاً از اعجم) with the request suggested by al-Mansúr. The Ispahbad was at Isfahbadán, and when the ambassador had conveyed to him the message with which he was charged, he shewed him all honour, and answered that his country was the property of the Commander of the Faithful, who could do whatever seemed good in his eyes. When the ambassador had left the audience-chamber, his Persian proclivities (كیت عجمیت) impelled him to declare to the Ispahbad the treachery meditated by the Caliph. So he called the Ispahbad's chamberlain, and said, "I have an important communication for the Ispahbad's private ear." When this request was communicated to the Ispahbad, he said, "It is but this moment that he left me (f. 86b); what matter of importance can have arisen so soon?" "Perhaps," said the chamberlain, "he cherishes some vain hope, and desires to crave some boon of you." "Tell him," said the Ispahbad, "that the ladies of the Royal Household are with me in the Palace, and that consequently you could not convey my message." When the ambassador heard this message, he knew that Fate could not be averted, and said to him-

self, "Alas for all this pomp and circumstance and sovereignty which is to be cast to the winds! When Decline sets its face towards a house, no scheme or plan of its chiefs goes right. This man, for all his talents, can send me so flimsy an excuse! Fate and Destiny have, for the Caliph's satisfaction, let down the veil of ignorance before the face of the Ispahbad's discernment, so that he cannot see a fact which is as plain as daylight!"

وَلَمْ يَرَهُ عَذْرٌ وَلَا عَذْرٌ عَذْرٌ

So the ambassador came back to al-Mahdī at Ray, and conveyed to him the Ispahbad's answer; and al-Mahdī despatched Abu'l-Khuḍayb Marzūq as-Sa'idi, the client of al-Muthanná b. al-Hajjáj, by way of Zárim and Sháh-kúh, while he sent Abú 'Awn b. 'Abdu'l-Láh by way of Gurgán to effect a junction with him. And the Ispahbad had transferred the dwellers in the plain to the highlands, lest any collision should take place between them and the Caliph's troops: not knowing that the intention of the latter was to destroy and dispossess him.

Account of 'Amr b. 'Alá in Amul.

Abu'l-Khuḍayb chose as his guide a certain 'Amr (? 'Umar) b. 'Alá, who had, on account of a murder which he had committed in Gurgán, taken refuge with the Ispahbad, under whose protection he had lived for a long while, during which time he had obtained full knowledge of the country, and of all its roads, fords and passes. But now he had joined himself to the Caliph's troops, and was sent with 2000 horsemen to attack Amul (f. 87a). The Marzubán of this city, who held his office from the Ispahbad, came out to meet him in battle; but he was slain, and Amul was occupied by 'Umar b. 'Alá, who proclaimed a just administration to all the inhabitants, and invited them to embrace

Islám. And the people, being, as already said, disgusted with the Ispahbad's arrogance, came in in crowds, embraced Islám, and surrendered up their arms and possessions. Shortly after this, news of the death of 'Abdu'l-Jabbár arrived, and the invaders, being no longer anxious about Khurásán, settled down in Ṭabaristán.

Now on the top of Darband-i-Kúla near the road to Aram there is a palace (فَق), now known as 'A'isha Kargíl Dízh, where ten years' supply of water was stored up in reservoirs, with corn, bread, and other provisions, and which could be approached only by one gate of solid stone which it required 500 men to open and 500 men to shut; and when it was shut, no one could detect its position. There the Ispahbad Khurshid placed his wives, children, nobles, and other dependents, while he himself, with his retainers and a few loads of gold, sent out for Daylam by way of Láriján to obtain reinforcements.

The Muslim army, on learning his movements, set out in pursuit, but he reached Rúyán with the loss of only a few men and animals, and thence pushed on to Daylam, where he remained for two years and seven months, while the Muslims besieged his stronghold, until he had gathered together 50,000 men of Gil and Daylam. But the plague attacked his stronghold, and in one day 400 persons died, and such was the stench of their bodies that the garrison were obliged to capitulate to the Muslims, who spent seven days in bringing the stores and treasures out of the Castle. Then they prepared to send the women, with all respect and honour, to the Caliph. The Muslim general desired Azarmí-Dukht and Ramja Haruya to surrender themselves to him, but they both refused. Of Khurshid's daughters, who were as beautiful as the moon, he gave one to 'Abbas b. Muḥammad al-Ḥáshimí, who named her Amatu'r-Rahmán ("the Hand-maiden of the All-Merciful"), while another the Ca-

lip himself took. All of them urged the Caliph to give the kingdom of Ṭabaristán to their father, and to this the Caliph consented, and despatched a messenger with orders to this effect, but he got no further than Ḥulwán, for the Ispahbad Khurshíd, filled with despair at the disaster which had befallen him, and unable to bear the disgrace, took poison and died. With him ended the line of Jílánsháh, which had reigned in Ṭabaristán for 119 years.

Account of the governors and rulers who
were sent from Baghdad to rule over
Ṭabaristán after the extirpation
of the Line of Jílánsháh.

The first 'Abbásid governor of Ṭabaristán was the already-mentioned Abu'l-Khuḍayb, and the first building erected there by the Muslims was the Great Mosque of Sári, which he caused to be built on a Monday in the month of Abán in the year A. H. 140 (A. D. 757—8), on which date Amul was occupied and Ṭabaristán practically conquered by the Muslims. Abu'l-Khuḍayb was governor for two years, and was succeeded by Abú Khuzayma, who settled armed garrisons throughout the country as follows: in Tammísha 1000 Arabs under Fakhr b. 'Abdu'lláh al-Khuzá'í; in Rúdbár, two parasangs from Tammísha, 500 men under Rabí' b. 'Urwán; in Kúsán 300 men under Abu'l-'Ammár al-'Atiqí; in Asrámíl 500 men under Ibráhím b. Isháq ash-Shámi; in Sámta 500 men under Kirmán al-Bukhári; in Kúsán 500 men of Khurásán under Núh (بن انساسف); in Dizwán in the district of Panjáh-hazár 1000 men under Jílí b. Sa'íd al-Marwázi; in Dú-Ab 500 men under 'Umar b. Sa'íd; in Mihrawán 1000 men under Khalaf b. 'Abdu'lláh; in Aṣram 500¹ men; in Azdara 300 men under Ziyád b. Házim²; in

¹ B. "300".

² B. "Jázim".

Awsarzín 1000¹ men under Khalífa b. حلب; in Awrárábád above Parícha 500² men; in Rawá 300 men under Walíd b. Maysara; in the city of Sári 1000 men; in Artá 500 men of Ṭabaristán; in Kaskarúd³ 500 men under Muḥammad b. Ná'ib; in Khurramábád 1000 men under 'Abdu'lláh b. Sayf; in Chamanú⁴ 1000 men under Miskín b. Ghazál ash-Shámi; in Firím 500 men under Khalífa b. Bahrám; in Yazdánábád 500 men under 'Umar b. 'Alá; in Kúlá 300 men under Nasrín b. as-Sunqur; in Mámtír 1000 men under Salám b. Qudáma (f. 88a); in Sáliyán near Lufúr 1000 men; in Níshápúriyya 300 men under Ibn Salma al-Qa'íd of Níshápúr; in Ṭábarán 500 men under Muḥammad b. 'Abbás as-Salmí; in Isfandiyár 3000 men; in Tarícha 1500 men under Muslim b. Khálid; in Fath...⁵ 500 men from Nisá and Báward; in Jábarán 300 men under Muḥammad b. 'Abdu'lláh; in Masla Zarrín Kúl, 1000 men; in Amul 3000 men under the officers, allies and magistrates of the Caliph; in Jílánábád above Rán-Kúh 1000 men under Naṣr b. 'Imrán of Khurasan; in Pá-yi-Dasht 500 men under 'Amir b. Adam; in Halawán 500 men, first under al-Mu-thanna b. al-Ḥajjáj, and then under Muḥammad b. 'Afal; in Nátil 500 men under Sa'íd b. Maymún; in Bahrám Dih 500 men under 'Umar b. Bahrám 'Isá; in Qara-Ṭughán of Bálá-ráh, 500 men under Yúsuf b. 'Abdu'r-Rahmán; in Wá-láshjírd 800 men under 'Alí b. Jastán; in Kajwúhi Qaṣabatu'r-Rúyán 6000 men under 'Umar b. al-'Alá; in Jurishjírd-Sa'íd-ábád 500 men under Sa'íd b. 'Umar b. al-'Alá; in Kálá, the beginning of Daylam, 1000 men; in the Highlands (Kúhistán) of Júparm (جورم) 1000 Arabs; and in as-Sa'ídí 500 men.

After a year [? Abu'l-Khuḍayma] was dismissed, and re-

¹ B. "500".

² B. "1000".

³ A. "Jangrúd".

⁴ B. "Khambu".

⁵ So A. and C. B. فتح فصلب.

placed by Rúh b. Hátim b. Qaysar b. al-Muhallab, who was made governor in A. H. 144 (= A. D. 761—2), but a year later, being convicted of tyranny and injustice, he was replaced by Khálid b. Barmak, who took up his abode at a place called after him Khálida-Saráy. He also built for himself a palace at Amul, and ruled for four years, building many public buildings and developing the resources of the country, until at the end of this period he was replaced by 'Amr b. al-'Alá, during whose governorship the Caliph al-Mansúr died, and was succeeded by (f. 88b) his son al-Mahdí. He, being informed that 'Amr b. al-'Alá had sought the hand of the daughter of Mihrúya in marriage, was angered against him and dismissed him. Sa'íd b. Da'laj succeeded him as governor, and held this position for three years. At this period a Sayyid of the House of Abú Tálib named Ḥusayn b. 'Alí, commonly called سَاحِبُ فَحْخَ, revolted in the Hijáz, and was joined by many other Sayyids. The Caliph sent Músá b. 'Isá and Sirrí b. 'Abdu'lláh al-Abbásí, with other *Amirs* and officers, to fight him. The Battle took place at Fakhkh, and the Sayyid was slain, together with many of his companions. Some few, however, escaped, and made their way to al-Madína, where Músá b. 'Isá was holding his court and audience, at which, to avert suspicion of disaffection, most of the chief men of al-Madína were present. Presently Músá b. 'Abdu'lláh b. al-Ḥasan b. al-Ḥasan b. 'Alí b. 'Abí Tálib, who had escaped from the battle, came in, clad in a coarse woollen cuirass (أَعْرَامَ), slashed with sword-cuts, and sandals of camel's skin, and sat down in the lowest place. Immediately afterwards the Imám Músá b. Ja'far al-Kádhim entered. Músá b. 'Isá rose to meet him, and caused him to sit in an honourable place. Sirrí b. 'Abdu'lláh al-Abbásí turned to Músá b. 'Abdu'lláh b. al-Ḥasan and said, "What dost thou think of the stricken field of rebellion and treachery? Why dost thou not withhold thy

hand from such deeds, that thy cousins (meaning the 'Abábádis) might enrich thee and treat thee with honour?" Músá replied, "Our relation towards you is like what has been said in this verse:"

بَنْيَ عَمَّنَا رَدُوا فُضُولَ بَعْنَانَ يَنْمَ لِيَلَّمُ لَلَّوَافِمَ

"Good!" exclaimed Sirrí; "it is even so: naught accrues to you save abasement and humiliation. If you would only be quiet as is your cousin here, Músá b. Ja'far, notwithstanding all his learning, piety, nobility and ascetic life (f. 89a), would it not be better?" Thereupon Músá b. 'Abdu'lláh extemporised the following verses:

فَإِنْ لَآتَى نَشْنَى عَلَيْهِ بَقِيَّةَ أَوْلَادَ بَنْوَ عَمِّيْ وَعَمِّيْ أَبِيْ
وَإِنَّكَ لَمَّا تَلَحَّبَتِ بِمَدِحَةِ تَعْلَقَ وَلَمَّا تَمَدَّعَ أَبَرَّ تَكَبَّ

Now since the Caliph al-Mahdí was preoccupied with these matters, Sa'íd b. Da'laj remained two years and three months as Governor of Ṭabaristán ere he was recalled, and 'Amr b. al-'Alá was again sent to replace him. He it was who built the village of 'Amr (? 'Umar) Kaláda, situated near Wana-bun, as well as another town called 'Umar (? Amr)-ábád. In this year there was a great earthquake; and Ahmad b. Ḥanbal declared at Baghdad that heavier taxes should be imposed on the people of Ṭabaristán, as well as a 10% tithe on cereals, because the country had not surrendered willingly, but had been taken by force. A year later 'Amr b. al-'Alá was replaced by Yahyá b. Mikhnáq (B. حَنْقَ), who dealt gently with the people, till he was in turn replaced by 'Abdu'l-Ḥamid Maḍrúb, who vexed the people with new and oppressive taxes.

Rule of the sons of Súkhrá and revolt of
Wandád Hurmuzd.

Then arose Wandád Hurmuzd, the son of Alandá, the

son of Qárin, the son of Súkhrá, who has been already mentioned in speaking of the *Garsháhs* (*Jarsháhs*) or kings of the Mountains; for the word *Jar* (or *Gar*) is applied to mountain-land susceptible of cultivation, and Gáw-bára had given this land to this family, who had held it for a hundred years. Now the inhabitants of Ummídwár-Kúh came to Wandád Hurmuzd to complain of the tyranny and exactions of the Caliph's governors, promising him their support if he would rebel against them, whereby they might escape from the tyranny which was crushing them down, and he might recover the authority enjoyed by his ancestors. He answered them that he must first consult with (f. 89b) the Ispahbad Sharwín, the king of the Mountains, and seek for the support of the Mas-mughán Walásh; and that if these consented to help him, he would revolt against the Caliph. So he sent messengers to Sharwín at Shahriyár-kúh in Farím, and to the Mas-mughán at Mayándarúd, both of whom agreed to help him, and encouraged him in his enterprise. A day was then fixed on which the people of Ṭabaristán should make a general massacre of all the Arabs and servants of the Caliph. This was done; and so thoroughly were the Ṭabaristánis in accord that women who were married to followers of the Caliph dragged them out of their houses by their beards, and delivered them over to the executioners, so that in all Ṭabaristán not an Arab was left. When Hammál b. 'Umar ad-Duhálí and Khálid b. Barmak, whom the Caliph had sent to Ray, received news of this, they despatched tidings to Baghdad, and al-Mahdí sent Sálím of Farghána, one of his most trusted officers, whom he had nick-named "the Devil of Farghána" to enquire into and report on the matter. On learning the truth, the Caliph exclaimed, "Is there no one who will go to Ṭabaristán and bring me the head of Wandád Hurmuzd?" Sálím offered himself, and the Caliph despatched him with a fol-

lowing of brave and hardy soldiers. On arriving in Ṭabaristán, he encamped in the plain of Aṣram, where Wandád Hurmuzd came to meet him, accompanied by a great host. Sálím was mounted on a favourite piebald horse, well known throughout 'Iráq-i-'Arab. He at once rode at Wandád Hurmuzd and smote at him with his great mace, which weighed twenty maunds, splitting the shield with which he sought to parry the blow (f. 90a), but nor succeeding in inflicting on him any further injury. At dusk they ceased from battle, and Wandád Hurmuzd and his men encamped at Hurmuzdábád. Next day they fell to banqueting and drinking. Wandád Hurmuzd had a black horse, which had on its neck a curious mole, and which was of incomparable excellence. This he had saddled with a golden saddle and caparisoned with jewelled trappings, and when it was brought before him he said, "O people, know that this is our antagonist whom ye have seen, and whose pomp and power ye have witnessed. And ye are all of you the bravest men of Ṭabaristán. Which of you will take this caparisoned horse and do battle with him?" Thrice he made this appeal, and no one responded to it, until at last one of his sons, a lad named Wandá-ummíd, and called Khudáwand-i-Kalálak, advanced, kissed the ground, and said, "By thy good fortune I am he who shall bring thee thine enemy's head; and for this I desire nothing but the horse." "When," said Wandád Hurmuzd, "hast thou contended with warriors and taken part in such contests?" The lad, however, persisted in his resolve, in spite of the attempts to dissuade him made by his father and his maternal uncle Qúhyár, who was finally bidden to accompany his nephew, notwithstanding his weakness and old age. The bravest men were chosen to accompany them, and a cow-herd named Ardashírak Báblíraj (f. 90b), who knew all the intricacies of the thickets and forests, was sent to lead them by secret paths against

Sálím, who, being taken by surprise, was slain by Wandá-ummíd in single combat, at Harsa-mál, three parasangs from Ámul, or, as some say, at Aşram, at the place now called Hí-Hí-Kayán. So the lad Wandá-ummíd came back in triumph to his father, Wandád-Hurmuzd, and was received by him with great honour and rejoicing, and ever afterwards permitted to sit beside him on his golden throne. And Sálím was esteemed by the Caliph as equivalent in value to a thousand horsemen¹.

Account of the war with Firásha.

When the news of the death of Sálím reached the Caliph, he was greatly vexed, and despatched another army of 10,000 men under an Amír named Firásha against Țabaristán, at the same time sending messages to Khálid-i-Barmakí, Ward-i-Asfar ("Yellow Rose") and Hammád at Ray, bidding them afford him any help of which he might stand in need. So Firásha, re-inforced by further levies, advanced to Aram, meeting with no resistance, for Wandád Hurmuzd had ordered that none should oppose them or contest their advance, so that they might wax bold and careless (f. 91a). He himself retired to Kúlá, near which, at Gawázúnú, he constructed two great dykes (*dar-band*), one above and one below. Then he sent to the Ispahbad Sharwín, who was at Parim and Kamínnám, bidding him come and help him; but Sharwín delayed and procrastinated so that Firásha was convinced of his weakness and helplessness. Wandád Hurmuzd had prepared 400 trumpets and 400 drums, and he assembled at Gawázúnú all his kinsmen and trusted warriors, whom he drew up in two ranks, with 4000 of his people, both men and women, to each of whom

¹ i.e. he held the rank and title of Hazár-mard.

he gave an axe. He then explained to them his plan, which was that he himself should advance a little way towards the enemy with a hundred men, but that as soon as he had been seen by Firásha and his troops, he should fall back, followed by the enemy, whom he would thus lure within the two silent lines of his followers. Then, when they were all within the ambush, he would beat a drum; and at this sign all his followers were to begin to blow the 400 trumpets, beat the 400 drums, and fell trees with the 4000 axes. All this was duly carried out; and when the troops of Firásha heard this turmoil and uproar, they were filled with consternation, and were easily routed. Firásha himself was taken captive, and brought before the Ispahbad, who ordered his head to be struck off, and himself put on his cloak, cap, belt and sword; but quarter was accorded to the remaining prisoners. At this juncture the Ispahbad Sharwín arrived, and was given one third of the spoils (f. 91b). Wandád Hurmuzd related to his son Qárin that he had dreamed that he slew a wolf; that after this another wolf came and was also slain by him; that thereafter a leopard came, and he slew it, cut off its head, and clothed himself in its skin; and that last of all a lion came and grappled with him, and wounded him with its claws, until at last with a great effort he freed himself from it. The first wolf was Taym b. Sinán; the second, Khalifa b. Mihrán; the leopard, in whom skin Wandád clothed himself, was Firásha; and the lion was Yazid b. Marthad.

When the news of Firásha's death reached the Caliph al-Mahdí, he sent to Țabaristán Rúh b. Hátim, a tyrant of evil life, concerning whose dismissal from office Abú Jaysh al-Hiláí said:

رَأَيْتُ دُجَّا مِنْ أَمْلِ فَاسْتَرَاحُوا وَأَتَقَّى بَعْدَ الْفَسَادِ الْقِلَاحَ

¹ MS. فاستراح.

لَمْ يَرِدْ سَيِّدُ الْحَرَائِرَ حَتَّىٰ شَاعَ فِي النَّاسِ وَأَسْتَحِلَّ الْسَّفَاحَ

He was succeeded by Khálid b. Barmak, who maintained friendly relations with Wandád Hurmuzd, and allowed him to possess the highlands in peace. When he was dismissed and was leaving Amul, a tradesman who was standing near at hand said, "Praise be to God that we are delivered from thy tyranny." This was reported to Khálid, who caused the tradesman to be brought before him, and reproached him and struck off his head. Thence he proceeded to Sári, where the people came out to meet him with presents; and he abode there for a time, bestowing many gifts on the people.

He was succeeded by 'Amr b. 'Alá, who fought with Wandád Hurmuzd, took from him his highland domains (f. 92a), and pressed him so hard that he was unable to dwell any longer in the cultivated lands, but was driven into the forests. So his affairs continued to grow worse, until one day one of his followers was taken captive and brought before 'Amr b. 'Alá, who ordered him to be beheaded; but the man prayed for mercy, promising in return to bring the Amír the head of Wandád Hurmuzd. The Amír asked what surety he proposed to give for the due performance of his promise. "This blanket," replied the man, "which I wear on my back." The Amír laughed and said, "If he is faithful to his promise, it will be like the bow of Hájib b. Zurára at-Tamími and Kisrá." Concerning this story, which is well known and need not be repeated here, a poet says:

وَكُلُّ وَفَّا كَانَ فِي قَوْسِ حَاجِبٍ
وَأَنْتَ جَمِيعَتُ الْغَدَرِ فِي قَوْسِ حَاجِبٍ

"And I," added the Amír, "will deal with him as Kisrá dealt with Hájib b. Zurára." So they kept him a prisoner as they advanced, until he said, "Do you remain here that

I may go and get news and return." So he went away, and Wandád Hurmuzd prepared an ambush for the Muslims and slew most of them. 'Amr b. 'Alá escaped with a few followers, and the Caliph al-Mahdí, angered at his defeat, sent Taym b. Sinán, who made peace with Wandád Hurmuzd.

Then the Caliph sent Yazíd b. Marthad, who fought against Wandád Hurmuzd, conquered him, slew many of his followers, and occupied the whole country; till finally, meeting him in single combat, he wounded him severely, and Wandád Hurmuzd, accompanied only by a few followers, became a fugitive in the forests.

After this the Caliph al-Mahdí sent his son Músá al-Hádí to Gurgán, and to him Wandád Hurmuzd surrendered on promise of pardon; whereupon Músá wrote to Yazid b. Marthad bidding him give up the highlands to him. Thence, taking Wandád Hurmuzd with him, he marched back through 'Iráq to Baghdad. On the way thither he received news of the death of his father al-Mahdí; so he hastened on to Baghdad and was formally invested with the title of Caliph. Soon afterwards the younger brother of Wandád Hurmuzd (f. 92b) Wandásafán beheaded Bahram b. Firúz, who, at the Caliph's persuasion, had embraced Islám. The Caliph thereupon summoned Wandád Hurmuzd before him and ordered him to be beheaded at once; but he craved mercy, declaring that his brother's sole object in killing the Caliph's servant was to rid himself of him, since he reckoned on the Caliph avenging himself on Wandád-Hurmuzd, and hoped thereby to inherit the highlands of Țabaristán. "Therefore," he concluded, "if the Caliph desires that he should attain his object, let him kill me; but if not, let him send me to bring him or his head to the Caliph." Both 'Isá b. Máhán and Murád b. Muslim were present, and both exclaimed: "Why should the Commander of the

Faithful forbid this? This is the best plan." So the Caliph despatched Wandád Hurmuzd with a robe of honour and the necessary equipment. On reaching Ṭabaristán, he prostrated himself on the earth in thankfulness, and sent a message to Wandásafán bidding him keep in hiding and avoid him at all hazards; and he continued to pretend to pursue him till, on one night, Músá al-Hádí died, Hárūnú'r-Rashíd became Caliph, and al-Ma'mún was born.

Harúnú'r-Rashíd was an obstinate, warlike, masterful and self-willed Caliph, and he despatched Sulaymán b. Músá to Ṭabaristán, where he was governor for eight months, when he was replaced by Hádí b. Hání, a mild and just governor, who maintained friendly relations with Wandad Hurmuzd, and kept the country tranquil and quiet. He was succeeded by 'Abdu'lláh b. Qaḥṭaba, and he in turn by 'Uthmán b. Nahík, who built the Great Mosque of Amul. Next came Sa'íd b. Salma b. Qutayba b. Muslim, who was replaced after six months by Ḥammál and 'Abdu'lláh, the sons of 'Abdu'l-Āzíz. Ten months later, in A.H. 179 (= A.D. 795-6) these were superseded by Muthanná b. al-Hajjáj (f. 93a), who remained one year, and repaired the walls of Amul and Sári, which were afterwards destroyed by Máz-yár. And after him came 'Abdu'lláh b. Házim.

The Rebellion of the people of Rustamdár.

The deputy of this last governor, who was named Salám and nicknamed *Siyáh Mard* ("the Black Man"), was expelled from his province, and entered into a league with the Daylamites. There was at Kalár a very beautiful woman, whom they seized, in order to create trouble; but she cast herself into a stream and drowned herself. The deputy-governor of 'Abdu'lláh was at Kajú, and, on hearing of this, he at once hastened to Jálús, when there was a judge named

Şudám who was accused of being the cause of the mischief, and who fled into hiding. The deputy-governor caused proclamation to be made throughout the country that whoever should find this judge and give him quarter would be no longer accounted a Muslim, but would be reckoned an outlaw. At length the judge was captured by the people and bound to a tree for three days and nights; and Salám ordered that all the people of that district should come in, so that he might fulfil their desires and grant their wishes. So they came in, hopeful and jubilant; but he shut them all up in houses, and set sentries over them. It was then the month of Ramaḍán, and in the evening, before he had performed the evening prayer, he mounted his horse, broke his fast in the saddle with some bread and a few bunches of grapes plucked from a neighbouring garden, and had his prisoners brought out one by one from their confinement and decapitated. This work of slaughter went on all night by candle-light, and when morning dawned not one of the prisoners was left alive. Then he said, "I am like this candle; as it burns itself to give light to you, so have I cast myself into torment to make the country safe for you." Thence he went to Sa'íd-ábád, drove the people out of their fortifications by assault, slew them all, and destroyed the village, till at length Hárūnú'r-Rashíd dismissed him from his government, and appointed Muḥammad b. Yaḥyá b. Khálid al-Barmakí and his brother Músá to succeed him, while their brothers Faḍl b. Yaḥyá and Ja'far were the Caliph's ministers at Baghdad (f. 93b). The two former ruled oppressively over Ṭabaristán, confiscating every estate and seizing every beautiful woman just as they pleased; and none dared make complaint against them to the Caliph for fear of the influence wielded by their brothers at the court. At length Hárún's anger was aroused against Ja'far, and he ordered the family of the Barmecides to be

destroyed. Concerning the cause of his anger, two separate traditions are recorded in history.

Cause of the Extirpation of the Barmecides.

When Hárúnu'r-Rashíd, wishing to be able to enjoy the society of his sister 'Abbása and Ja'far the Barmecide at the same time, married them to one another on the condition that this marriage was to be a marriage in name only, 'Abbása was unable to control her love for Ja'far, and wrote to him:

عَزَّمْتُ عَلَيْ قَلْبِي بِأَنْ يَكُنْمِي فَصَبَّعَ وَنَادَى أَنَّى غَيْرُ فَاعِلٍ
فَرَنَى وَإِلَّا نَحْتَ بَنَخْتَ عَنْوَةَ وَإِنْ عَنْقَتِنِي فِي عَوَّاَكَ عَوَادِلِي
وَإِنْ حَانَ مَوْتِي تَمَّ أَدْعُكَ بِغَتْنِي وَأَفْرَتَ قَبْلَ آتِمَوْتِ أَنَّكَ قَاتِلِي

So Ja'far, fearing to offend 'Abbása, gave her the love she sought, and the result of this union was a child whom they called Haml 'A'isha. It is related on the authority of Nawfalí that in A. H. 180 (= A. H. 796-7) Hárúnu'r-Rashíd went on the pilgrimage, and received tidings of this event on the journey, but made no sign of pleasure or displeasure, until he returned and reached Buḥayra, where he embarked in a skiff with Ja'far to go fishing. On his return from this expedition he proceeded to Ambár, where he said to Ja'far, "Today I shall be with my *haram*, and I give you permission to go to your family and amuse yourself as you will." All day Hárún kept sending him presents, until, when the time of evening prayer was at hand, the blind minstrel Abú Rakáz sang these verses:

فَلَا تَبْعَدْ فَنْلُ فَنَّى سَيَّاْسِيَ عَلَيْهِ آتِمَوْتِ يَطْرُفُ أَوْ يُغَادِي
وَنُلَّ دَخِيَّرَةَ لَا بُدَّ يَوْمَاً وَإِنْ بَقَيَّتْ تَصِيرُ إِلَى نَفَادِ
فَلَوْ فُوَدِيَتْ مِنْ حَدِّ الْمَنَابِيَّ فَدَيْشَكَ بِالْتَّلِيدِ¹ وَبِالْتَّلَادِ
بِالْطَّرِيفِ .

Ja'far said to Abú Rakáz, "What song art thou singing before men?" He replied, "O my master, I can think of no other song to sing." Thus conversing, suddenly Masrúr, without seeking permission, for the ¹ he was a ² cut off Ja'far's head and brought it to him, he sprang to his feet and rejoiced that thou art come to me. "I didst enter without seeking permission," said Masrúr, "on a weighty errand." "What command of the Prince of Believers?" said Ja'far, saying, "Suffer me to go into the ³ ⁴ ⁵ ⁶ ⁷ ⁸ ⁹ ¹⁰ ¹¹ ¹² ¹³ ¹⁴ ¹⁵ ¹⁶ ¹⁷ ¹⁸ ¹⁹ ²⁰ ²¹ ²² ²³ ²⁴ ²⁵ ²⁶ ²⁷ ²⁸ ²⁹ ³⁰ ³¹ ³² ³³ ³⁴ ³⁵ ³⁶ ³⁷ ³⁸ ³⁹ ⁴⁰ ⁴¹ ⁴² ⁴³ ⁴⁴ ⁴⁵ ⁴⁶ ⁴⁷ ⁴⁸ ⁴⁹ ⁵⁰ ⁵¹ ⁵² ⁵³ ⁵⁴ ⁵⁵ ⁵⁶ ⁵⁷ ⁵⁸ ⁵⁹ ⁶⁰ ⁶¹ ⁶² ⁶³ ⁶⁴ ⁶⁵ ⁶⁶ ⁶⁷ ⁶⁸ ⁶⁹ ⁷⁰ ⁷¹ ⁷² ⁷³ ⁷⁴ ⁷⁵ ⁷⁶ ⁷⁷ ⁷⁸ ⁷⁹ ⁸⁰ ⁸¹ ⁸² ⁸³ ⁸⁴ ⁸⁵ ⁸⁶ ⁸⁷ ⁸⁸ ⁸⁹ ⁹⁰ ⁹¹ ⁹² ⁹³ ⁹⁴ ⁹⁵ ⁹⁶ ⁹⁷ ⁹⁸ ⁹⁹ ¹⁰⁰ ¹⁰¹ ¹⁰² ¹⁰³ ¹⁰⁴ ¹⁰⁵ ¹⁰⁶ ¹⁰⁷ ¹⁰⁸ ¹⁰⁹ ¹¹⁰ ¹¹¹ ¹¹² ¹¹³ ¹¹⁴ ¹¹⁵ ¹¹⁶ ¹¹⁷ ¹¹⁸ ¹¹⁹ ¹²⁰ ¹²¹ ¹²² ¹²³ ¹²⁴ ¹²⁵ ¹²⁶ ¹²⁷ ¹²⁸ ¹²⁹ ¹³⁰ ¹³¹ ¹³² ¹³³ ¹³⁴ ¹³⁵ ¹³⁶ ¹³⁷ ¹³⁸ ¹³⁹ ¹⁴⁰ ¹⁴¹ ¹⁴² ¹⁴³ ¹⁴⁴ ¹⁴⁵ ¹⁴⁶ ¹⁴⁷ ¹⁴⁸ ¹⁴⁹ ¹⁵⁰ ¹⁵¹ ¹⁵² ¹⁵³ ¹⁵⁴ ¹⁵⁵ ¹⁵⁶ ¹⁵⁷ ¹⁵⁸ ¹⁵⁹ ¹⁶⁰ ¹⁶¹ ¹⁶² ¹⁶³ ¹⁶⁴ ¹⁶⁵ ¹⁶⁶ ¹⁶⁷ ¹⁶⁸ ¹⁶⁹ ¹⁷⁰ ¹⁷¹ ¹⁷² ¹⁷³ ¹⁷⁴ ¹⁷⁵ ¹⁷⁶ ¹⁷⁷ ¹⁷⁸ ¹⁷⁹ ¹⁸⁰ ¹⁸¹ ¹⁸² ¹⁸³ ¹⁸⁴ ¹⁸⁵ ¹⁸⁶ ¹⁸⁷ ¹⁸⁸ ¹⁸⁹ ¹⁹⁰ ¹⁹¹ ¹⁹² ¹⁹³ ¹⁹⁴ ¹⁹⁵ ¹⁹⁶ ¹⁹⁷ ¹⁹⁸ ¹⁹⁹ ²⁰⁰ ²⁰¹ ²⁰² ²⁰³ ²⁰⁴ ²⁰⁵ ²⁰⁶ ²⁰⁷ ²⁰⁸ ²⁰⁹ ²¹⁰ ²¹¹ ²¹² ²¹³ ²¹⁴ ²¹⁵ ²¹⁶ ²¹⁷ ²¹⁸ ²¹⁹ ²²⁰ ²²¹ ²²² ²²³ ²²⁴ ²²⁵ ²²⁶ ²²⁷ ²²⁸ ²²⁹ ²³⁰ ²³¹ ²³² ²³³ ²³⁴ ²³⁵ ²³⁶ ²³⁷ ²³⁸ ²³⁹ ²⁴⁰ ²⁴¹ ²⁴² ²⁴³ ²⁴⁴ ²⁴⁵ ²⁴⁶ ²⁴⁷ ²⁴⁸ ²⁴⁹ ²⁵⁰ ²⁵¹ ²⁵² ²⁵³ ²⁵⁴ ²⁵⁵ ²⁵⁶ ²⁵⁷ ²⁵⁸ ²⁵⁹ ²⁶⁰ ²⁶¹ ²⁶² ²⁶³ ²⁶⁴ ²⁶⁵ ²⁶⁶ ²⁶⁷ ²⁶⁸ ²⁶⁹ ²⁷⁰ ²⁷¹ ²⁷² ²⁷³ ²⁷⁴ ²⁷⁵ ²⁷⁶ ²⁷⁷ ²⁷⁸ ²⁷⁹ ²⁸⁰ ²⁸¹ ²⁸² ²⁸³ ²⁸⁴ ²⁸⁵ ²⁸⁶ ²⁸⁷ ²⁸⁸ ²⁸⁹ ²⁹⁰ ²⁹¹ ²⁹² ²⁹³ ²⁹⁴ ²⁹⁵ ²⁹⁶ ²⁹⁷ ²⁹⁸ ²⁹⁹ ³⁰⁰ ³⁰¹ ³⁰² ³⁰³ ³⁰⁴ ³⁰⁵ ³⁰⁶ ³⁰⁷ ³⁰⁸ ³⁰⁹ ³¹⁰ ³¹¹ ³¹² ³¹³ ³¹⁴ ³¹⁵ ³¹⁶ ³¹⁷ ³¹⁸ ³¹⁹ ³²⁰ ³²¹ ³²² ³²³ ³²⁴ ³²⁵ ³²⁶ ³²⁷ ³²⁸ ³²⁹ ³³⁰ ³³¹ ³³² ³³³ ³³⁴ ³³⁵ ³³⁶ ³³⁷ ³³⁸ ³³⁹ ³⁴⁰ ³⁴¹ ³⁴² ³⁴³ ³⁴⁴ ³⁴⁵ ³⁴⁶ ³⁴⁷ ³⁴⁸ ³⁴⁹ ³⁵⁰ ³⁵¹ ³⁵² ³⁵³ ³⁵⁴ ³⁵⁵ ³⁵⁶ ³⁵⁷ ³⁵⁸ ³⁵⁹ ³⁶⁰ ³⁶¹ ³⁶² ³⁶³ ³⁶⁴ ³⁶⁵ ³⁶⁶ ³⁶⁷ ³⁶⁸ ³⁶⁹ ³⁷⁰ ³⁷¹ ³⁷² ³⁷³ ³⁷⁴ ³⁷⁵ ³⁷⁶ ³⁷⁷ ³⁷⁸ ³⁷⁹ ³⁸⁰ ³⁸¹ ³⁸² ³⁸³ ³⁸⁴ ³⁸⁵ ³⁸⁶ ³⁸⁷ ³⁸⁸ ³⁸⁹ ³⁹⁰ ³⁹¹ ³⁹² ³⁹³ ³⁹⁴ ³⁹⁵ ³⁹⁶ ³⁹⁷ ³⁹⁸ ³⁹⁹ ⁴⁰⁰ ⁴⁰¹ ⁴⁰² ⁴⁰³ ⁴⁰⁴ ⁴⁰⁵ ⁴⁰⁶ ⁴⁰⁷ ⁴⁰⁸ ⁴⁰⁹ ⁴¹⁰ ⁴¹¹ ⁴¹² ⁴¹³ ⁴¹⁴ ⁴¹⁵ ⁴¹⁶ ⁴¹⁷ ⁴¹⁸ ⁴¹⁹ ⁴²⁰ ⁴²¹ ⁴²² ⁴²³ ⁴²⁴ ⁴²⁵ ⁴²⁶ ⁴²⁷ ⁴²⁸ ⁴²⁹ ⁴³⁰ ⁴³¹ ⁴³² ⁴³³ ⁴³⁴ ⁴³⁵ ⁴³⁶ ⁴³⁷ ⁴³⁸ ⁴³⁹ ⁴⁴⁰ ⁴⁴¹ ⁴⁴² ⁴⁴³ ⁴⁴⁴ ⁴⁴⁵ ⁴⁴⁶ ⁴⁴⁷ ⁴⁴⁸ ⁴⁴⁹ ⁴⁵⁰ ⁴⁵¹ ⁴⁵² ⁴⁵³ ⁴⁵⁴ ⁴⁵⁵ ⁴⁵⁶ ⁴⁵⁷ ⁴⁵⁸ ⁴⁵⁹ ⁴⁶⁰ ⁴⁶¹ ⁴⁶² ⁴⁶³ ⁴⁶⁴ ⁴⁶⁵ ⁴⁶⁶ ⁴⁶⁷ ⁴⁶⁸ ⁴⁶⁹ ⁴⁷⁰ ⁴⁷¹ ⁴⁷² ⁴⁷³ ⁴⁷⁴ ⁴⁷⁵ ⁴⁷⁶ ⁴⁷⁷ ⁴⁷⁸ ⁴⁷⁹ ⁴⁸⁰ ⁴⁸¹ ⁴⁸² ⁴⁸³ ⁴⁸⁴ ⁴⁸⁵ ⁴⁸⁶ ⁴⁸⁷ ⁴⁸⁸ ⁴⁸⁹ ⁴⁹⁰ ⁴⁹¹ ⁴⁹² ⁴⁹³ ⁴⁹⁴ ⁴⁹⁵ ⁴⁹⁶ ⁴⁹⁷ ⁴⁹⁸ ⁴⁹⁹ ⁵⁰⁰ ⁵⁰¹ ⁵⁰² ⁵⁰³ ⁵⁰⁴ ⁵⁰⁵ ⁵⁰⁶ ⁵⁰⁷ ⁵⁰⁸ ⁵⁰⁹ ⁵¹⁰ ⁵¹¹ ⁵¹² ⁵¹³ ⁵¹⁴ ⁵¹⁵ ⁵¹⁶ ⁵¹⁷ ⁵¹⁸ ⁵¹⁹ ⁵²⁰ ⁵²¹ ⁵²² ⁵²³ ⁵²⁴ ⁵²⁵ ⁵²⁶ ⁵²⁷ ⁵²⁸ ⁵²⁹ ⁵³⁰ ⁵³¹ ⁵³² ⁵³³ ⁵³⁴ ⁵³⁵ ⁵³⁶ ⁵³⁷ ⁵³⁸ ⁵³⁹ ⁵⁴⁰ ⁵⁴¹ ⁵⁴² ⁵⁴³ ⁵⁴⁴ ⁵⁴⁵ ⁵⁴⁶ ⁵⁴⁷ ⁵⁴⁸ ⁵⁴⁹ ⁵⁵⁰ ⁵⁵¹ ⁵⁵² ⁵⁵³ ⁵⁵⁴ ⁵⁵⁵ ⁵⁵⁶ ⁵⁵⁷ ⁵⁵⁸ ⁵⁵⁹ ⁵⁶⁰ ⁵⁶¹ ⁵⁶² ⁵⁶³ ⁵⁶⁴ ⁵⁶⁵ ⁵⁶⁶ ⁵⁶⁷ ⁵⁶⁸ ⁵⁶⁹ ⁵⁷⁰ ⁵⁷¹ ⁵⁷² ⁵⁷³ ⁵⁷⁴ ⁵⁷⁵ ⁵⁷⁶ ⁵⁷⁷ ⁵⁷⁸ ⁵⁷⁹ ⁵⁸⁰ ⁵⁸¹ ⁵⁸² ⁵⁸³ ⁵⁸⁴ ⁵⁸⁵ ⁵⁸⁶ ⁵⁸⁷ ⁵⁸⁸ ⁵⁸⁹ ⁵⁹⁰ ⁵⁹¹ ⁵⁹² ⁵⁹³ ⁵⁹⁴ ⁵⁹⁵ ⁵⁹⁶ ⁵⁹⁷ ⁵⁹⁸ ⁵⁹⁹ ⁶⁰⁰ ⁶⁰¹ ⁶⁰² ⁶⁰³ ⁶⁰⁴ ⁶⁰⁵ ⁶⁰⁶ ⁶⁰⁷ ⁶⁰⁸ ⁶⁰⁹ ⁶¹⁰ ⁶¹¹ ⁶¹² ⁶¹³ ⁶¹⁴ ⁶¹⁵ ⁶¹⁶ ⁶¹⁷ ⁶¹⁸ ⁶¹⁹ ⁶²⁰ ⁶²¹ ⁶²² ⁶²³ ⁶²⁴ ⁶²⁵ ⁶²⁶ ⁶²⁷ ⁶²⁸ ⁶²⁹ ⁶³⁰ ⁶³¹ ⁶³² ⁶³³ ⁶³⁴ ⁶³⁵ ⁶³⁶ ⁶³⁷ ⁶³⁸ ⁶³⁹ ⁶⁴⁰ ⁶⁴¹ ⁶⁴² ⁶⁴³ ⁶⁴⁴ ⁶⁴⁵ ⁶⁴⁶ ⁶⁴⁷ ⁶⁴⁸ ⁶⁴⁹ ⁶⁵⁰ ⁶⁵¹ ⁶⁵² ⁶⁵³ ⁶⁵⁴ ⁶⁵⁵ ⁶⁵⁶ ⁶⁵⁷ ⁶⁵⁸ ⁶⁵⁹ ⁶⁶⁰ ⁶⁶¹ ⁶⁶² ⁶⁶³ ⁶⁶⁴ ⁶⁶⁵ ⁶⁶⁶ ⁶⁶⁷ ⁶⁶⁸ ⁶⁶⁹ ⁶⁷⁰ ⁶⁷¹ ⁶⁷² ⁶⁷³ ⁶⁷⁴ ⁶⁷⁵ ⁶⁷⁶ ⁶⁷⁷ ⁶⁷⁸ ⁶⁷⁹ ⁶⁸⁰ ⁶⁸¹ ⁶⁸² ⁶⁸³ ⁶⁸⁴ ⁶⁸⁵ ⁶⁸⁶ ⁶⁸⁷ ⁶⁸⁸ ⁶⁸⁹ ⁶⁹⁰ ⁶⁹¹ ⁶⁹² ⁶⁹³ ⁶⁹⁴ ⁶⁹⁵ ⁶⁹⁶ ⁶⁹⁷ ⁶⁹⁸ ⁶⁹⁹ ⁷⁰⁰ ⁷⁰¹ ⁷⁰² ⁷⁰³ ⁷⁰⁴ ⁷⁰⁵ ⁷⁰⁶ ⁷⁰⁷ ⁷⁰⁸ ⁷⁰⁹ ⁷¹⁰ ⁷¹¹ ⁷¹² ⁷¹³ ⁷¹⁴ ⁷¹⁵ ⁷¹⁶ ⁷¹⁷ ⁷¹⁸ ⁷¹⁹ ⁷²⁰ ⁷²¹ ⁷²² ⁷²³ ⁷²⁴ ⁷²⁵ ⁷²⁶ ⁷²⁷ ⁷²⁸ ⁷²⁹ ⁷³⁰ ⁷³¹ ⁷³² ⁷³³ ⁷³⁴ ⁷³⁵ ⁷³⁶ ⁷³⁷ ⁷³⁸ ⁷³⁹ ⁷⁴⁰ ⁷⁴¹ ⁷⁴² ⁷⁴³ ⁷⁴⁴ ^{745</sup}

destroyed. Concerning the cause of his anger, two separate traditions are recorded in history.

Cause of the Extirpation of the Barmecides.

When Hárúnu'r-Rashíd, wishing to be able to enjoy the society of his sister 'Abbása and Ja'far the Barmecide at the same time, married them to one another on the condition that this marriage was to be a marriage in name only, 'Abbása was unable to control her love for Ja'far, and wrote to him:

عُزِّزْتَ عَلَى قَلْبِي بِنِ يَتَّهِ الْبَعْضِ فَصَنَعَ وَنَادَى أَنِّي غَيْرُ فَاعِلٍ
فَرَأَى وَنَالَ أَنْتَ بِنَخْبَ عَنْوَةَ وَإِنْ عَنْقَتْنِي فِي شَوَّالِ عَوَادِلِي
وَإِنْ حَانَ مَوْتِي لَمْ أَنْعَدْ بِغَصْنِي وَأَفْرَرْتَ قَبْلَ الْمَوْتِ أَنَّكَ قَاتِلِي

So Ja'far, fearing to offend 'Abbása, gave her the love she sought, and the result of this union was a child whom they called Haml 'A'isha. It is related on the authority of Nawfalí that in A. H. 180 (= A. H. 796-7) Hárúnu'r-Rashíd went on the pilgrimage, and received tidings of this event on the journey, but made no sign of pleasure or displeasure, until he returned and reached Buhayra, where he embarked in a skiff with Ja'far to go fishing. On his return from this expedition he proceeded to Ambár, where he said to Ja'far, "Today I shall be with my *haram*, and I give you permission to go to your family and amuse yourself as you will." All day Hárún kept sending him presents, until, when the time of evening prayer was at hand, the blind minstrel Abú Rakáz sang these verses:

فَلَا تَبْعَدْ فَنِيلَ فَتَّى سَيَّانِي عَلَيْهِ الْمَوْتُ يَعْرُفُ أَوْ يُغَادِي
وَنَلَّ فَخِيمَرَةَ لَا بُدَّ يَوْمَا وَإِنْ بَقِيَتْ تَصِيرُ إِلَيْيِ نَفَادَ
فَلَوْ فُودِيَتْ بِنْ حَدَّثِ الْمَنَائِيَا فَدَيْتُكَ بِالْتَّلِيدِ^١ وَبِالْتَّلَادِ

بالطَّرِيفِ. C.

Ja'far said to Abú Rakáz, "What song is this to sing before men?" He replied, "O my master, however much I strive, I can think of no other verses." While they were thus conversing, suddenly Masrúr the executioner entered without seeking permission, for the Caliph had sent him to cut off Ja'far's head and bring it to him. When Ja'far saw him, he sprang to his feet and cried, "O Abú Háshim, I rejoice that thou art come to me, but am sorry that thou didst enter without seeking permission." "I am come," said Masrúr, "on a weighty errand: submit thyself to the command of the Prince of Believers." Ja'far fell at his feet, saying, "Suffer me to go into the house and perform my ablutions." "It is out of the question," replied Masrúr, "that you should go to the house, but make such testamentary dispositions as you please." So Ja'far set free his slaves and made his will and performed his ablutions; and then Masrúr mounted him on a horse and brought him to the prison. Ja'far then conjured him to go and tell the Caliph that he had brought him thither, that perhaps he might repent. To this Masrúr consented; but no sooner did Hárúnu'r-Rashíd hear his advancing footsteps than he called out to him, "Stop there! For if thou comest hither without the head of Ja'far, thine own head shall be forfeit!" So Masrúr turned back and cut off Ja'far's head, and brought it on a shield to the Caliph, who at once ordered Yahyá b. Khálid and Faḍl to be cast into prison, and the body of Ja'far to be hanged on the bridge at Anbar. But afterwards Hárún was sorry for what he had done, and wandered through the palace reciting these verses:

يَا مَنْ تَبَشَّرَتْ أَقْبَرْ بِمَوْتِهِ قَعَدَ الْزَّمَانُ بِسَبِّهِ فَرَمَّا
حَلَّ أَبَدَهُ فَنَالَ بَعْدَكَ حَزَنَهُ لَوْ يَسْتَطِعَ بِمُلْهَدِهِ لَفَدَّا
أَيْغَى الْأَنْبَسَ فَلَا أَرَى نَبِيًّا مُؤْمِنًا لَا أَشْرَدَ حَيْثَ لَنَّتْ أَرَادَا

The other account, given by al-Asma'ī in his *Kitābu 'n-Nawādir*, on the authority of Abū 'Abdīllah (f. 94b) al-Hasan b. 'Alī b. Hishám, is as follows. "When al-Ma'mún succeeded to the Caliphate," says the narrator, "I enquired of Faḍl b. Rabi', who was Hárūnūr-Rashíd's chief chamberlain, 'Was this matter of 'Abbásá the only cause of the slaughter of the Barmecides, or had they committed any other fault?' Faḍl b. Rabi' smiled and said: علی لَبِيْر بْنِ سَقْنَتْ ('Thou hast fallen on him who is best acquainted with it'). This Faḍl was unequalled in understanding, and from him Hárūnūr-Rashíd had no secrets. It is related that when al-Ma'mún obtained possession of Baghdad, Faḍl was brought before him as a prisoner, with his hands bound behind him. Al-Ma'mún looked at him to see whether he would say anything, or apologize, or crave forgiveness; but he did not raise his eyes from the ground and maintained complete silence. "Was it in such wise," at length exclaimed al-Ma'mún, "that thou didst order the affairs of two Caliphs?" "O Prince of Believers," replied Faḍl, "my tongue spoke to grant requests, not to crave them." So al-Ma'mún, being pleased with his answer, forgave him, and ordered him to be escorted to his house with candles and lanterns. But he said, "O Prince of Believers, suffer me rather to go lighted by the light of thine approval!" Later, when he was sick, al-Ma'mún sent a messenger to enquire after his health, and to say, "I am well pleased with thee, therefore ask me what thou wilt." He replied, "I stand more in need of God's good pleasure than of thine, and more in need of health than of thy abundant possessions."

Now according to this Faḍl, the cause of Hárūn's anger against the Barmecides was that he had entrusted to Ja'far a son of Yahyá b. Zayd to keep him in safe custody. One day while drinking wine he said to Ja'far, "Go, and bring the lad hither." "Why dost thou want him at such a time?"

enquired Ja'far. Then Hárūn cried out at him in anger, and he arose and brought in the Sayyid. Hárūn caused him to be seated, and then said to him, "O cousin, knowest thou wherefore I have sent for thee?" "The Prince of Believers knoweth best," replied the other. "You pretend," said Hárūnūr-Rashíd, "that you are more worthy than we of this office, being more closely (f. 95a) and particularly related to the Prophet. Now you must have some proof for this pretension, and this you must make known to me." "God forbid!" replied the son of Yahyá: "we have never said and will never say such a thing as this!" "Thou liest!" answered Hárūn: "you have advanced such claims, and tonight you must needs substantiate them." So the Sayyid continued to deny and the Caliph, with drunken insistence, to assert, until the latter had finally work himself up into a rage. Then Ja'far intervened and said to the son of Yahyá, "The Prince of Believers is holding a scientific discussion with you, and questions you with such courtesy and kindness; why then do you decline to discuss the matter, or to answer him?" "If I should answer," replied the Sayyid, "who will guarantee my safety?" Then the Caliph wrote him an assurance of safety in his own hand, swearing that he would neither slay, not hang, not poison him; and placed this document in his hands. "Now," said the Sayyid, "what dost thou ask of me?" "The proof," said Hárūnūr-Rashíd, "that you are worthier than we are." "We are more worthy," replied the Sayyid, "as being nearer of kin." "Nay," said the Caliph, "we are in this respect equal." "Not so," answered the Sayyid. "By what proof?" demanded the Caliph. "If Muhammad the Apostle of God were alive," said the Sayyid, "and should seek alliance with thee through a sister or a daughter, wouldst thou consent or not?" "Yes," answered Hárūn, "why should I not accept so worthy an alliance?" "I would not," re-

joined the Sayyid, "and it would be improper for me to do so." Hárún was silent for a while, and then made a sign to Ja'far to remove the Sayyid, which he did. Some while afterwards the Caliph summoned Ja'far and said, "I am going to entrust you with a commission in which you must by no means fail me." "It is for the Prince of Believers to command," replied Ja'far. "Place thy hand on my head," said the Caliph, "and swear to accomplish my behest." When Ja'far had done this, Hárún said, "I gave the son of Yahyá an assurance of safety against steel and poison and strangling, but not against burial. You must therefore dig a deep pit, exceeding fifty yards in depth, and must cast him into that pit alive." So Ja'far went, dismissed the guardians [of the Sayyid] and caused a deep pit to be dug (f. 95b), into which he cast not the Sayyid but a sheep. Then he explained to the Sayyid the state of the case, and bade him flee beyond the Caliph's realms. So he fled in disguise to Khurásán, but was recognized in the market of Balkh by a certain officer of the postal service named al-Mas'údí, who performed the journey thence to Baghdad in thirty days, and informed the Caliph of what he had seen. So the Caliph wrote to 'Alí b. 'Isá, who was governor of Balkh, bidding him seek out the Sayyid, who, however, had meanwhile made his escape into Turkistán. Then the Caliph sent an ambassador to the Kháqán of Turkistán, bidding him surrender up the Sayyid. The Kháqán answered, "We know not this man: send some one who can recognize him, and we will hand him over to you." So Hárún sent another messenger who knew the Sayyid, and all the Sayyids who were in that country were assembled in his presence; and when his eye lighted on the son of Yahyá, he said, "This is the man." But when he brought him to the Kháqán, the latter bade the Sayyid sit down beside him, and said to the messenger, "I also was seeking

for him, my object being to protect him from all the world. Arise, and depart in peace." So the ambassador returned in despair, and told the Caliph what had passed. Then the Caliph determined to avenge himself on Ja'far. Now it was his custom to visit his sister 'Abbása every Tuesday, and on these occasions he would neither see anyone nor receive any letter or petition. "One Tuesday," says the narrator, "when I was alone with him, he bade me be seated, and said, 'I am going to tell you a secret which you must on no account divulge.' On my promising secrecy, he continued, 'I am going to destroy Ja'far.' At this juncture Ja'far himself entered. I arose and went to meet him. The Caliph caused him to sit down beside him, till, when they had discussed various topics, he arose (f. 96a) and went to the house of 'Abbása, while I remained with Ja'far. 'What were you and the Caliph talking about when I came in?' said he. 'He was instructing me,' I replied, 'how to deal with a certain rebel in Khurásán. 'O Faḍl,' he answered, 'by God, thou liest; you were talking about me, and no good either, for when thine eyes fell on me the colour left thy face.' 'God forbid!' said I, 'how should the Caliph speak to me of thee, seeing the position that thou holdest before him?' But Ja'far persisted in his surmise, and I was afraid lest the Caliph should think I had given him a hint of what had been confided to me. When he went to his house, I arose and went to the house of 'Abbása, where I demanded an audience. I was bidden to put in writing what I had to say, but, having declared that it could only be imparted by word of moath, was at length admitted and brought before the Caliph. I bowed my head to the ground and said, 'O Prince of Believers, mercy, mercy! Thou hast cast me into destruction!' 'Why, what ails thee?' he enquired: 'tell me quickly.' Then I told him what had passed, and he said, 'Have no anxiety on

this score, for I have long known Ja'far's acumen and discernment. Yesterday I was with him in the garden, and there was no one with us; and I was looking at the roses, when I saw one which pleased me more than all the others. At once Ja'far stretched out his hand and gave it to me. Then he fell on his face before me, and when he raised his head from the ground I was smiling. "Wherefore," he enquired, "does the Prince of Believers smile?" I answered, "At your being able to tell which rose out of all these pleased me most." "By God," he replied, "that was not the reason, for you have often before proved my discernment. It was rather because, when I prostrated myself before you, your glance fell on my neck." "And by God," added the Caliph, he spoke truly; for, as I looked at his neck, I said to myself, "How shall I order it to be cut with the sword?" and as I thought thus, I smiled.' Three days later the affair of the Barmecides was finished."

After this Jahdām b. Khabāb was sent (f. 96b) as governor to Ṭabaristān, and after him Khalīfa b. Sa'īd b. Hārūn al-Jawhārī, who, on reaching Amul, appointed as his deputy Mihrūya of Ray, who took up his abode at Gurgān.

Account of the King of the Mountains the Ispahbad Sharwīn Bāwand and Wandād Hurmuzd.

These were in alliance with one another, so that from Tammīsha to Rūyān without their permission no one dared enter the highlands from the plains, and all the highlands were under their control. And when a Muslim died, they wold not suffer him to be buried in their country. So matters continued until Khalīfa b. Sa'īd came to Sārī, and wished to make his cousin Nāfi' his deputy; and the Ispahbad Sharwīn's men came down by night out of the hills and slew him. Khalīfa remained at Sārī and wrote to Mihrūya at Amul bidding him be on his guard, as the people of Ṭabaristān were ripe for revolt. This letter Mihrūya read in public to the people, adding reproaches to the soldiers, who attacked his palace that night, slew him, cut off his head, and cast his mutilated corpse, with circumstances of atrocious dishonour, into the cross-roads of the market-place as a warning to all. So news was brought to the Caliph that the people of Ṭabaristān had revolted, but had not robbed the treasury; and he said, "It is not a revolt against us; this was an unjust governor, and it is quite right to suppress injustice." Then he sent 'Abdu'llāh b. Sa'īd al-Jarīshī, and all the people went out to meet him, and brought him in with honour. He governed the country for four months, and succeeded in arresting four persons who were chiefly responsible for Mihrūya's death and the disturbance which accompanied it, and sent them to the Caliph, who inflicted punishment upon them.

In A.H. 187 (= A.D. 803) Ja'far b. Hārūn (f. 97a) was sent to reorganize the land-tax and to survey the country in the territory occupied by Wandāsafān, who slew him with a blow from his mace while he was thus employed. Forty men who were with him fled to 'Abdu'llāh and informed him of what had happened, and he communicated the matter to the Caliph. Immediately after this it was rumoured that the Caliph had advanced into 'Irāq; and three days later 'Abdu'llāh went to Sārī, whence he proceeded to Ray, where the Caliph was. The Caliph thereupon despatched the Qādī Abu'l-Buhturī, 'Abbas b. Zafr, Muḥammad b. al-Faḍl, and Sāliḥ b. Shaykh 'Umayra, with 300 horsemen and servants, to the Ispahbad Sharwīn and Wandād Hurmuzd to ascertain whether or no their loyalty could be relied on. They received this embassy with every mark of respect and friendship, and the ambassadors on their returned reported that what Wandāsafān had done, he had done enti-

rely on his own responsibility, without their knowledge or approval; and that he was, in fact, the enemy and opponent of Wandád Hurmuzd. Thereupon the Caliph left Ray, and encamped one day's march therefrom, at the village of Arbanú, whence he wrote to the Ispahbad Sharwín and Wandád Hurmuzd, bidding them come to him. They answered that they were his obedient and loyal vassals, but that before coming they must have hostages for his good faith. The Caliph was angered at this and said, "How shall I sent Muslim hostages to *Gabrs*?" So he sent the Qádí Abu'l-Buhturí and Harthama b. A'yan and Abu'l-Waqdáh the post-master to them, bidding them either come before the Caliph or prepare for war. These advanced to Wíma, whence they sent messages to the Ispahbad Sharwín, who was at the Castle of Kúzá, and Wandád Hurmuzd, who was at Lafúr, bidding them come to them. Wandád Hurmuzd came, but the Ispahbad Sharwín sent excuses, saying that he was too ill to come. When the bearer of this message arrived, Wandád Hurmuzd said to the Caliph's ambassadors, "Whatever order you may issue in respect to the Ispahbad Sharwín, I am ready to obey it (f. 97b). Harthama b. A'yan agreed with Na'ím b. Házim that they should smite Wandád Hurmuzd unawares while they were marching together, and slay him, since the Caliph would certainly be pleased at his death. But Wandád Hurmuzd, seeing Na'ím edging towards him, divined his intention, reined in his horse, and said, "You must hold to your agreement." His companions apologized, and made Na'ím swear that Wandád Hurmuzd should be conducted in safety before the Caliph. He remained with the Caliph for some time, till Hárúnú'r-Rashíd desired to buy some lands from him, which he refused to sell. They explained that his nobility of nature made him unwilling to sell lands which he might be willing to give as a present, so Hárún sent his little son al-Ma'mún to

him; and when they had seated the child on his knee, Wandád Hurmuzd gave him all those lands which he had previously refused to sell; and Hárún presented him with a million *dirhams*, and a jewelled cup of priceless value, and a ring, with which last Wandád Hurmuzd was especially delighted. Then the Caliph bade him crave a boon, and he asked for the dismissal of 'Abdu'lláh b. Sa'íd; and Hárún dismissed him with a robe of honour, and sent Harthama with him to bring back his son Qárin and the Ispahbad Sharwín's son Shahriyár as hostages. The former was entrusted to Harthama, but the Ispahbad Sharwín refused to give up his son Shahriyár, and sent another instead of him. But Harthama insisted that Shahriyár should be given up, and this decision was endorsed by the Caliph, so that the Ispahbad was compelled to surrender Shahriyár, whom Hárúnú'r-Rashíd took back with him to Baghdad.

Then the Caliph sent 'Abdu'lláh b. Málík as governor to Ṭabaristán, and ordered that all the country except the highlands should be taken from the control of the Ispahbad Sharwín (f. 98a) and Wandád Hurmuzd. A year later the Caliph again visited Ray on his way to Khurásán. There he fell sick, and sent Shahriyár and Qárin to their respective fathers, while he marched on to Tús, and there died and was buried.

On this war arose between Hárún's two sons Muhammad b. Zubayda, called *al-Makhlú'* ("the Deposed") and 'Abdu'lláh al-Ma'mún; and Táhir b. al-Husayn, al-Ma'mún's general, marched on Baghdad, took it, and slew the rival Caliph, and sent his head to his brother al-Ma'mún, who looked on it and said:

شَفِيتَ النَّفْسَ مَنْ حَلَّ بِنَ بَدْرٍ

So 'Abdu'lláh al-Ma'mún became Caliph, and he was the greatest and most illustrious of all the 'Abbásid Caliphs, and openly shewed his attachment to the Shí'ite cause. It is related

that Sindí b. Sháhak, whose tomb is at Sári in the place now called Bá Naṣrí Mashhad, and other Shi'ite leaders and partisans of the Imám Ridá reproached al-Ma'mún for his conduct towards the Imám. Al-Ma'mún said, "I learned the Shi'ite faith from my father Hárunu'r Rashíd." They replied, "He used to kill the members of this house." "Yes," replied al-Ma'mún, "he killed them for political reasons, 'for the state is a barren mother'" (لَنْ أَمْلَكَ عَقِيمَ). And in like manner did al-Ma'mún himself act in compassing the death of the Imám 'Alí Ridá for state reasons, preferring the transitory glory of this world to everlasting blessedness and felicity (f. 98b). And through the deed he did was done 400 years ago, men still reproach it in these verses:

بَوْلَقْتُ أَرْضَ مِنْ بَعْدِ بَيْعَتِهِ وَأَبْصَرْتُ بَعْضَ يَوْمِ رُشْدَفْمَ وَعَمَوا
لَا يَفْقَنُ بَنَى أَعْبَاسَ مُلْكَتِهِمْ بَنَوا عَلَىٰ مَوَانِيْهِمْ وَانْ زَعَمُوا
لَا بَيْعَةَ رَتَعْتَهُمْ عَنْ دِسْتِهِمْ وَلَا يَمِينَ وَلَا قُرْبَىٰ وَلَا نَمْ
كَمْ غَدَرَةٌ لَكُمْ فِي الدِّينِ وَاضْحَةٌ وَكَمْ دِمْ لِرَسُولِ اللَّهِ عِنْدَكُمْ

Of such as these God says: "Those who violate the Covenant of God after its confirmation, and sever what God hath commanded to be joined, and do evil in the earth: these are the losers."

After having thus rid himself of the Imám 'Alí Ridá, al-Ma'mún sent for his son, whom the Shi'ites call Muḥammad Taqí, and the Arabs Muḥammad al-Jawád, and gave him his daughter Ummu'l-Faḍl in marriage, and made such a marriage-feast as the world hath never seen, for there were displayed as his gift to the bridegroom 400 plates filled with balls of ambergris in each of which was a pearl. And he then sent Muḥammad Taqí and his bride to al-Madína. And in the reign of al-Ma'mún died both the Ispahbad Sharwín and Wandád Hurmuzd.

Account of the deaths of Sharwín and Wandád
Hurmuzd, and the reigns of their sons
Shahriyár and Qárin.

Sharwín left two sons, of whom Shahriyár, the ancestor of the Báwánd princes, succeeded him, while Wandád Hurmuzd was succeeded by his son Qárin. When news of this reached al-Ma'mún, he sent to them (f. 99a) an ambassador with robes of honour, and wrote to inform them that he contemplated a campaign against the Byzantines, and needed the help of them and their captains. On one pretext and another they detained the ambassador for many days, until the Caliph had started on his campaign, when they dismissed him with many presents, saying, "The Ispahbad Shahriyár can in no wise come, but Qárin will follow you immediately." So Qárin made preparations for the expedition, aided therein by Shahriyár, and on reaching Byzantine territory pitched his camp beside that of the Caliph. It happened that on that very day there had been a battle, wherein the champions of either side had contended with one another on the field. Qárin at once caused his horse's armour to be put on, armed himself with a Giláni shield inlaid with gold, and with his followers attacked the Byzantine army, and utterly routed them. Al-Ma'mún was watching them, and kept enquiring of those who stood round who these valiant warriors might be, and who was their leader with the golden shield. None could tell him, but they continued to send re-inforcements to their strange allies, until Qárin ordered a general attack on the centre of the Byzantine army, broke down their standard with his mace, and entirely routed the foe. Summoned before the Caliph, he advanced clad in his breastplate and quilted armour (*gazz-ágand*), alighted from his horse, and kissed the Caliph's stirrup. Then the Caliph recognized him, and be-

stowed on him a horse, and praised him greatly, conferring on him robes of honour and other tokens of his esteem. He kept him for some while in his service, and repeatedly urged him to embrace Islám so that they might confer on him the title of *Mawla Amiri'l-Múminin* ("Client of the Prince of Believers") and make him governor of Ṭabaristán, but he refused, and was at length suffered to return to his country. But the Ispahbad Shahriyár was jealous of him and hated him, and, being the stronger, annexed many of his lands, to which acts of aggression he submitted. One night he dreamed that he made water on the summit of a lofty mountain, and from this water a fire came forth, and spread itself in every direction, and burned up the highlands, until it reached the plain, burning every tree on which it alighted. When he awoke, he summoned those skilled in the interpretation of dreams, and asked them its meaning. They answered, "From thy loins a son shall arise who will be king over both the mountains and the plains of Ṭabaristán, and who will be cruel and fierce and reckless." This dream and its interpretation became known through Ṭabaristán, and that very year was born his son Mázyár, and when he reached maturity his father Qárin died.

Then the Ispahbad Shahriyár b. Sharwín coveted Mázyár's territory, and seized every occasion to vex and harrass him, until at length a battle was fought between them, Mázyár was defeated, and Shahriyár annexed his territories. Mázyár sought refuge with Wandá-ummíd the son of Wandásafán, but Shahriyár demanded his surrender, and Wandá-ummíd, not daring to resist his command, put Mázyár in chains, and sent a message to Shahriyár, bidding him send his men to take him into custody, since he feared that his own people might set him free. Meanwhile Mázyár succeeded in ingratiating himself with the wives of his gaolers, and by their means obtained his freedom, and fled to the forests, where

he lay in hiding until he was able to go to 'Iráq (f. 100a). There he fell in with 'Abdu'lláh b. Sa'íd al-Jurayshí, one of the Caliph's *Amírs*, who received him with kindness, and brought him with him to Baghdad. Now al-Ma'mún had an astrologer named Bizist the son of Fírúzán, whose name the Caliph had arabicized into Yaḥyá b. [Abí] Mansúr, and who has been already mentioned in the Preface of this book. One day Mázyár, carrying the table of his nativity in his sleeve, came to this astrologer, who at first paid no heed to him, until he heard him addressed as Prince of Ṭabaristán, Mázyár son of Qárin son of Wandád-Hurmuzd. When the astrologer heard this, he arose and offered his apologies for his neglect, and took the table of his nativity from him, and kissed it, and then began to examine it attentively. Then he turned all save Mázyár out of the room and said to Mázyár, "If I instruct thee, wilt thou shew thy gratitude for my help?" So Mázyár promised, confirming his promise with oaths. After some time the astrologer made known what he had discovered from the horoscope to al-Ma'mún, who summoned him into his presence and said: "The signal services rendered to me in the war with the Byzantines by thy father Qárin impel me to befriend thee, but this must depend on thine acceptance of Islám and utterance of the Muhammadan profession of faith." So Mázyár accepted Islám, and al-Ma'mún gave him the title of *Mawla Amiri'l-Múminin* and the *kunya* of Abu'l-Hasan.

Some months after this the Ispahbad Shahriyár died in Ṭabaristán, leaving many sons, amongst whom were Qárin b. Shahriyár b. Sharwín, called Abu'l-Mulük ("the Father of kings"), and his elder brother Shápur, who succeeded to the throne. But his vehemence and tyranny (f. 100b) disgusted his subjects, so that they deserted him, and complained of him to al-Ma'mún, who ordered Muḥammad b. Khalid to deprive him of his highland possessions. But this Muḥam-

mad b. Khálid was not strong enough to do, and al-Ma'mún sought for some one else who would be able to crush Shápúr. The astrologer Bizíst happened to be present, and suggested Mázyár, remarking that his horoscope indicated him as likely to be successful in this enterprise. So al-Ma'mún sent him to subdue the highlands, and Músá b. Hafṣ to over-run the plains. The latter had been disgraced and dismissed by al-Ma'mún, but, by promising his support and co-operation to Mázyár, he induced him to ask the Caliph to make this appointment.

As soon as Mázyár reached Ṭabaristán, many of the people rallied to his standard, so that he soon found himself at the head of a large army, and marched on Farím to seek out Shápúr, whom he utterly routed, took captive, and put in chains, and then sent word to Músá announcing his victory. Now Shápúr, knowing that Mázyár intended to kill him, sent a secret message to Músá, offering him 100,000 *dirhams* if he would claim him as his own captive. Músá replied that he could best save himself by declaring himself a Muslim, and the client of the Caliph. But, being afraid lest Mázyár should discover his relations with Shápúr, he asked him what he would do if Shápúr should embrace Islám and offer for the Caliph's acceptance a sum of 100,000 *dirhams*. To this question Mázyár vouchsafed no answer, but that night he caused Shápúr to be beheaded, and next morning sent his head to Músá, who (f. 101a) was greatly enraged against him. So Mázyár, fearing lest the Caliph might send someone else instead of Músá to fight against him and subdue him, apologized for his conduct; and matters continued as they were in Ṭabaristán, until, at the end of four years, Músá died, and was succeeded by his son Muḥammad, to whom Mázyár paid no heed whatever, ruling undisturbed over highlands and plains alike. Shápúr's brother Qárin the son of Shahriyár, with all

the House of Báwand and the Marzubáns and Farshwád the Marzubán of Tammísha, were filled with anger against him and complained of him to al-Ma'mún, who sent a summons to Mázyár to appear before him. He replied that he was engaged in a religious war against the Daylamites, and thereupon marched at the head of his army to Jálús and took hostages from the nobles of that country, so that they were compelled to submit to him. Al-Ma'mún then endeavoured to persuade him to come to Baghdad, and sent the astrologer Bizíst to him to bring him thither. Mázyár, being informed of this, collected all the armed men he could find round him, and sent Yahyá b. Rúzbihán and Ibráhím b. Abla to Ray to meet him, bidding them bring him before him by way of Sawát-kúh, Kálbadraja and Kandí-áb, along roads so bad that it was impossible to ride. So when at length, after several days' hard travelling over the worst of roads, they came to where Mázyár was awaiting them at Hurmuzd-ábád, and saw him surrounded by a host of armed men of all conditions, they were filled with astonishment at his power and at the inaccessible character of his kingdom. So he entertained them royally for some time, but persisted in his refusal to accompany them to Baghdad, alleging that he was busy in fighting the Daylamites, but would follow them presently before the Caliph. So he sent them back, accompanied by the Qádís of Amul and Ruyán, and when they reached Baghdad, and were questioned by the Caliph concerning the loyalty (f. 101b) and intentions of Mázyár, they answered contrary to the truth. But when they came out from the audience, and the Qádí of Ruyán had gone to his lodging, the Qádí of Amul lingered outside the audience-hall till he could get speech with Yahyá b. Aktham, to whom he said, "The Prince of Believers enquired concerning Mázyár publicly, and inasmuch as most of his courtiers and attendants are friends of Mázyár, and are in communication

with him, we were unable to declare the truth. Yet did I not deem it right to depart from the court without making known to the Caliph the true state of the case, which is that Mázyár has cast off his allegiance, put on once more the Zoroastrian girdle, treats the Muslims with cruelty and contempt, and will never again of his own free will come to Baghdad." Yahyá b. Aktham replied, "How long wilt thou, who art the administrator of the Holy Law and the Judge of a province, tell lies to the Prince of Believers? When he knows that thou hast lied to him, will he not needs dismiss thee from thy post?" Then he turned back and told the whole matter to al-Ma'mún, and came out again, and brought the Qádí of Amul secretly before the Caliph that he might tell his story. Al-Ma'mún was just preparing to start on a journey, and he said to the Qádí of Amul, "You must put up with it till I return, for this matter is the more urgent." "If we can thwart him," replied the Judge, "have we permission to do so?" "You may do so," answered the Caliph.

So the Qádí returned to Amul, and Mázyár, hearing that the Caliph had marched against the Byzantines, began to devour Amul and Sári like a ravenous wolf, and to drive the people of Rúyán to desperation, so that they conspired together to kill all his representatives. At Safúh near Amul they persuaded one Khalil b. Wandásafán to help them. This news (f. 102a) was brought to Mázyár at Sári, and he at once collected his troops and laid siege to Amul, the inhabitants of which closed the gates, gathered in the country-folk from the surrounding district, and went before Muhammad b. Músá and informed him that the Qádí of Amul had returned from Baghdad asserting that Mázyár had cast off his allegiance to the Caliph, and that he had received permission to kill him. Then Muhammad b. Músá summoned the Qádí, and, learning that the statement made

to him by the people was true, joined himself to them.

Meanwhile Mázyár sent off a courier to the Caliph, announcing that the people of Rúyán and the passes of Jálús had cast off their allegiance to him and had won over Muhammad b. Músá to their side, and set up an 'Alid claimant as anti-caliph, adopting white garments as their distinctive mark. "But I," concluded Mázyár, "have sent an army to subdue them, and, please God, the news of my victory will shortly follow this." At this time the city of Amul was guarded by a double moat and double fortifications, and it held out for eight months against Mázyár, though all the surrounding country was laid waste, and devastated by slaughter and pillage, by Mázyár's brother Qúhyár the son of Qárin; while Mázyár sent constant despatches to the Caliph concerning the progress of the war, till at length the Caliph began to think that Mázyár was after all loyal and true. For Muhammed b. Músá used to send all his despatches to an old servant of his father's who lived at Ray, and who was supposed to forward them; but he had been tampered with by one of Mázyár's acute agents, to whom he gave them instead, so that they never reached their destination, but were all read by Mázyár.

After an eight month's siege, Amul capitulated, and Khalil b. Wandásafán and Abú Ahmad the Qádí were put to death by Mázyár, who wrote a despatch announcing his victory to the Caliph. Al-Ma'mún thereupon despatched Muhammad b. Sa'íd (f. 102b) to Tabaristán to investigate the true state of the case, and to find out who this 'Alid claimant might be. This man reported that there was no 'Alid claimant, and that the whole story was a lie invented by Mázyár. The Caliph, however, when he had read this report, was filled with anger against Muhammad b. Músá, and handed over both the highlands and plains of Tabaristán to Mázyár. When Mázyár was informed of this, he made

a proclamation in Amul, collected all the chiefs, nobles and men of mark, including Muḥammad b. Músá, drove them before him to Rúd-bast, and placed each in his own house under the custody of guards.

In this same year tidings came to Ṭabaristán that al-Ma'mún had died on his campaign against the Byzantines at Qaydúm¹. Thereupon Mázyár sent his Magian followers to bring the prisoners from Rúd-bast to Hurmuzd-ábad, where he put them into fetters and reduced their allowance of food, depriving them altogether of salt, and not permitting them to go to the bath. Most of them died of privation, and Muḥammad b. Músá and his brother had nothing in their cells but a piece of matting each, and bricks for their pillows. Then Mázyár repaired the fortifications of Amul and Sári, constructed castles in the mountains, and compelled all the peasantry to work for him (f. 103a) in constructing fortresses and digging moats. He also established barriers and guard-houses on all the roads to prevent anyone bearing tidings of his doings to the outside world, and he hanged all who attempted to pass out of the country without his permission. In short his tyranny reached a pitch never equalled before or since his time.

Al-Ma'mún was succeeded by his brother Ibráhím al-Mu'tasim, to whom 'Abdu'lláh b. Táhir, governor of Khu-rásán, communicated something of Mázyár's misdeeds, tyranny, and apostacy. The new Caliph sent an ambassador to Mázyár to intercede for Muḥammad b. Músá and his brother; but Mázyár would not listen to the representation of this ambassador, Muḥammad b. 'Abdu'lláh, but answered him harshly that he would exact from them two years' revenues before he let them go. So Muḥammad b. 'Abdu'lláh the ambassador returned in despair, and wrote an

¹ [Ṭabarí (III, p. 1134) has "at al-Badhandún", which Yáqút (I, p. 503) describes as a town two days journey from Tarasús in Cilicia. A. G. E.]

account of his mission to Yahyá b. Ibráhím b. Muṣ'ab, who was at the Court of the Caliph, and who submitted it to al-Mu'tasim. Mázyár meanwhile conferred various offices and distinctions on Bábak, Mazdak and other Magians, who ordered the Muhammadan mosques to be destroyed and all traces of Islám to be removed. The people of Amul persuaded Abu'l-Qásim Hárún b. Muḥammad to write a statement of their grievances to al-Mu'tasim, and hence this *gaṣida* was composed:

وَقَيْلَةً جُرْتُمْ غَدَةً يَسْوَقُكُمْ أَسَارَى إِلَى الْكُفُورِ قُلْفُ الْأَسَاوِرِ
تَعْرِكُ تُوْشِنَا لَمْ تَنْتَعَنَّ وَأَصْبَحْتُ
بَنُو قَارِنَ فِينَا سَحِينَ الدَّوَائِرِ
نَمْعَنْصَمْ بِكُلِّهِ لِلَّذِينَ تَاصَرُ
نَعَمْ وَأَوْيَ الْأَمْرَ الْهَرَامْ أَعْنَاصَرُ
فَقَلَّ أَنْسِيَعُوا رَبُّكُمْ وَرَسُوْلُهُ
وَلَا تَنْقُضُوا الْأَيْمَانَ مِنْ بَعْدِ عِنْدَنَا
وَأَوْفُوا بِعَهْدِكُمْ أَوْفَ بِالْعَهْدِ إِنَّمَا
وَإِنَّا نَطَقْنَا بِالْأَمْمَامِ رِجَانَا
أَنْتَصَرْتُمْ أَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ بِمَا تَرَى
أَجْعَلْنَا تَبَّبَّ أَمْجَوْسَ وَمَا نَرَى
بِبَدْرِ أَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ حَانَ
كُفُورُ لَنْعَمَا الْخَلِيفَةُ دَفَرَ
فَانْ يَنْتَهِ مِثْلُ الْمَزَبِيرَ وَلَمْ يَلْقَ
سَلَافَةَ مَوْتٍ مِنْ دُوُسِ الْبَوَاتِرِ
وَأَخْلَقَ حَبْلَمِيْ أَنْ تَنْدَ جَنِينَهَا
وَمَا عَوْفِيْ نَفِيدَ لَا تَبَعَّدَهَا
يَرْقَتْ بِهَا فِي مُفَعَّمِ الْبَحْرِ زَاهِرَ
وَإِنَّمَا لَاقَيَ مَازِبَارَ كَائِنَيِّ أَرْقَ رَأْسَهُ تَجَاهَا لِرِمْجَنَابِنَ طَاغِرَ
إِذَا دَيَقَتْ رِيَانَهُ تَحْسُوْ بَلَدَهَا أَتَنْدَ بِمَا يَهْوَى صَرُوفُ الْمَقَادِيرِ

In reply to this poem, an answer, also in verse, was sent from Baghdad, from which the following verses are taken:

أَجْبَيْوْا إِلَى الْمَوْتِ الَّذِي سَاقُوكُمْ لَهُ عَدُوُّ شَدِيدُ الْبَغْيِ أَجْوَرُ حَائِرٍ
 فَإِنَّ إِلَهَ النَّاسِ عَوْنَ يَعِينُنَا وَيَنْصُرُنَا رَبُّ لَنَا خَيْرٌ نَاصِرٌ
 رَمَّا كُمْ بِجَنْدٍ فَوْقَ خَيْلٍ صَوَامِرٍ
 وَإِنَّ امِيرَ الْمُمْنِينَ فَقَائِدٌ
 مِنَ الْغَيْرِ سَرْبٌ كُلُّ طَرْفٍ لَطَائِرٍ
 كَاتِبِهِمْ أَسْدٌ مُعَارَ حَيْسِلِهِمْ
 عَلَى الَّذِينَ قَدْ يُرْدِيْكُمْ كُلُّ كَافِرٍ
 فَلَيَتَنْدِمُ يَا صَفْوَتِي مِنْ رَعِيْتِي
 وَإِنَّ يَنْدِيْهِ مَنْسِي الْمَازِيَارُ قَسْوَةٌ
 وَأَصْحَابَهُ أَهْلُ الْذُنُوبِ الْتَّبَائِرِ
 وَأَبْسَدَهُ مِنْ كُسْوَةِ الْقَنْدِلِ حَبَّةٌ
 صَبَاغَتْهَا حَمْرَاءُ مِنْ دَمِ فَاجِرٍ

When al-Mu'tasim was informed of Mázyár's doings, he ordered 'Abdu'lláh [b. Táhir] to proceed to Tabaristán and take him captive. 'Abdu'lláh b. Táhir sent his paternal uncle Hasan b. Husayn to the Caliph begging him to send Muhammád b. Ibráhím with an army from Iráq to help him. When the army of Khurásán reached Tammisha (f. 104a), the army of Iráq had already occupied all the highlands, and the people of Tabaristán left Mázyár and joined 'Abdu'lláh b. Táhir and his uncle. These pursued Mázyár without rest or pause, till at length he was taken captive. 'Abdu'lláh b. Táhir confined him in a box entirely closed save for two eye-holes through which he could look upon the outer world, and carried him thus confined on a mule to Iráq.

One day on the journey Mázyár said to the muleteer, "My heart craves for a melon. Can you get me one?" His guards reported this request to 'Abdu'lláh, who took pity upon him and said, "He is a king and a king's son." Then he ordered him to be released from the chest and brought before him, and placed loads of melons before him, and cut them up and gave them to him with his own hands, saying, "Grieve not, for the Commander of the Faithful is a merciful prince, and I wil intercede for thee, that he may overlook thy fault, and restore thee to thy country." Mázyár replied, "Please God, thy excuses will be accepted." 'Abdu-

'llah was astonished, saying to himself, "The Caliph will not be content with anything short of his death: how then can he ask for my intercession?" Then 'Abdu'lláh ordered a table to be spread, and gave him bread and wine, and caused the minstrels to make melody, and entertained him sumptuously, and greatly encouraged him to hope, plying him with strong wines until he was overcome with drink, but himself passing the wine-cup. Then, when Mázyár was overcome with wine, 'Abdu'lláh asked him the meaning of what he had said. Mázyár replied, "In a few more days you will know." 'Abdu'lláh pressed him, with threats and promises, to speak, and at length Mázyár agreed to do so if he would bind himself by an oath [not to betray him]. On receiving this pledge, Mázyár said (f. 104b), "Know that I, and Afshín, and Haydar b. Ká'ús and Bábak, all four of us, have for a long while covenanted and agreed to take the empire from the Arabs and restore it to the Kisrás of Persia. Yesterday, at such-and-such a place, Afshín's messenger came to me and whispered something in my ear which filled me with joy." "What was that?" enquired 'Abdu'lláh. Mázyár at first refused to speak, but finally, induced by promises and flattery, he continued: "He brought me a message from Afshín to the effect that on a certain day, at a certain hour, he would destroy al-Mu'tasim, and his sons Hárún al-Wáthiq and Ja'far al-Mutawakkil." Then 'Abdu'lláh gave him more wine, till he was entirely overcome with it, and then caused him to be taken back to his place of confinement; and at once wrote to the Caliph what he had heard, and despatched the letter by carrier-pigeon. When the Caliph received the letter it was the very day on which Afshín had invited him and his sons Hárún and Ja'far to a great entertainment. So al-Mu'tasim sent word saying, "They are ill, but I will come," and forthwith proceeded thither with fifty horsemen. Afshín had

decked his house with bejewelled brocades, and had drawn up a hundred negroes, who, when the Caliph had sat down, were to rush upon him from all sides and slay him with their swords. When al-Mu'taṣim reached the entrance, Afshín said, "Enter, o my lord!" but he paused and said, "Where are so-and-so and so-and-so?" Then he called his trusty retainers and bade them enter, while he stood outside. Then one of the Indians sneezed, and the Caliph rushed in, seized Afshín by the beard, and cried, "Plunder, plunder!" (النهب النهب). When the Indians heard this, they were filled with consternation, and took to flight; and al-Mu'taṣim summoned his kinsmen and retainers, and bade them set fire to Afshín's palace. Then his servants took Afshín's beard from the Caliph's hand, and bound him with chains and fetters, and brought him to the Caliph's Palace, where they detained him till Mázyár's arrival. And they questioned him (f. 105a), saying, "Why didst thou see fit to cast off thine allegiance?" Mázyár replied, "You gave me the government of Ṭabaristán. The people rebelled against me. I reported this to the Court, and received orders to fight them." "Who wrote this answer to you?" enquired the Caliph. "Afshín," replied Mázyár. Then the Caliph summoned the lawyers and judges of Baghdad, and by their sentence Mázyár was first scourged to death, and then his body was crucified at the Khaṭíra of Bábil, opposite Náṭis the Byzantine, the lord of 'Amúriya. And Afshín was burned alive. And Mázyár had ruled over Ṭabaristán for seven years, and at his death the highlands passed into the control of Bundár the son of Múní.

Account of the kings of Ṭabaristán after Mázyár.

After Mázyár's death, Ḥasan b. Ḫusayn, the paternal uncle of 'Abdu'lláh b. Táhir, was made governor of Ṭabaristán, and ruled it well and justly for three years, four

months and ten days, and entrusted to Muḥammad b. Ibráhim the task of discovering Mázyár's treasures. In Dhu'l-Hijja, A. H. 228 (= September, A. D. 843) Ḥasan b. Ḫusayn died, and was succeeded by Táhir b. 'Abdu'lláh b. Táhir, who governed the country for one year and three months, until news came from Khurásán of the death of his father 'Abdu'lláh there, whereupon he went to Khurásán, leaving his brother Muḥammad b. 'Abdu'lláh to govern Ṭabaristán, which he did for seven years, assisted by 'Attáb b. Warqá ash-Shaybáni. In Ṣafáر, A. H. 237 (= August, A. D. 851) Muḥammad b. 'Abdu'lláh went to Baghdad, and Sulaymán b. 'Abdu'lláh became governor of Ṭabaristán. He governed with wisdom and discretion for three years, but in A. H. 240 (= A. D. 854—5) he made a secretary from Merv named Mansúr b. Yaḥyá his minister, and this man introduced evil innovations and practised extortions, till he was dismissed by Táhir b. 'Abdu'lláh, and Muḥammad b. Músá b. 'Abdu'r-Rahmán (f. 105b) was made *wazir* in his place.

Qárin the son of Shahriyár embraces Islám.

In the year A. H. 240 (A. D. 854—5) the Caliph al-Mu'taṣim sent one of his nobles to the Ispahbad Qárin the son of Shahriyár, king of the mountains, to bid him break his Magian girdle and embrace Islám, which he did, and thereupon received a robe of honour from the Caliph. At this time Muḥammad b. 'Isa was governing Ṭabaristán, as deputy for the Táhirids, and his government was just and mild. Then Sulaymán b. 'Abdu'lláh was sent to replace him, and he nominated first Quraysh and then Asad b. Jandán as his deputies, and later Muḥammad b. Aws, who united Rúyán and Jálús, placing his son Alīmad in the latter place, as governor over it and Kalár; but his tyranny and harshness were such that all who were able sold or abandoned their houses and migrated elsewhere. And every year the taxes

were levied three times; once for Muḥammad b. Aws, once for his son, and once for a Magian who acted as their agent.

Account of the rule of the Ṭálíbíte Sayyids in Ṭabaristán.

The Caliphate had now passed to Ja'far al-Mutawakkil, the son of al-Mu'taṣim, whose minister, 'Abdu'lláh b. Yaḥyá b. Kháqán, was a fanatical Sunní (*Náṣibi*), who was continually inciting him to kill the descendants of the Prophet, and even prevailed upon him to destroy the tombs of the Martyrs of Kerbelá, dam up the water, grow crops on the site of their graves, and set Jewish watchmen and keepers there to arrest and slay any Muslim who visited these holy places. Thus in the time of ad-Dá'i Muḥammad [b.] Zayd the tombs of 'Alí and his son al-Husayn and other descendants of Abú Ṭálíb were in ruins. But in the Caliphate of al-Muntaṣir (A. H. 247—8; A. D. 861—2) Muḥammad b. Zayd made himself ruler of Ṭabaristán, and thereupon began to preach the Shí'ite doctrine, and to inculcate the deepest veneration for the House of 'Alí, and to repair (f. 106a) their shrines, and to build fresh ones where he supposed their graves to be. In all this he was aided by 'Aḍudu'd-Dawla Fanákhusráw b. Ruknu'd-Dawla Ḥasan [b.] Buwayh, who surrounded these holy places with houses and *bázárs*, and instituted the observances of Muḥarram and the *Yawmū'l-Ghadír* and other Shí'ite practices, and was himself buried when he died at Mashhad 'Alí.

It is related that when al-Mutawakkil was made Caliph, he had the same love of hunting down and slaying the descendants of 'Alí as an eager sportsman has for the chase. The Imám 'Alí b. Muḥammad al-Hádí al-'Askári, who was recognized by the Shí'ites as their pontiff, was his contemporary. One day the Caliph summoned this Imám

before him, caused him to be seated, and then, turning to 'Alí b. Muḥammad an-Nádím, enquired, "Who is the greatest poet of our day?" "Abú 'Ubáda al-Buhturí," replied the courtier, "And after him?" asked the Caliph:

گفت عیبدک ولد مروان بن ابی حفصه، بعد از آن روی بام
علی بن محمد کرد و گفت من اشعر النّاس یا آین عَم، فقال على
ابن محمد انلوق، قل امتوکل و نَمْ قل نقونه (شعر)
نَدَ فَاحْرَنَّا مِنْ قَرِيبٍ عَصَابَةَ بَيْطَ خَدُودَ وَ امْتَدَادَ اصَابَعَ
فَلَمَّا تَنَازَعْنَا أَنْفُخَارَ قُصَيْ نَنَا عَلَيْهِمْ بِمَا نَبْعَدُ نَدَّ الْعَوَامَعَ
مَتَوْكِلٌ گفت ما نَدَّ الْعَوَامَعَ يَأْنِ عَمَ، قل اشْبِدْ انْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ
وَ اشْبِدْ انْ مُحَمَّدًا رَسُولُ اللَّهِ،

For this reason amongst others al-Mutawakkil slew 'Alí b. Muḥammad al-Hádí, and occupied himself day and night with drinking, debauchery and all sorts of folly and madness.

Al-Asmá'i relates in his *Kitábu'n-Nawádir*, on the authority of Ahmád b. Ṣáliḥ ad-Dimashqí, on the authority of Yúsuf b. 'Abdu'lláh, that al-Buhturí said: "I had composed for al-Mutawakkil the well-known *qaṣida* beginning:

عَنْ اعْنَى شَغْرٍ تَبَتَّسَمْ،

and I remained for a long while at the Court waiting for an opportunity to present it (because he cared but little for poets, and would not give them audience) but could find none. One day I was sitting in an ante-chamber when Bahrír, one of the Caliph's servants, came out, took me by the hand, and led me from ante-chamber to apartment and from apartment to ante-chamber till I reckoned that I had passed through three hundred apartments (f. 106b). At length he brought me to a room where I saw al-Mutawakkil sitting on a golden throne, round which stools were

set in order of their rank for his courtiers and attendants, who were clad in black. As soon as al-Mutawakkil's eyes fell on me, he cried to me, 'Recite, O Buhturi, recite!' Though I had not yet saluted him, I said to myself, 'Though it is a breach of etiquette, yet it is best for me to obey his commands;' so I gathered up my skirts and began:

عَنْ أَيِّ تَغْرِيْبٍ تَبَسَّمْ وَ بِأَيِّ تَرْفِيْحٍ تَحْتَكِمْ،

At once one of the courtiers sprang to his feet, looked at me, and said:

عَنْ أَيِّ سَلْبٍ تَرْتَبَطْ وَ بِأَيِّ كَفْ تَلْتَطِمْ،

I was dumb with astonishment, saying to myself, 'It is a year since I composed this poem, and I have shewn it to no one: how could this wretched fellow spoil it thus by his extemporization?' Then I reflected that it must be an accidental coincidence, and continued, fixing my eyes on the Caliph:

أَعْلَمْتُ فِيكَ مَدَائِحِي يَا جَعْفَرَ بْنَ الْمُعَتَّصِمْ،

Instantly that same man rose up again, turned towards me, and said:

أَخْلَكْتُ رَأْسَكَ فِي حَرْمَ فَسَوْفَ مَتَّ تَنْبِيْمَ،

Thereat al-Mutawakkil was seized with such violent laughter that he fell back and his crown rolled from his head; and he gave the courtier who had parodied my verses ten thousand *dirhams*, while me they drove out with cuffs and blows. When I reached the ante-chamber, he passed me, with a servant carrying the money. I enquired of Bahtrí who he was. He replied, "Abu'l-Anbas ad-Damíri, who had you composed two thousand verses, would have produced a parody of each."

In short, during al-Mutawakkil's reign the Sayyids of the House of 'Alí were in hiding in ruins and solitudes, till at length he died, dividing his realms between his three sons, of whom al-Muntasír, who became Caliph, was the eldest. He was opposed by the other 'Abbásids, and the Turkish guard, getting the upper hand, plundered the treasures of Sámarra, and besieged Baghdad, enraged at the support given by its inhabitants to al-Musta'ín. Matters being in this confusion, Yahyá b. 'Umar b. al-Husayn b. 'Alí b. al-Husayn b. (f. 107a) 'Alí b. Abi Tálib rebelled at Kúfa. He was a brave, accomplished and ascetic man. The people of Kúfa, supposing him to be actuated by need of money, offered to pay him a substantial sum if he would be quiet, but he swore that he would never have revolted had not his zeal been stirred by seeing God's religion contemned and the ordinances of the Law contravened and neglected.

آن مرد نیم کن علامم بیم آید کن بیم مرا بیتو ازان بیم آید

Muhammad b. 'Abdu'lláh [b.] Táhir sent one of his officers named Hasan b. Isma'il with another named Turki-takín to suppress this rising, and they captured the Sayyid, and cut off his head, which was sent to Muhammad b. 'Abdu'lláh [b.] Táhir. The people of Baghdad came to offer their congratulations, and amongst them the old Sayyid Abú Hásim Dá'úd b. al-Qásim al-Ja'sarí, who said, "O Amir, I am come to congratulate thee on an event for which condolence would have been offered to the Apostle of God had he still been alive!"

أَيْهُ امِيرُ جَنَاحِكَ مُهْنَجِكَ بِمَا تَوَوَّلَ كَانَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ حَيَا لَعْنَقَ،

The Rise to power of Hasan b. Zayd.

Such of the Sayyids as escaped from this battle fled to the highlands of 'Iráq and Farshwádgar and there concealed

themselves till such time as the people of Wársú and Latrá were driven to desperation by the tyranny and barbarity of Muḥammad b. Aws. These, constantly seeing the learning, piety, and ascetic life of the fugitive Sayyids who had taken refuge amongst them, were strongly impressed in their favour, and said, "It is they who possess the characteristics of true religion." So they gathered deputations from the surrounding villages and went to the Sayyid Muḥammad b. Ibráhím b. 'Alí b. 'Abdu'r-Rahmán b. al-Qásim b. al-Hasan b. Zayd b. al-Hasan b. 'Alí b. Abi Tálib, who was in Rúyán, and begged him to receive their oaths of allegiance, so that perhaps, by his blessing, God might free them from the tyranny under which they groaned. He replied, "I am not worthy to take up arms, but I have a brother-in-law, who is married to my sister, who is brave and competent, being skilled in war and tried in battle (f. 107b). If you will carry a letter from me to him at Ray, he will accept your offer and accomplish your desire." So the chief man of the deputations, 'Abdu'lláh b. Wandáummíd, at once despatched a courier with the letter.

Rule of the Sayyids of Ṭabaristán, of whom
the first was Ḥasan b. Zayd.

When this courier reached Ray he saw Ḥasan b. Zayd and Isma'íl called *Ja'libu'l-Hijára* ("the Stone-dragger") whose genealogy has been already mentioned in the preface, and communicated to them the letters of the notables of Ṭabaristán, urging them to revolt. To these he replied, and dismissed the messenger with a robe of honour. When he reached Rúyán, the news became known, and was communicated to 'Alí b. Aws. He at once wrote to 'Abdu'lláh b. Sa'íd and Muḥammad b. 'Abdu'l-Karím bidding them come to him to investigate the matter. The former was

afraid, left his house, and retired to the village of Ashtád. At this juncture the courier arrived with the letter of Ḥasan b. Zayd al-‘Alawí, announcing that he had alighted at the village of Sa'íd-ábád, where he was expecting 'Abdu'lláh b. Sa'íd and his confederates to take the oath of allegiance. 'Abdu'lláh thereupon went to [Muḥammad b.] 'Abdu'l-Karím with all the chief men of Kalár on Tuesday, Ramadán 25, A. H. 250 (= November 1, A. D. 864), and they swore allegiance, undertaking to observe the ordinances of God's scripture, and the practice of His Apostle, and to do good and forbid evil. And they wrote letters to the people of Jálús and Nífrús, and sent missionaries to them, and remained that night with 'Abdu'lláh b. Sa'íd, and proceeded next day to Gúrishbárd, where people joined them from all sides. News of this came to 'Alí b. Aws, who did not rest until he had communicated with Muḥammad b. Aws. And the Sayyids of that district, with Muḥammad b. Ibráhím b. 'Alí b. 'Abdu'r-Rahmán, went out to meet Ḥasan b. Zayd, who reached Kajúr on Thursday, Ramadán 27 (A. H. 250 = November 3, A. D. 864), and performed the service of the festival which marks the conclusion of Ramadán, and preached a most eloquent sermon. Then he sent Muḥammad b. 'Abbás (f. 108a) and 'Alí b. Naṣr and 'Aqíl b. Mabrúr to Ḥusayn b. Muḥammad al-Ḥanafí, who was then at Jálús, to invite him to ally himself with them; and then they proceeded to the Great Mosque and received the oaths of allegiance of all the people of that district, save the few dependants of Muḥammad b. Aws, who fled without horses or arms, some to Ja'far b. Shahriyár b. Qárin and some to others.

Ḥasan b. Zayd next marched from Kajúr to Nátil, and received the allegiance of its inhabitants, and thence he passed on to Pá-yi-Dasht. At the head of his vanguard were Muḥammad al-‘Alawí and Muḥammad b. Rustam b. Wandáummíd.

ummíd of Kalár, whom they called Khiyán; while the vanguard of the army of Muhammad b. Aws was Muhammad b. Ikhshíd, his *sipahsálár*. The two armies met at Pá-yi-Dasht, and Muhammad al-‘Alawí at once attacked the enemy, put them to rout, and took captive Muhammad b. Ikhshíd, whom he sent to Hasan b. Zayd. He then pushed forward with all speed to Balíkání near Amul, whither Sulaymán b. ‘Abd’ulláh b. Táhir had sent an army, which they defeated, taking captive Hasan b. Husayn.

Muhammad b. Hamza was ordered to proceed in person to Daylamán and seek for reinforcements. The Daylamites responded to the appeal, and Ummídwár the son of Lashkar-sítán, Wíhán the son of Sahl, Fálízbán, and Faql-i-Rafíqí came with six hundred men to Pá-yi-Dasht to reinforce Hasan b. Zayd, who on the same day received letters from the nobles and Ispahbads of Tabaristán promising him their support, and urging him to continue the war. Amongst these were Pádhúsbán the son of Kurdzád, the Ispahbad of Lafúr, the Maş-mughán, son of Wandá-ummíd, Wijan the son of Rustam, Khurshíd the son of Gushnasf the son of Nidrand, and Khiyán, the son of Rustam. Encouraged by these letters and promises, Hasan b. Zayd formed a bodyguard of 20 horsemen and 200 footmen under the command of his kinsmen the Sayyids Muhammad b. Hamza and Husayn b. Ahmad (f. 108b). When Muhammad b. Aws heard this, he set his army in battle array and ordered Ibráhím b. Khalíl to attack them; they, however, not only repelled the attack, but pursued their assailants, routed Muhammad b. Aws, and captured much of his baggage and many of his horses.

On Monday, Shawwal 23 (A. H. 250 = November 29, A. D. 864) Hasan b. Zayd reached Amul, and slew a number of his opponents, including Daylamí the son of Farrukhán, Muqátil the Daylamite (و مقاتل دیلمی), and Alí b. Ibráhím

al-Jílí; but Ibráhím b. Khalíl craved and obtained quarter. On the morning of the following day, Tuesday, Hasan b. Zayd proceeded to the Oratory (مصلی) of Amul, summoned all the people of the city, gentle and simple, and persuaded all save a very few to take the oath of allegiance to him. He abode in Amul for the remaining seven days of the month, during which period Fana the son of Wandá-ummíd, Wandásafán the son of Máhyár, and Surkháb the son of Rustam sought and obtained quarter. Then he appointed Muhammad b. ‘Abdu’l-‘Azíz governor of Rúyán, Ja’far b. Rustam governor of Kalár, and Muhammad b. al-‘Abbás governor of Jálús, while he invited the people of Amul to choose a governor for themselves, whereupon they chose Muhammad b. Ibráhím b. ‘Ali b. ‘Abdu’r-Rahmán, who was then acting as Hasan b. Zayd’s deputy-governor at Rúyán.

The Mas-mughán, son of Wanda-ummíd, had already conceived a hatred for Muhammad b. Aws because of his tyranny towards the people, and when he saw how the affairs of Hasan b. Zayd prospered, he came forth from the forests where he was hiding to Mámtír, where, on Thursday, Shawwál 26 (A. H. 250 = December 2, A. D. 864) he called upon the people to swear allegiance to Hasan b. Zayd, which they all did eagerly. Then he wrote tidings of what he had done to Hasan b. Zayd, who gave him in perpetuity the rule over Zarmíkhwást, and ordered him to go to Sári and wait there till he should join him. He did so (f. 109a), and encamped by the village of Putam at Nawrúzábád, while Hasan b. Zayd’s emissaries went forth as far as Dá-mawand, Firúz-kúh and the confines of Ray, and all the people of Tabaristán accepted the authority of Hasan b. Zayd. On Friday, Dhul-Qa’dá 14, (A. H. 250 = December 19, A. D. 864) he reached Tarícha with all his army, whence he proceeded to Jamanú.

Correspondence of the Ispahbad Qárin b.
Shahriyár with Ḥasan b. Zayd.

At this juncture the Ispahbad Qárin wrote to Ḥasan b. Zayd professing the utmost devotion to him, and promising to send him help. His real object, however, was to weaken Sulaymán al-‘Alawí, drive him from the country, and seize both highlands and plains for himself. When Ḥasan b. Zayd received this letter, he summoned the Daylamites and shewed them the letter, and they wrote to the Ispahbad saying, "If thou speakest truly, join thyself to us." The Ispahbad replied, "It is better that you should join me." Then Ḥasan b. Zayd began to suspect his motives, and Sulaymán b. ‘Abdu’lláh sent his general Asad [b.] Jandán with an army from Sári to a place called Dúdán on the road to Tarjí. Ḥasan b. Zayd sought counsel from his companions. An old man named Shahriyár the son of Andiyán, one of the chief counsellors of Sharwín, said to Ḥasan b. Zayd, "It is best that you should make it known that you intend to march against Asad, but during the night you should turn aside and go by way of Zarmíkhwást to Nawrúz-ábád, and thence to Sári, where you will attack Sulaymán, and crush him, after which you will easily defeat Asad and his army. But if you act otherwise, and defeat Asad first, he will escape to Sulaymán, and your affairs will be rendered difficult; and moreover God only knows what the result of your encounter with Asad may be. Besides this, Sulaymán, who is now at Sári, probably feels quite secure and is taking no precautions, since he will feel sure that you will first encounter his general Asad" (f. 109b).

Ḥasan b. Zayd determined to act on this advice, and to attack Sulaymán first; and Asad received tidings that Ḥasan b. Zayd had fled by night, whereupon he despatched a

courier to Sulaymán to inform him that the ‘Alawí had fled. But as the latter was sitting rejoicing over this message, he suddenly heard the cries of "Alláhu akbar!" and saw around him the white standards of the ‘Alawís, and heard the shouts of their Daylamite allies. Thereupon he fled bare-foot to Asad, while the Sayyid's troops slew all whom they could overtake of their foes. When Sulaymán reached Asad, he was already engaged with the Sayyid's troops, and the latter, like lions eager for their meal, pursued them, and slew amongst others Ḥusayn b. ‘Alí of Sarakhs, ‘Alí b. al-Harb, Isháq b. Shaykhí, ‘Alí al-Maghribí, Ibn Tha’labá of Syria, and Naṣr b. Wabra of Syria. Then they looted Sulaymán's palace, sent the spoils to the village of Mihráwán, and then burned the palace to the ground. Ḥasan b. Zayd reached Sári on the first day of the five Persian *gádás* (جُوْزْ مُسْتَقْدَمْ), and the same day news was brought to him that his brother Ḥusayn b. Zayd had reached Shalmiyya near Damáwand, and Pádhúsbán the son of Kurd-zád came to him from Lafúr, telling him that he ought to remain forty days at Sári. His brother Ḥusayn b. Zayd remained 23 days at Damáwand, where the chiefs of Láriján and Qaṣrán came in to him, and he was joined by Muḥammad b. Míkál. Meanwhile Sulaymán fled to Astarábád, and sent messengers to Khurásán to demand help, while the stragglers of his army gradually joined him.

After a forty days' halt at Sári, Ḥasan b. Zayd turned back to go to Amul. The Daylamites, being laden with booty, dispersed, and went back to their homes. The Ispahbad Pádhúsbán advised Ḥasan b. Zayd not to go beyond Jamánu till it was known what course Sulaymán would adopt. Soon afterwards Sulaymán himself arrived with a fresh army at Sári and Ḥasan b. Zayd sent to Muḥammad b. Ibráhím (f. 110a) and Muḥammad [b.] Ḥamzá bidding them join him with their forces from Amul and Mámtír. Sulaymán

had pitched his camp at Lícham, and a battle took place between the two forces at Tamashkí Dasht, in which Ḥasan b. Zayd was routed, and his men were dispersed to the forests. Ahmad b. Muhammad b. Aws pursued them into the forests, but they caught him unawares, and slew him with a blow from a mace. On that day Ḥasan b. Zayd shewed the greatest valour, and held the end of a bridge against the foe until he had seen his fugitive army cross in safety. Thence he marched to Úsfar, while Sulaymán went to Tá-lániyán, and Muhammad b. Aws pursued the men of Kalár, of whom he slew many in an ambush which he had prepared on the road to Úsfar. But the Ispahbad Pádhúsbán and the Mas-mughán had prepared another ambush for him, into which he fell with his soldiers, of whom they slew many, while he himself was struck on the head with a stone. When Ḥasan b. Zayd perceived that he could not withstand them, he retreated by way of Bálá'in with Fana the son of Wandá-ummíd and Khurshíd the son of Gushnasf, and came that night to Amul, whence next morning he came to Jálús, having lost many of his men, while those who remained with him were despoiled of almost all their garments and weapons, so that Jái the son of Lashkar-sítán, one of his best-known lieutenants, had no clothes on his body. However some 10,000 *dirhams* were collected and spent on obtaining fresh clothes.

Sulaymán b. 'Abdu'lláh and the nobles of Khurásán, accompanied by the infantry of the king of the mountains, the Ispahbad Qárin the son of Shahriyár, came to Amul, while Ḥasan b. Zayd sent for re-inforcements to Gílán and Daylamán. In response to his appeal, several thousand adherents of his propaganda (ابناء دعوت) joined him, whereupon he prepared his army for battle, and moved on to Khwájak. Sulaymán, learning this, came from Amul to Páyi-Dasht, where he encamped. Ḥasan b. Zayd advanced to

the Lápich River (f. 110b) and took counsel with his allies. The Daylamites said, "This place is good. Give us permission first to attack the infantry of the Ispahbad Qárin and dispose of them, for in this place when the infantry are routed, cavalry has no chance." Ḥasan b. Zayd gave them permission, and when they had routed the infantry, the horsemen were entangled in the bushes and underwood, and were taken prisoners, or else fled, casting away their arms. Amongst those killed were Sulayman's general Asad b. Jandán, Anúshírwán *Hazár-mardí*, 'Alí b. al-Faraj, 'Attáf b. Abi'l-'Attáf of Syria, the Ispahbad Ja'far b. Shahriyár, Qárin's general Dázmíhr, 'Azíz b. 'Abdu'lláh, and 'Ubayd b. Yazíd al-Kházin.

Ḥasan b. Zayd remained there that day, and on the morrow came to Amul, whence after fifteen days he came to Jamanú, and gave an army to the Ispahbad Pádhúsbán to fight the Ispahbad Qárin the son of Shahriyár. Pádhúsbán, having secured the assistance of Kúkbán-i-Bakhmí from Kimnán, burned and ravaged all the highlands of Qárin, who fled from before them, abandoning his kingdom, in which Ḥasan b. Zayd established his governors to collect the revenue. Sulaymán fled to Astarábád, and sent a courier to Muhammad b. 'Abdu'lláh [b.] Táhir in Khurásán, asking for reinforcements. In response to his appeal, 'Anátur b. Bakhtánshah and Gushnasf b. Máš were sent to support him, with a considerable army, whereat Sulaymán took heart, for Sayyid Ḥasan b. Zayd was but weakly supported at Sári, some of his army being in the highlands, while his Daylamite allies had retired to Daylamán. Hearing of Sulaymán's increased strength, he therefore fell back on Jálús, where he was told that Wih-súdan the king of Daylamán had abandoned his cause; but a few days later Wih-súdan died, and 4000 Daylamites thereupon joined Ḥasan b. Zayd. Meanwhile Fana (f. 111a) had collected an army from

Farím and the highlands and come to Amul, whence he wrote to Hasan b. Zayd asking for his commands. Thereupon he sent Ahmed b. Hasan to him to occupy the country, and to remove Ibráhím [b.] Khalíl. At his commands, Fana marched against Ibráhím and defeated him. Hasan b. Zayd on hearing this came to Khwájak, where the people complained of Fana's oppression, further accusing him of having a secret understanding with Sulaymán and of corresponding with him. So he sent Muhammad b. Abí Mansúr and 'Isá b. Hamíd to him, bidding him come before him, but he came not. Again he sent a message to him, bidding him not be disobedient, but he returned an insolent answer. Then Hasan b. Zayd told the people of Amul that Fana's blood was lawful to them, whereupon 10,000 men attacked and burned his house, while he fled to his nephew Khurshíd the son of Gushnasf; but Khiyán the son of Rustam with a number of his followers pursued him thither, and slew them both, and sent their heads to Hasan b. Zayd. Then Fana's son Layth came in, with all his followers, to made his submission to Hasan b. Zayd, having induced the Ispahbad Pádhúsbán to intercede for him, and the Sayyid gave him a robe of honour, and conferred on him his father's possessions.

After a while Hasan b. Zayd moved from Amul to Jamanú, where he remained for a month. While there, an encounter took place between his outposts and those of Sulaymán, in which many of Hasan's men were slain, including Muhammad b. 'Isá b. 'Abdu'l-Hamíd. So Hasan b. Zayd was again obliged to retreat, accompanied by Muhammad b. Rustam, the Mas-mughán, and Kúrankíj the son of Rúzbihán, sending the Ispahbad Pádhúsbán and Wíjan the son of Rustam to the highlands to guard them. Then he returned to Amul, while Sulaymán abode at his palace at Sári, whither he brought his wives and retainers

from Astarábád; and the people (f. 111b) again began to hesitate between the two rivals. Then Sulaymán sent Muhammad b. Isma'il to Amul, but Hasan b. Zayd, hearing of it, arrested and imprisoned him for a while, but afterwards released him, and suffered him to return to Sulaymán. Then Hasan collected his troops and went to Jamanú, having already warned the Mas-mughán to be on his guard, and sent Ja'far b. Rustam and Layth b. Fana and Wíjan b. Rustam with 700 men to help him. Sulaymán came out from Sári to meet them in battle, and the Mas-mughán had prepared an ambush for him, but he routed the Mas-mughán, who fled to the forests. A violent thunder-storm came on, so that the archers could not shoot, and Sulaymán and his men surrounded the Mas-mughán, but the men hidden in ambush by the latter rushed out against him, and slew many of his chief followers, including Jalwánán the son of Wanda-ummíd, Muhammad b. Faḍl of Láriján, Muhammad b. Khálid, known as Abú Miráh, and others, all of whose heads were sent to Hasan b. Zayd. The Ispahbad Qárin the son of Shahriyár had gone with his army to meet the Ispahbad Pádhúsbán to fight with him, and the latter sent his brother Kurdi-zád to Hasan b. Zayd to seek for help. In response to his appeal, Muhammad b. Rustam with the men of Kalár, Wíhán b. Sahl with the Daylamites, and Khiyán b. Rustam with the troops of Amul were sent to reinforce him. The Ispahbad Qárin fled, and Hasan b. Zayd came to Amul on the day of the festival, whence, after the 'Id-i-adhá, he proceeded to Mámír, where he remained for thirteen days. Sulaymán sent two ambassadors with a letter to Khurshíd king of Daylam, urging and encouraging him to help and befriend him, and to abandon Hasan b. Zayd, and offering him 7000 golden *dínárs* and many robes of honour to divide amongst the Daylamites, on condition of their withholding their help from the Sayyid. He also con-

structed a boat on the river Mihrawán, placed in it Azbar b. Janáh (f. 112a) and Sa'íd b. Jibrá'íl, and sent them to Ispíd-júy, where a wind arose which carried them in an hour to Jálús. Ḥasan b. Zayd's governor, being aware of this, seized the boat, and sent the ambassadors, with their papers, money and robes of honour, to the Sayyid, who divided the valuables amongst the Daylamites, and humbled Khurshíd king of Daylam, so that all men perceived that Sulaymán's luck was on the wane.

Ḥasan b. Zayd came from Mámtír to Jamanú, and made the Daylamites swear to be faithful and loyal to him, and then marched against Sulaymán, who had moved from Sári to Dú'-Ab. The Mas-mughán advised that white flags should be fixed to the trees in front of his camp, so that he might suppose that it was the Sayyid's camp; and that meanwhile they should secretly go by way of Banahra to Wínábád and attack the enemy in the rear, so that they might suppose they were hemmed in between two bodies of the enemy. By this device they succeeded in defeating Sulaymán, and marched on Sári, while the Daylamites looted the *bázars*, killing and plundering. Sulaymán, abandoning his wives, children and relatives, fled precipitately, while of his chief supporters 'Anátúr [b.] Bakhtánsháh, Abu'l-A'azz Muḥammad b. Qays, Muḥammad b. Kathír, Gushnásf b. Más, Muḥammad b. al-'Abbás, Muḥammad b. al-Walíd, Músá b. al-Kátib, 'Alí b. Maṇsúr, and Muḥammad b. 'Abdu'lláh al-Qádí were killed, while the two ambassadors captured in the boat were, by order of the Sayyid, hanged. This victory took place on Thursday, Dhu'l-Hijja 8, (A. H. 250 = January 10, A. H. 865). Sulaymán's wife and children were taken captive, and when he reached Astarábád, he wrote a letter to Muḥammad b. Ḥamza for him to lay before Ḥasan b. Zayd, couched as follows (f. 112b):

اَكْرَمُكَ اللَّهُ بِطَاعَتِهِ وَابْقَاكَ فِي سَعَادَتِهِ وَاتْمَمْ نِعْمَتَهُ عَلَيْكَ بِرِحْمَتِهِ

مِنْ اَحْتَاجْتُ مَعَهُ لِلِّتَعْدَادِ وَالتَّفْصِيلِ فِي ذِكْرِ مَا يَجِبُ لِي عَلَيْهِ مِنْ
بَيْنِ هَذَا الْخَلْلِ فَتَتْ مِنْهُمْ غَمْيَّةً عَنْ ذَلِكَ مَعْرِفَتِكَ بِمَا قَدِمْ وَحَدَّثَ
وَعْلَمْكَ بِنَبَيْتِي وَالْتَّنَحَّافَى عَلَيْكُمْ اهْلُ الْبَيْتِ فِي وَقْتِ اِمْخَافَةِ وَ
اِصْعَبَةِ وَقَبْلَكَ اَكْمَلَ اللَّهُ جَمَاعَةً مِنْ عِبَالِي وَذَوِي رَحْمَى وَمَتَحَرِّمِينَ
فِي وَمَنْقَطِعِينَ الَّتِي وَأَنْتَ أَحْقَ حِيَاةَنِتُمْ وَحِيَاةَ الدَّارِ فَانَّ الْأَبَارِ
قَدْ تَقْدَمْتَ بِمَا تُمْتَحِنُ فَلَا تُحْسِرْ وَأَرْجُو أَنْ يَكُونَ عَذَا بَلَغَ فِيمَا
وَأَنْجَعَ وَالسَّلَامُ،

On reading this letter, the Sayyid Ḥasan b. Zayd sent Sulaymán's wife and children and kinsmen to him with all honour and protection, and wrote with his own hand the following verse at the top of his letter:

دَحِيفَ فِي دِينِنَا وَلَا أَثْرَ، بِالْتَّسِيفِ نَعْلُو جَمَاجِمَ الْكُفَّارِ،
بِاَقْوَامِنَا بَيْعَتَانِ وَاحِدَةٌ شَانِقٌ وَعَاقِكَ بِبَعْدَ اِنْشَاجِرِ،
رَدُوا عَلَيْنَا تِرَاثَ وَالْدَّنَا خَاتَمَهُ وَالْقَضِيبَ وَالْحَبْرِ،
وَبَيْتَ فِي الْعَرْشِ سَلَمُونَا نَنَا يَلِيدَ مِنْتَأْ عَصَابَةَ شَهْرِ،
فَطَانَمَا بَنَسَتْ مَشَاعِرَ، وَأَنْهَرَتْ فِيهِ فَسَقِبَا الْفَاجِرِ،

The Ispahbad Qárin the son of Shahriyár took refuge with the Mas-mughán, whom he induced to intercede for him with Ḥasan b. Zayd, to whom he took the oath of allegiance, and to whose court he sent his two sons Surkháb and Mázýár. And all this happened in the year A. H. 252 (A. D. 866).

Thereafter enmity arose between the Mas-mughán and Faḍl-i-Rafiqí, and the former took to the forests. Ḥasan b. Zayd tried by kind messages to induce him to return, but he refused, alleging that he was afraid of the Daylamites, and became a rebel. Then Ḥasan b. Zayd marched to Lankúr-khán and burned all the corn in the country, and sent Qárin in pursuit of him, but he fled away. Then Ḥasan b. Zayd came

to Sári, where news was brought (f. 113a) to him that Jálí the son of Lashkar-sítán was tyrannizing over the people of Ámul, when some of them revolted and slew him. He thereupon despatched Muḥammad b. Ibráhím to investigate the matter, and ten days later followed him himself. When he reached Tarícha, his cousin Qásim b. 'Alí b. al-Hasan b. Zayd came from 'Iráq, and he bestowed on him robes of honour and costly presents, and sent him to Ámul, while he himself remained at Tarícha. He arrested Surkháb the son of the Ispahbad Qárin and his brother Mázyár, and put them in bonds, and sent Sayyid Hasan b. Ja'far al-'Aqíqí to Sári, giving him the government of that district and bidding him capture the Mas-mughán. Sayyid 'Aqíqí wrote in a conciliatory strain to the Mus-mughán, and induced him to join him and apologize for his flight and rebellion. Rustam the son of Qárin, however, revolted at Mihrawán, and rendered the roads unsafe; but he sent Hurmuzd-káma the son of Yazdánkard and 'Abbás b. al-'Aqílí against him. Rustam b. Zabarqán met the supporters of Muḥammad b. Núh, slew some and took others captive, captured Muḥammad b. Núh, and brought him to Mihrawán. Hasan b. Muḥammad 'Aqíqí, being informed of this, sent to Hasan b. Zayd informing him that he had gone to Mihrawán to fight the enemy. Sayyid Hasan b. Zayd, who was then at Jamanú, at once came to Sári, and there joined Sayyid Hasan 'Aqíqí, who had returned victorious, having slain many, and captured some 400 prisoners, abode for a while at Sári, until he heard that Ibráhím b. Mu'ádh was sending re-inforcements to the Ispahbad Qárin b. Shahriyár, who was marching against him. So the Sayyid took the initiative, attacked his highland territory, slew all whom he met, and burned down houses and villages. Then he again took up his quarters at Sári for a while, left Sayyid Hasan 'Aqíqí in charge of that district, and returned to Ámul, whence he issued a proclamation to all the

Regions of Ṭabaristán bidding them add the [Shí'ite] clause "hayya ila khayri'l-amal" to the call to prayer, and to say the *Bismi'lláh* aloud in their prayers (f. 113b), and the like. This proclamation ran as follows:

لَمَرْمَمْ بِأَخْذِ الرَّعْلَا بِمَا فِيهِ جُمْلَةٌ قَدْ رَأَيْنَا لَنْ تَأْخُذَ أَهْلَ عَمَلٍ
بِالْعَدْلِ بِكِتَابِ اللَّهِ وَسُنْنَةِ رَسُولِهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَآلِهِ وَمَا صَحَّ مِنْ
إِمَامِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ عَلَى بْنِ ابْنِ طَالِبٍ عَلَيْهِ اسْلَامٌ فِي اصْبُولِ الْدِينِ وَ
فَرْوَعَةٌ وَبِإِظْهَارِ تَفْضِيلِهِ عَلَى جَمِيعِ الْأَمَمِ وَتَنْبِيَّهُ اشْدَدَ النَّبَيِّ عَنِ
الْقَوْلِ بِالْجَهْرِ وَالْتَّشْبِيهِ مَكَابِدَ الْمُوْحَدِينَ الْقَاتِلِينَ بِالْعَدْلِ وَالْتَّوْحِيدِ
وَعَنِ الْتَّحْكُمِ بِالشِّيَعَةِ وَعَنِ الرَّوَايَةِ فِي تَفْضِيلِ أَعْدَاءِ اللَّهِ وَأَعْدَاءِ
إِمَامِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَلَمَرْمَمْ بِالْجَهْرِ بِإِسْمِ إِلَهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ وَبِإِقْنَوْتِ فِي
صَلْوَةِ الْفَجْرِ وَالْتَّكْبِيرَاتِ لِلْخَمْسِ عَلَى الْمَيِّتِ وَتَرْكِ اِنْسَحَّ عَلَى
الْخَفَّيِّ وَبِالْحَاجَّ حَتَّى عَلَى خَيْرِ الْعَدْلِ فِي الْأَذَانِ وَالْأَقْمَةِ وَلَنْ تَجْعَلْ
الْأَقْمَةَ مَتَّنَّى وَتُحَدِّرَ مَنْ تَعَلَّقَ أَمْرَنَا فَلِيُسْ لَمَنْ خَالَفَ أَمْرَنَا وَ
رَأَيْنَا إِلَّا سُفْكَ دَمَهُ وَأَنْتَبَكَ مُحَارِمَهُ قَدْ أَعْذَرْنَا مِنْ أَنْدَرْنَا،

On this same day Abú Muqátil aḍ-Ḍarír the poet recited to the Sayyid a *qaṣida* which began "God is peerless and the son of Zayd is peerless" —

اللَّهُ فَرِدُ وَابْنُ زَيْدٍ فَرِدٌ،

Hasan b. Zayd the *Dá'i* cried out at him in anger, and at once prostrated himself on the ground and repeated again and again, "God is peerless and the son of Zayd is a slave" —

اللَّهُ فَرِدُ وَابْنُ زَيْدٍ عَبْدٌ،

Then he ordered the poet to be driven from his presence. A few days later he returned with these verses:

أَنَا مَنْ عَصَمْتُ لِسَانَهُ فِي شِعْرٍ وَلِرِبَّما ضَرَّ اللَّبَيِّبَ لِسَانَهُ
عَبْنَيِّي أَسَّتُ أَمَّا رَأَيْتُمْ كَافِرًا نَجَاهَ مِنْ نَفْعِيَانَهُ أَيْمَانَهُ

Yet still the Sayyid was displeased with him, until on the festival of Mihraján he composed and recited another *qasida* beginning:

لَا تَقْلِبْ بُشْرَىٰ وَ لَكِنْ بُشْرَىٰ
غَرَّةُ الدَّاعِيٰ وَ يَوْمُ الْمِهْرَجَانَ (f. 114a)

Then he turned to the poet and said that he ought to have transposed these two hemistichs, so as to avoid the evil omen of beginning the poem with the negation *lā*; but the poet replied, "O Sayyid, the most noble formula is '*La iláha illa 'lláh*' ('There is no god but God'), yet that begins with *lā*." "Well said! well said," cried the Sayyid; "thou art right in this verse!"

It is related that one day the Sayyid was passing through the streets and markets of Amul when he saw written on a wall the words "*the Qur'án is the Uncreated Word of God, and whosoever calls it Created is an infidel.*" He reined in his horse and paused for a while to look at it, and then rode on. As a rule it was his custom not to return by the way he had come, but on this occasion he departed from his custom, and came back by that same spot. On arriving there, he perceived that the inhabitants of the quarter had effaced the writing, whereupon he smiled to himself and said, "*By Alláh, they have saved themselves from slaughter!*"

The Sayyid remained at Amul all the months of Sha'bán, Ramadán and Shawwál, while Ḥasan-i-‘Aqíqí continued at Sári, until Muḥammad b. Núḥ joined the Ispahbad Qárin the son of Shahriyár, and the Mas-mughán became their ally, and they marched on Sári conjointly. ‘Aqíqí retired before them to Tarícha, and Ḥasan b. Zayd sent Ja'far b. Muḥammad and Layth b. Fana with a thousand men to help him. Setting out from Tarícha, they first fell in with the Mas-mughán, defeated him, and slew his brother ‘Abbás. Then they turned, advanced on Sári, attacked Muḥammad

b. Núḥ at a place called Girda-zamín, four parasangs from the city, and defeated him. Layth b. Fana shewed the greatest courage; and it was chiefly by his efforts that the victory was won. Next night Ḥasan b. Muḥammad b. al-‘Aqíqí made a sudden attack and slew many of them, and carried off much spoil, and Muḥammad b. Núḥ joined Sulaymán b. ‘Abdu'lláh [b.] Táhir at Astarábád, and both retired together to Gurgán. Sulaymán is reported to have said: "One day I passed over to Gurgán with four comrades (*khayl-tásh*) to a place called Sulaymán-ábád. I heard a voice saying:

كَمْ تَبَرُّونَ وَ كَمْ تَكْفِيْ خَيْرَتُهُ عَذَّا فَعَزَّ ذَبِيرُ فِي اِنْدَابِيرِ

"When I looked back, I saw no one, and knew not who had spoken." After this Sulaymán abandoned all idea of conquering Tabaristán, and retired into Khurásán.

Tabaristán is finally subjugated by Sayyid Ḥasan b. Zayd.

When Sulaymán b. ‘Abdu'lláh [b.] Táhir retired from Tabaristán, Sayyid Ḥasan took possession of the whole country, and was henceforth reckoned its ruler. He persecuted and slew all such as sympathized with the ‘Abbásids (*Musawwida*), till men were filled with the fear of him, and thought of nothing save how to obey and please him. On Wednesday, Dhu'l-Hijja 3, A. H. 253 (= December 4, A. D. 867) he gave standards to Muḥammad b. Ibráhím and Lashkar-sítán-i-Daylamí and sent them to Gurgán, and everywhere the people came out to meet them and made offerings to them. During the whole of this month and the months of Muḥarram and Ṣafar, A. H. 254 (January and February A. D. 868) the Daylamites remained with them, but when they found there were no spoils to be got, they entirely abandoned Muḥammad b. Ibráhím. After ten days he arrived

alone at Sári from Gurgán. At the beginning of Rabi' I, A. H. 254 (March, A. D. 868) Sayyid Ḥasan sent an army against the Ispahbad Qárin the son of Shahriyár, the king of the Mountains, to Hazár-garí, where they burned all the crops and destroyed the houses. When he reached Sári, Justán the son of Wah-súdán sent a trusty messenger to the Sayyid, asking him to send a representative in whom he had confidence to conquer by his aid the kingdom of Ray. So the Sayyid sent to him Ahmad b. 'Isá b. 'Alí b. al-Ḥasan, and part of the territories of Ray were captured by them, and the Sayyid came from Sári to Amul. Mázyár the son of Qárin and Shahriyár escaped from their captivity, and on Friday, the 2nd of Jumáda I, A. H. 254 (= April 29, A. D. 868) the Sayyid ordered their gaolers to receive exemplary punishment, and despatched the brother of the Masmughán Wandarand Wándad Hurmazd السمفجعي and Muḥammad b. Ibráhím to seek for the Ispahbad Qárin in the highlands; but he fled from them to Qúmish (f. 115a).

And now the Sayyids of the House of 'Alí and the Banú Háshim began to flock to Ṭabaristán from the Hijáz, Syria and 'Iráq "according to the number of the leaves on the trees," and he gave them all welcome; and whenever he rode forth, he was surrounded by 300 'Alawís with drawn swords as a body-guard. And on this the Sayyid Náṣir-ikabír Ḥasan b. 'Alí says:

كُلَّ أَيْنَ زَيْدٌ حَيْنَ يَغْدُو بِقَوْمٍ بُدُورٌ سَمَاءٌ حُولُهُ أَنْجُمٌ زَفَرٌ
فَيَا بُوسٌ قَوْمٌ تَبَحْتُهُمْ خَيْوَةٌ وَيَا نَعْمَ قَوْمٌ نَالَتُهُمْ جُودٌ الْغَمَرُ

After this letters arrived from Ahmad b. 'Isá and Qásim b. 'Alí, who were with Justán the son of Wah-súdán, announcing that the districts of Ray, Qazwín, Abhar, and Zangán had been occupied by them, and that the people had responded to their propaganda. Then the Sayyid again sent Muḥammad b. Ibráhím to Gurgán with his standard,

and its people also submitted, and the Sayyid's rule was firmly established over a tranquil and obedient realm.

The Caliph al-Mu'tazz sends Músá b. Bughá and Muflíh with an army to Ṭabaristán.

Qásim b. 'Alí al-'Alawí, who was in 'Iráq, seized 'Abdu'lláh b. 'Azíz, one of the officers of the Táhirids, and handed him over to Faḍl b. Marzubán, who took him to Ḥasan b. Zayd, advising him to keep him securely. It was the 'Id-i-Adhá when the prisoner was brought to the Sayyid, who immediately ordered his head to be struck off. When this news reached the Caliph al-Mu'tazz at Baghdad, he at once despatched Músá b. Bughá and Muflíh with an army to 'Iráq. These met Justán the son of Wah-súdán and the Sayyids at Qazwín, defeated them, and slew many of the Daylamites, plundered their treasures, and came to Ray and thence to Qúmish and Gurgán, where they encamped. There they were joined by Ahmad b. Muḥammad السمفجعي, the vice-gerent of Muḥammad b. Táhir. Muflíh with the vanguard advanced to Tammísha. Sayyid Ḥasan b. Zayd (f. 115b) had reviewed an army of 10,000 men at Amul, and with him was the Ispahbad Pádhúsán; while Ḥasan b. Muḥammad al-'Aqíqí with his forces was at Sári, on which Muflíh advanced with his hosts. 'Aqíqí for a long while held the bridge of Sári with great valour, but was at length routed, and Muflíh came to Sári and abode there three days, after which he set out for Amul. Sayyid Ḥasan, because of the smallness of his force, retreated from Amul to Jálús, where he was deserted by most of his men, and thence went to Kalár to seek help from the Daylamites, but none shewed any eagerness to help him. Muflíh remained at Amul till Jumáda II, A. H. 255 (May—June A. D. 869), and then moved on to Jálús, halting at a place near there called 'Umar-ábad. The Daylamites, being afraid of him,

alone at Sári from Gurgán. At the beginning of Rabi' I, A. H. 254 (March, A. D. 868) Sayyid Ḥasan sent an army against the Ispahbad Qárin the son of Shahriyár, the king of the Mountains, to Hazár-garí, where they burned all the crops and destroyed the houses. When he reached Sári, Justán the son of Wah-súdán sent a trusty messenger to the Sayyid, asking him to send a representative in whom he had confidence to conquer by his aid the kingdom of Ray. So the Sayyid sent to him Ahmad b. 'Isá b. 'Alí b. al-Ḥasan, and part of the territories of Ray were captured by them, and the Sayyid came from Sári to Amul. Mázyar the son of Qárin and Shahriyár escaped from their captivity, and on Friday, the 2nd of Jumáda I, A. H. 254 (= April 29, A. D. 868) the Sayyid ordered their gaolers to receive exemplary punishment, and despatched the brother of the Masmughán Wandarand Wandád Hurmazzd السمفجى and Muḥammad b. Ibráhím to seek for the Ispahbad Qárin in the highlands; but he fled from them to Qúmish (f. 115a).

And now the Sayyids of the House of 'Alí and the Banú Háshim began to flock to Ṭabaristán from the Hijáz, Syria and 'Iráq "according to the number of the leaves on the trees," and he gave them all welcome; and whenever he rode forth, he was surrounded by 300 'Alawís with drawn swords as a body-guard. And on this the Sayyid Náṣir-ikabír Ḥasan b. 'Alí says:

كَلَّ أَبْنَ زَيْدٍ حِينَ يَغْدُو بِقَوْمٍ بُدُورٌ سَمَاءٌ حُولَةٌ أَنْجَمٌ زَفَرٌ
فَيَا بُوسَ قَوْمٌ صَبَّحَتِنِمْ خَيْلَةٌ وَّ يَا نَعَمَ قَوْمٌ نَالَبِمْ جُونَةٌ الْغَمَرُ

After this letters arrived from Ahmad b. 'Isá and Qásim b. 'Alí, who were with Justán the son of Wah-súdán, announcing that the districts of Ray, Qazwín, Abhar, and Zangán had been occupied by them, and that the people had responded to their propaganda. Then the Sayyid again sent Muḥammad b. Ibráhím to Gurgán with his standard,

and its people also submitted, and the Sayyid's rule was firmly established over a tranquil and obedient realm.

The Caliph al-Mu'tazz sends Músá b. Bughá and Muflíh with an army to Ṭabaristán.

Qásim b. 'Alí al-'Alawí, who was in 'Iráq, seized 'Abdu'lláh b. 'Aziz, one of the officers of the Táhirids, and handed him over to Faḍl b. Marzubán, who took him to Ḥasan b. Zayd, advising him to keep him securely. It was the *'Id-i-Adhá* when the prisoner was brought to the Sayyid, who immediately ordered his head to be struck off. When this news reached the Caliph al-Mu'tazz at Baghdad, he at once despatched Músá b. Bughá and Muflíh with an army to 'Iráq. These met Justán the son of Wah-súdán and the Sayyids at Qazwín, defeated them, and slew many of the Daylamites, plundered their treasures, and came to Ray and thence to Qúmish and Gurgán, where they encamped. There they were joined by Ahmad b. Muḥammad السمفجى, the vice-gerent of Muḥammad b. Táhir. Muflíh with the vanguard advanced to Tammisha. Sayyid Ḥasan b. Zayd (f. 115b) had reviewed an army of 10,000 men at Amul, and with him was the Ispahbad Pádhúsán; while Ḥasan b. Muḥammad al-'Aqíqí with his forces was at Sári, on which Muflíh advanced with his hosts. 'Aqíqí for a long while held the bridge of Sári with great valour, but was at length routed, and Muflíh came to Sári and abode there three days, after which he set out for Amul. Sayyid Ḥasan, because of the smallness of his force, retreated from Amul to Jálús, where he was deserted by most of his men, and thence went to Kalár to seek help from the Daylamites, but none shewed any eagerness to help him. Muflíh remained at Amul till Jumáda II, A. H. 255 (May—June A. D. 869), and then moved on to Jálús, halting at a place near there called 'Umar-ábád. The Daylamites, being afraid of him,

abandoned Ḥasan b. Zayd. At this juncture, however, Muṣṭih received orders from Mūsá [b.] Bughá to return at once, which he did, travelling day and night, until at Gurgán he learned that the Caliph al-Mu'tazz bi'lláh Zubayr b. al-Mutawakkil had entrusted Gurgán to Aḥmad b. Muḥammad السعدي. So they retired to 'Iráq, and the people once more began to gather round Ḥasan b. Zayd, and brought him back to Amul on Ramaḍán 22, A. H. 255 (= September 3 A. D. 869). Yazíd b. Khashm wrote bidding him come at once to Gurgán, which he did, accompanied by his army; and Aḥmad b. Muḥammad السعدي, induced by promises of favourable treatment, swore allegiance to him, and his affairs once again became prosperous and orderly.

Ya'qúb b. Layth marches against Ṭabaristán.

Ṭáhir b. 'Abdu'lláh, who was in control of Khurásán, was unable to govern his province with firmness; and at this time a man called "the Veiled Sayyid" (*Sayyid-i-Burqa'i*) revolted at Baṣra and Wāṣiṭ in Sawád. This man is better known as "the Leader of the Ethiopians" (*Ṣáhibu's-Zanj*), and 'Alí, in some of his apocalyptic writings (ملاحم), gave tidings of his appearance, saying:

يَا احْنَفْ كَانَىْ بِهِ وَقَدْ سَارَ بِالْجَيْشِ الَّذِي لَا يَكُونُ لَهُ غَيْرَ وَلَا
لَجْبٌ وَلَا قَعْقَعَةٌ (f. 116a) لَجْمٌ وَلَا جَمْجَمَةٌ خَيْلٌ يُتَبَرِّونَ الْأَرْضَ
بِأَقْدَامِهِمْ كَانَهَا أَقْدَامَ النَّعَامِ وَيَلِ لِسْكِنَتِهِمْ الْعَامِرَةَ وَالدُّورَ الْمَرْخِفَةَ الَّتِي
لَهَا اجْنَحَّةٌ كَجْنَحَّةِ النَّسُورِ وَخَرَاطِبَمْ الْفَيْلَةِ مِنْ أَوْلَئِكَ الَّذِينَ لَا
يُنَدِّبُ قَتْلِيْلَهُمْ وَلَا يُفْقَدُ غَائِبَهُمْ إِنَّ كَبُّ الدُّنْيَا لَوْجَهِهَا وَقَدْرُهَا بِقَدْرِهَا
وَنَظَرُهَا بِعَيْنِهَا،

Now it was at this juncture, while the Caliph and Ṭáhir b. 'Abdu'lláh were occupied with these matters, that Ya'qúb b. Layth, a brave and ambitious man, revolted and became

powerful. For many troubles distracted Khurásán, where rebels and robbers arose on every side, but Ya'qúb b. Layth aş-Ṣaffár ("the Copper-smith") was the most cunning and powerful of all. Originally of lowly origin and humble circumstances, he gathered a band of followers round him, and, owing to the weakness of the government, succeeded at last in dispossessing the governor of Sístán appointed by Ṭáhir b. 'Abdu'lláh. He was then proclaimed king, marched on Khurásán, and seized the territories of Muḥammad b. 'Abdu'lláh [b.] Ṭáhir, so that at length the Caliph thought it best to make over Khurásán to his control. Having taken Níshápúr he came to Dihistán, and sent secretly to سَكَنَى, promising him Gurgán and Astarábád if he would abandon Sayyid Ḥasan and help him. So on the 1st of the month of Urdí-bihisht, A. H. 260 (Oct.—Nov., A. D. 874), they came together to Sárf and fought with Ḥasan 'Aqíqí, who fled to Amul without halting, pursued by Ya'qúb b. Layth with lanterns and torches. The Sayyid Ḥasan came from Amul to Rúyán, while his followers abandoned him on all sides. Ya'qub b. Layth proceeded to Kalár, and Ḥasan retreated to Shirú. Ja'qúb sent a message to the people of Shirú promising not to enter their territories if they would hand the Sayyid over to him, but they refused, incited thereunto by Kawkabán, one of the chief men of the place, and Ya'qúb (f. 116b) was forced to retire. His baggage was cut off and plundered by the Daylamites, and he went to Kaju, and, by torture and threats, extorted from the people of Rúyán two years' taxes, so that they were left without food or clothes. He then made Layth b. Fana governor of Rúyán, Pádhúsbán governor of Ṭabaristán, and Qásim b. Muṣlim al-Khurásání, one of his own men, governor of Jálús, while he retired to Amul. Immediately the people of Jálús attacked their new governor, burned his palace, and slew all his men. News of this was brought to Ya'qub, who

returned, cut down the trees and burned the houses, and then marched on to Kandasán by way of Kalár, and thence to Rúyán. But all his camels were destroyed by the fly, rain and thunderstorms came on, and he entrenched himself in Amul. No sooner had he arrived there than he heard that Hasan b. Zayd was coming, whereupon he emerged to the coast, and Hasan fled to Kúhpaya. Ya'qúb then marched to Kurd-ábád by way of Nátil, exacted two years' taxes from the people of the plain, and thence returned to Amul and Sári. He continued altogether four months in Ṭabaristán, and then retired from Sári by way of Qúmish to the neighbourhood of Ray, and wrote to his deputy in Sístán to release the 'Alawís whom he had taken prisoner and give them money to go to their own country. One of them was Sayyid Hasan b. Zayd's brother, Abú 'Abdi'lláh Muḥammad b. Zayd.

As soon as Ya'qúb-i-Layth had quitted Ṭabaristán, Hasan b. Zayd came to Sári with an army of Daylamites, and the people again gathered round him. He advanced without halting to Gurgán, when he was met by the news that his brother, mentioned above, had been released by Ya'qúb, and was approaching. He went out to meet him with his whole army, and in Ṣafar, A. H. 263 (= November, A. D. 876) they met, and halted for the remainder of that month and the whole of Rabi' I at Gurgán, after which he returned to Ṭabaristán to see his mother. A predatory band of several thousand Turks, blood-thirsty infidels, had entered Dihistán (f. 117a) and were preparing to attack Ṭabaristán. Hasan b. Zayd was then at Gurgán. He placed Muḥammad b. Aḥmad Khurásání in command of the vanguard, consisting of 2000 Daylamites, and himself took command of the centre. They met the infidels at Shúra in Dihistán, and completely routed them. Muḥammad b. Tamím, known as Mardán-kulah was killed; and Hasan b. Zayd fought with great bravery, and

pursued the fugitives till they were all killed or dispersed. His courage on that day marked an epoch.

Revolt of Layth b. Fana against Hasan b. Zayd, and invasion of Ṭabaristán by Shári, the lieutenant of the House of Táhir.

When Hasan b. Zayd arrived at Gurgán, news came from Amul that Layth b. Fana had revolted, so he left Muḥammad b. Ibráhím al-‘Alawí at Gurgán and himself went to Amul. The Daylamites refused to obey Muḥammad b. Ibráhím, and began to loot and otherwise misconduct themselves. He therefore wrote to Hasan b. Zayd, saying, "Thou knowest the evil character and vile nature of the Daylamites, and their rebelliousness against thy authority. They will not obey me, and the people are afflicted by them." But Hasan b. Zayd was occupied with Layth b. Fana, and had sent his army under Aḥmad b. 'Isá to Láriján, because its lord, Parwíz, had asked for help, representing that Layth b. Fana had gone to Ray, and had induced its governor to attack Láriján. He therefore sent his brother, Abú 'Abdi'lláh Muḥammad b. Zayd, to Gurgán.

Now there was a certain Daylamite named Dakiyya who had fled from Muḥammad with his people, and gone to Khurásán to Shári, the lieutenant of the Táhirids, whom he informed of the anarchy and unrest which prevailed in Gurgán, urging him to attack it, and promising to help him to obtain possession of it. So Shári came from Isfará'in to Gurgán, and the Daylamites entirely deserted Muḥammad b. Zayd and Muḥammad b. Ibráhím, and went over to the invader. The two Sayyids came to Amul, and waited until Shári desired to provision his army, and sent out the Daylamites, unarmed, to forage for provisions (f. 117b). One of the chief men of Gurgán named Isháq said to Shári, "Do

returned, cut down the trees and burned the houses, and then marched on to Kandasán by way of Kalár, and thence to Rúyán. But all his camels were destroyed by the fly, rain and thunderstorms came on, and he entrenched himself in Amul. No sooner had he arrived there than he heard that Hasan b. Zayd was coming, whereupon he emerged to the coast, and Hasan fled to Kúhpáya. Ya'qúb then marched to Kurd-ábád by way of Nátil, exacted two years' taxes from the people of the plain, and thence returned to Amul and Sári. He continued altogether four months in Tabaristán, and then retired from Sári by way of Qúmish to the neighbourhood of Ray, and wrote to his deputy in Sístán to release the 'Alawís whom he had taken prisoner and give them money to go to their own country. One of them was Sayyid Hasan b. Zayd's brother, Abú 'Abdi'llah Muhammad b. Zayd.

As soon as Ya'qúb-i-Layth had quitted Tabaristán, Hasan b. Zayd came to Sári with an army of Daylamites, and the people again gathered round him. He advanced without halting to Gurgán, when he was met by the news that his brother, mentioned above, had been released by Ya'qúb, and was approaching. He went out to meet him with his whole army, and in Şafar, A. H. 263 (= November, A. D. 876) they met, and halted for the remainder of that month and the whole of Rabi' I at Gurgán, after which he returned to Tabaristán to see his mother. A predatory band of several thousand Turks, blood-thirsty infidels, had entered Dihistán (f. 117a) and were preparing to attack Tabaristán. Hasan b. Zayd was then at Gurgán. He placed Muhammad b. Ahmad Khurásání in command of the vanguard, consisting of 2000 Daylamites, and himself took command of the centre. They met the infidels at Shúra in Dihistán, and completely routed them. Muhammad b. Tamím, known as Mardán-kulah was killed; and Hasan b. Zayd fought with great bravery, and

pursued the fugitives till they were all killed or dispersed. His courage on that day marked an epoch.

Revolt of Layth b. Fana against Hasan b. Zayd,
and invasion of Tabaristán by Shári, the
lieutenant of the House of Táhir.

When Hasan b. Zayd arrived at Gurgán, news came from Amul that Layth b. Fana had revolted, so he left Muhammad b. Ibráhím al-'Alawí at Gurgán and himself went to Amul. The Daylamites refused to obey Muhammad b. Ibráhím, and began to loot and otherwise misconduct themselves. He therefore wrote to Hasan b. Zayd, saying, "Thou knowest the evil character and vile nature of the Daylamites, and their rebelliousness against thy authority. They will not obey me, and the people are afflicted by them." But Hasan b. Zayd was occupied with Layth b. Fana, and had sent his army under Ahmad b. 'Isá to Láriján, because its lord, Parwíz, had asked for help, representing that Layth b. Fana had gone to Ray, and had induced its governor to attack Láriján. He therefore sent his brother, Abú 'Abdi'llah Muhammad b. Zayd, to Gurgán.

Now there was a certain Daylamite named Dakiyya who had fled from Muhammad with his people, and gone to Khurásán to Shári, the lieutenant of the Táhirids, whom he informed of the anarchy and unrest which prevailed in Gurgán, urging him to attack it, and promising to help him to obtain possession of it. So Shári came from Isfará'in to Gurgán, and the Daylamites entirely deserted Muhammad b. Zayd and Muhammad b. Ibráhím, and went over to the invader. The two Sayyids came to Amul, and waited until Shári desired to provision his army, and sent out the Daylamites, unarmed, to forage for provisions (f. 117b). One of the chief men of Gurgán named Isháq said to Shári, "Do

not give wealth to the Daylamites without good cause, or else they will deal treacherously with thee, as they have ever dealt with their *amirs* and rulers; for no one hath experienced at their hands aught but insolence, oppression, and ungenerous conduct." The Daylamites were gathered together at Sulaymánábad; and the people of Gurgán, gentle and simple, were all afraid of the barbarities they might perpetrate. So Shári and Isháq ordered them all to be put to the sword, and in one day 3000 of them were slain. News of this was brought to Ḥasan b. Zayd, and he was filled with malicious delight.

When it became known to Layth b. Fana that Shári had taken Gurgán, he induced the Turk, who was the governor of Ray, to let him go to Ṭabaristán to take the country for him, and was permitted to proceed to Láriján. When he arrived, he found that Ahmád b. 'Isá and the Masmughán were both there, and had stopped all the roads, and cried threats and imprecations at them from the mountains. Layth b. Fana put his horse at the river, but was unable to cross. The Turk was afraid and said, "Surely he intends some treachery towards me." So he ordered him to be seized and his head to be cut off; and this he sent to Ḥasan b. Zayd, offering at the same time his apologies for having invaded the country. Immediately after this news arrived that Shári, having collected much wealth, was about to leave Gurgán, and the Sayyid Ḥasan at once proceeded thither with his army. Shári fled to Khurásán, while Ḥasan b. Zayd entered Gurgán, slew many of the common people, and plundered their property.

Revolt of the Ispahbad Rustam the son of
Qárin the son of Shahriyár and his
relations with Ḥasan b. Zayd.

At this time the Daylamites were plundering, stealing, and causing great trouble in Gurgán, breaking into the

houses of Muslims by night to rob and do evil, so that even unto Níshápúr men were in terror of them. So Ḥasan-i-Zayd caused the hands and feet of a thousand of them to be cut off in Gurgán, in consequence of which some thousand of his followers deserted him and joined Rustam the son of Qárin, who, though (f. 118a) ostensibly declaring himself to be loyal to the Sayyid, was really bent on rebellion against his authority. When these Daylamites joined Rustam the son of Qárin, he had not sufficient food wherewith to feed them, so he suffered them to loot the countryside in search of provisions. Qásim b. 'Alí, who was at Qúmish, wrote to him informing him that Muḥammad b. Mahdí b. Nítrak was marching against him from Níshápúr, and at the same time asked for help from Ḥasan b. Zayd. Qásim had not the least suspicion of the intentions of Rustam, and was quite off his guard, when the latter suddenly and treacherously attacked and captured him, imprisoned him in the castle of Shah Dízh in Hazár-garí, and seized Qúmish. Sayyid Qásim died in the castle. Then Rustam sent to the governor of Níshápúr, Ahmád b. 'Abdu'lláh Khujistáni¹, telling him that the affairs of Ḥasan b. Zayd were in a precarious state, and asking for his help. Sayyid Ḥasan plundered Qúmish and chastised Rustam; but the death of his brother-in-law, Muḥammad b. Ibráhím b. 'Alí b. 'Abdu'r-Rahmán, broke his spirit, for he loved him greatly and held him in high esteem. All the army of Sayyid Ḥasan went over to his brother Abú 'Abdi'lláh Muḥammad b. Zayd, who ordered them to attack the Ispahbad Rustam. When they had advanced one stage, the army of Níshápúr under Khujistáni had reached Gurgán, so he sent messengers to turn his brother back, abandoned Gurgán, and retired into Tammísha. Khujistáni pursued him to Ribát-i-Ḥafṣ, captured his treasures and baggage, and took many prisoners, but slew no one.

¹ See my translation of the *Chahár Maqáta*, pp. 43—44.

Muhammed [b.] Zayd learned at Júhína that his brother had departed, and at Sári rumour reached him that Hasan b. Zayd had been taken captive. Hasan b. Muhammed 'Aqíqí assembled the people and received their oaths of allegiance to himself, beheading all who refused to take this oath. But at Sári he was met by Táhir b. Ibráhím [b.] Khalíl coming from Hasan b. Zayd, from whom he learned that Sayyid Hasan himself was approaching. Thereupon he fled from Sári and joined the Ispahbad Rustam the son of Qárin, and though Hasan b. Zayd tried to win him back by kind messages, he returned no answer, but continued with the Ispahbad till Khujistání had established himself in Bakrábád in Gurgán and collected supplies. The Ispahbad remained at Astarábád until Khujistání went to Níshápúr, and the men of Gurgán attached themselves to 'Aqíqí, who protected them from the oppression of Khujistání, and excused them their taxes, and all of them swore allegiance to him. But presently Hasan b. Zayd collected an army in Tabaristán, who, by threes and by fours, began to set out for Astarábád. When he reached the village of Námina in Panjáh-hazár, he chose out 500 horsemen, and made a night attack on Astarábád, so that at day-break he surprised Rustam, who only succeeded in escaping on foot into the highlands. Hasan b. Zayd, without delaying, set out for Gurgán, where 'Aqíqí knew nothing of what had happened to Rustam at Astarábád. The Sayyid therefore took him quite by surprise, so that he fled with only three horsemen to the plains, pursued by Muhammed b. Zayd, until he was finally captured and brought before Sayyid Hasan. As soon as his eyes fell on the Sayyid, he prayed for quarter, but the Sayyid, averting his face, bade Turk-i-Rúmí to cut off his head, after which they wrapped his body in a mantle and buried it in the Guebres' cemetery. Then the Sayyid sent his brother Muhammed b. Zayd into the Ispahbad's highlands to

pursue him, until at length, despairing, he sent messenger after messenger to beg for quarter, till at length the Sayyid wrote to his brother bidding him to spare the fugitive, but to seize all his possessions, and exact pledges that he would not in future maintain an army, all of which Muhammed b. Zayd duly performed. On his return, his brother invested him with the standard and drum of authority, and sent him to Gurgán.

Death of Sayyid Hasan b. Zayd.

This year the Sayyid fell sick, so that he was unable to sit his horse (f. 119a) and he continued thus sick for a year, and finally expired on Monday, Rajab 3, A. H. 270 (= January 6, A. D. 884), twenty years after he first appeared in revolt. During his year's illness he bade Abu'l-Husayn Ahmad b. Muhammed b. Ibráhím, known as al-Qá'im, who was his son in law, to take from the people of Tabaristán the oath of allegiance to his brother Abú 'Abd'illáh Muhammed b. Zayd.

Reign of Muhammed b. Zayd over Tabaristán, and Revolt of Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn.

Muhammed b. Zayd, with the title *ad-Dá'i al-Kabir* ("the Great Missionary") received the oath of allegiance from the people of Tabaristán. He was at the time of his brother's death in Gurgán, and his son-in-law, Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn, seized the money which was in the treasury and expended it in inducing the people to swear allegiance to himself, which most of the Daylamite chiefs did. He was also joined by the Ispahbad Rustam the son of Qárin and Padhúsban.

When Muhammed b. Zayd heard the news of his brother's death, he advanced on Amul with his army, many of whom had been secretly won over to the interest of

Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn, who tried to persuade some of them, such as Laythám the son of Wardán, and Abú Mansúr Mahdí b. Mukhayyas, to slay Muḥammad b. Zayd at Ribáṭ-i-Hafs. They refused to kill him, having eaten his bread and salt, but deserted him, and turned back to Gurgán. He too turned back thither, but the inhabitants refused to admit him, and he therefore took up his quarters in the village of Zawín. Abu'l-Husayn sent money and robes of honour for the people of the city, and bade them let Muḥammad b. Zayd remain where he was; and he dared not put his head outside Zawín until Ráfi' b. Harthama returned defeated from Khurásán, and sent for Mahdí b. Mukhayyas, who was his servant, to come and meet him. Mahdí paid no heed to this message, whereupon Ráfi', divining Muḥammad b. Zayd's condition, sent (f. 119b) trusty men to him, brought him to his quarters and fought and defeated Mahdí b. Mukhayyas, who fled to Khurásán. Laythám-i-Daylam went to Abu'l-Husayn, and 'Alí b. Surkháb was taken prisoner by Mahdí, but fled from him on the day of his defeat. Ráfi' handed over Gurgán to Muḥammad b. Zayd and returned to Khurásán. One day Abu'l-Husayn began to oppress his followers in order to enrich himself, and these consequently wrote in secret to Muḥammad b. Zayd invoking his assistance. He, having collected an army, arrived at Sári on Wednesday, the first of Jumádá I, A. H. 271 (= October 25, A. D. 884), and Abu'l-Husayn, who was there, fled from him to Amul, whence he started at night to join Laythám and Nu'mán at Jálús and go to Daylam. On the Sunday Muḥammad b. Zayd reached Amul, whence on the Tuesday he moved on to the village of Banafsh, whence he proceeded by night to Jálús, and there seized Abu'l-Husayn, with Laythám and the other Daylamites who were with him, with much spoil. That night he went on to Khwájak, and reached Amul, where, on Friday, the 6th of

Jumáda I, he was crowned king. Abu'l-Husayn, whose power had endured ten months, was cast into bonds, and pardon was proclaimed to his agents and officers, who thereupon submitted, and were made to render account of the moneys they had collected for their master. He also brought in Abu'l-Husayn's sister, who was the widow of his late brother Ḥasan b. Zayd, and took from her all her jewels and gold ornaments, after which he released Abu'l-Husayn, bidding all those from whom he had exacted money recover it from him. Thereupon the jurisconsults of Amul bore witness against him of exactions amounting to a million *dirhams*, upon which he was again cast into bondage, and sent with Laythám-i-Daylam to Sári, after which no one ever saw them again, and it was said that they were killed on the road thither.

So soon as Muḥammad b. Zayd was thus established as ruler of Ṭabaristán, he set out for the highlands against the Ispahbad Rustam the son of (f. 120a) Qárin, drove him out of the kingdom, and sent him to 'Amr b. Layth the Ṣaffári, who interceded for him; and pardon was granted to him on condition that he should swear henceforth to maintain no army, and to send all that he had to Muḥammad b. Zayd, and to pay all the tax and tribute which he had withheld. And Muḥammad b. Zayd established his capital at Gurgán where many retainers gathered round him, although he was unable to give him pay.

How Muḥammad b. Zayd attacked Ray; and what befel him with Ráfi' b. Harthama, and how an army invaded Ṭabaristán.

In Rabi' I, A. H. 272 (= Aug.—Sept., A. D. 885), Asatákín the Turk being governor of Ray, Muḥammad b. Zayd marched from Gurgán to Dámghán, and thence to Samnan and Khwár. A battle took place between him and the

army of 'Iráq at Wah-rádhán, near Ray, in which Muham-mad b. Zayd was defeated and fled to Láriján. Ráfi^c b. Har-thama then invaded Gurgán, but troubles in Khurásán obliged him to go to Níshápur. In A. H. 273 (A. D. 886—887) Mu-hammad b. Zayd returned to Amul, and celebrated the circumcision of his son Zayd, whom he nominated as his successor, joining his name with his own on the coinage and in the *khutba*. On the arrival of Ráfi^c in Khurásán the troubles there ceased, and the quarrel between Naṣr and Ismá'íl, the sons of Núh the Sámánid, was terminated. Ráfi^c then marched against Khwárazm, with the people of which he had already waged war; and carried off thence ten thousand (f. 120b) men as hostages.

What befel between Muham-mad b. Zayd and the
Ispahbad Rustam the son of Qárin; and
how an army invaded Ṭabaristán.

Rustum, dispossessed by the Sayyid, fled to Ráfi^c, and seven months later returned to Ṭabaristán with him at the head of an army. — The Sayyid, unable to withstand them, retreated from Gurgán to the castle of Juhína, where he was besieged for six months. At the end of this period he left a *kotwál* in charge of the castle, and himself escaped to Tammísha. Soon afterwards the castle capitulated to Ráfi^c, before whom the Sayyid fell back on Daylamán. In the beginning of Dhu'l-Hijja, A. H. 277 (= March, A. D. 891) he was still at Kajú, while the people suffered the direst distress from the invaders. The Daylamites came to the Sayyid's assistance; and Justán the son of Wah-súdán descended from the highlands to help him. Ráfi^c commanded his governor at Jálús, Muham-mad b. Hárún, to remain within his fortifi-cations, and sent Rustam son of Qárin, Muham-mad b. Aḥmad Wandawayh, 'Alí b. al-Hasan al-Marwázi, 'Abdu'lláh b. al-Hasan, and the son of the Ispahbad Shahriyár b. Pádhúsbán

to Jálús by the sea-shore, while he himself came to Ahlam. (f. 121a) Muham-mad b. Hárún thereupon came out of Jálús and pursued his foes. Owing to the exactions of Ráfi^c pro-visions become scarce and dear. At the beginning of Ṣafar, A. H. 278 (middle of May, A. D. 891) Ráfi^c marched from Jálús by way of Ṭálaqán in pursuit of Justán the son of Wah-súdán, and laid waste his territory. Finally Justán promised not to help the Sayyid, whereupon Ráfi^c withdrew to Qazwín. The Sayyid now marched on Gílán, while Ráfi^c came from Qazwín to Ray. Al-Mu'taṣid bī'lláh, who succeeded about this time to the Caliphate, sent a messenger to summon Ráfi^c to his presence, but Ráfi^c seized the messenger and imprisoned him, though he afterwards let him go. The Ca-liph then appointed Abu'l-'Abbás Aḥmad b. [‘Abd] al-'Azíz b. Abú Dulaf al-Ijli governor of 'Iráq, and ordered him to give battle to Ráfi^c, who was defeated with heavy loss by the Caliph's troops on the river Kulahwár on Friday, Dhu'l-Qa'da 18, and was compelled to fall back (f. 121b) on Ṭabaristán by way of Wíma.

Ráfi^c makes peace with Muham-mad b. Zayd.

When Ráfi^c reached Mihrawán, he heard that the Caliph al-Mu'taṣid had given the government of Níshápur to 'Amr b. Layth, whereupon he took the oath of allegiance to Mu-hammad b. Zayd, on condition that he should hold Gurgán. On Tuesday, the 5th of Rabi' II, the latter came to Amul, and Ráfi^c went to Gurgán. At this juncture news arrived that Aḥmad al-Ijli, the Caliph's governor, had died at Ray, and that his son had succeeded him. Thereupon, on the 7th of Jumádá I, Ráfi^c marched on Ray, attacked and defeated him, and sent his army to Kuh-páya. A month later al-Mu'taṣid sent his son¹ to Ray, whereupon Ráfi^c abandoned the country.

¹ [i. e. 'Alí, afterwards al-Muktaṣi. He was invested with the Government of Ray in Rajab, A. H. 281 (= September, A. D. 894) by his father, who

Ibn [Abi'l-] Aşbagh, the deputy of the Caliph's son, ruled justly, and reduced the country to order. In this same year Bakr b. 'Abdu'l-'Azíz al-'Ijlí came to Sayyid Muhammád b. Zayd at Amul, and was received by him with much honour and many gifts, including a million *dirhams* made up into a hundred bags, and was finally given the government of Rúyán and Jálús. On his arrival at Natil, however, he was poisoned in some sherbet (فَلَعْنَى), and was buried there at the Bridge of Laythám. Ráfi', returning defeated to Gurgán, wished to attack 'Amr b. Layth, encouraged thereto by an officer who had deserted from that Amír. He besieged Níshápúr, but 'Amr remained within the walls. While fighting was going on round the city between the troops of Ráfi' and those of Muhammád b. Hárún, Abú Naṣr-i-Ṭabarí, Mahdí b. Mukhayyas and (f. 122a) Faḍl b. Ja'far, 'Amr with 5000 men suddenly attacked and defeated them. Ráfi' and 'Amr b. Layth both sought help from the Sayyid, but he refused to help Ráfi', who, after various further misfortunes from rain and flood, was compelled to make peace and to renew his treaties with him.

How Ráfi' took captive the Ispahbad Rustam.

Ráfi' soon informed the Ispahbad Rustam that he had no intention of observing his new treaty with the Sayyid, and, on Rustam's allying himself with 'Amr b. Layth, proceeded to seize him and put him in bonds, confiscated all his property, extorted large sums of money from his retainers, and gave his country to Abú Naṣr-i-Ṭabarí. In Ramadán, A. H. 282 (= October—November, A. D. 895) Rustam died in his bondage.

In this year the Sayyid Muhammád b. Zayd gave money to Ráfi' to induce him to adopt the white badge and at the same time appointed Aḥmad b. Abi'l-Asbagh as his son's *káhib*. See Ṭabarí, III, p. 2140. A. G. E.].

standard of the 'Alawís, and to exact from the men of Gurgán, Dihistán (f. 122b) and Jájarm the oath of allegiance to him; while he on his part sent the Sayyid a share of Rustam's plundered possessions. A quarrel now [redacted] between Muhammád b. Wahsúdán and 'Ali b. Surkháb, and the former, having killed some of the latter's men, went to Kílárján, and was reported to have cast off his allegiance. Ráfi' again marched against 'Amr b. Layth, but was again defeated, and fled to Khwárazm, the inhabitants of which city, having an ancient grudge against him, seized him, cut off his head, and sent it to 'Amr b. Layth, who sent it on to the Caliph. After this all Ṭabaristán from Gurgán to Gilán became the Sayyid's secure possession. In A. H. 282 (A. D. 895—6) news arrived that Ismá'il b. Aḥmad the Sámánid had captured 'Amr b. Layth and put him to death, and the Sayyid was now freed from all anxiety; but just as his power, glory, fame and good repute seemed to be at their height, calamity befel him, even as the poet says:

لَدَقَ كَسْفُ الْبَدْرِ عِنْدَ تَمَّامَهْ.

Cause of the Martyrdom of Sayyid Muhammád b. Zayd in his war with Muhammád b. Hárún.

Ismá'il b. Aḥmad the Sámánid sent Muhammád b. Hárún with an army (f. 123a) against Ṭabaristán. Sayyid Muhammád b. Zayd, confident in his power (for he had 20,000 men with him, and his antagonist only 3000), attacked the centre of his enemy's army with a mere handful of men, and was the first person slain. His head was cut off, his great army scattered, and his son Abu'l-Ḥusayn taken prisoner on Friday, Shawwál 5, A. H. 287 (= October 3, A. D. 900). The Sayyid's headless body was buried at Gurgan in a place still known as Gür-i-Dá'i ("the Propagandist's Grave"), and his head was sent to Bukhára. He reigned in all sixteen

years. His son Zayd was for a long while kept a prisoner by Isma'il b. Ahmad the Sámánid at Bukhárá, whence he sent these verses to his friends in Ṭabaristán:

أَسْجَنْ وَقَيْدَ وَأَشْتِيَافَ وَغَرْبَةَ، وَنَائِيْ حَبِيبَ إِنَّ ذَلِكَ تَقْيِيلُ،
أَيَّ شَجَرَاتِ الْجَوْنِ فِي شَطَ غَرْمَنِ، لَشْوَقِي إِلَيْ أَفْيَائِكُنْ طَوِيلُ،
الْأَقْدَلُ إِلَيْ شَمَ الْبَنْفَسَجِ فِي أَنْصَبِي، بِخَشْكُورَدُ مِنْ قَبْلِ الْمِيَانِ سَبِيلُ،

These verses were shewn to Isma'il b. Ahmad the Sámánid, who was so much affected by them that he released his captive, saying, "Thou hast thy choice of returning to Ṭabaristán or of remaining here." He replied, "The affairs of Ṭabaristán have gone beyond the point that there should be any place for me there; it is best for me to remain here." And so he lived, died and was buried in Bukhárá. Three sons of his are mentioned in the genealogical tree of the House of Abú Ṭálíb (شجرة أنساب خليفة), *viz.* Abú 'Alí Isma'il b. Zayd b. Muḥammad b. Zayd, who migrated to Bukhárá; Abú 'Abdi'lláh Muḥammad ar-Riḍá (f. 123b), whose descendants are settled at Baghdad; and Abú Muḥammad al-Hasan b. Zayd b. Muḥammad b. Zayd.

Account of Muḥammad b. Hárún and the rule of Isma'il b. Ahmad the Sámánid.

Muḥammad b. Hárún, having subdued Gurgán, set out for Amul and Sári, reaching the first named city on a Friday in the month of Tír, A. H. 287 (A. D. 900), and reigned for a year and six months, till Isma'il b. Ahmad the Sámánid, having subdued the whole of Khurásán, marched against Ṭabaristán. Muḥammad b. Hárún refused to submit to his authority, and retired to Daylamán. Isma'il encamped at a place called Ashlá Dasht, near Amul, in the plain of Líkáni, and administered such justice as was almost unknown in

Ṭabaristán, restoring to the nobles and gentry the property of which they had been robbed by the Sayyids and others during the last fifty years. Thus he restored —

1,000,000	dirhams	to the children of Ibráhím Khalil;
600,000	"	Ibráhím b. Isháq al-Faqíh;
500,000	"	Muhammad b. al-Mughíra of Rúyán;
500,000	"	Hárún b. 'Alí Abú Sádiq (see p. 74 <i>supra</i>);
200,000	"	Muhammad b. as-Sirrí;
300,000	"	Muqátil, cousin of the above;
500,000	"	the Ispahbad of Kalár;
300,000	"	Qutquṭí of Sári;
700,000	"	Qárin, Aparwíz and Khushk Khayán;
1,200,000	"	the family of as-Şayfar (so A.; B. has as-Safír);
100,000	"	Surkháb the son of Jastán;
700,000	"	Ibráhím and Muḥammad, sons of juriconsults, Ibráhím b. Mihrán, his brother Khalífa, Mansúr and Jalwánán, all of Tarícha.

He also restored the possessions of the poor and reduced their taxes, and so won the affection and support of all. This took place at the end of A. H. 288 and the beginning of A. H. 289 (end of A. D. 901).

The Rebellion of Sayyid Náṣir-i-Kabír (f. 124a).

Sayyid Náṣir-i-Kabír's name was Abú Muḥammad al-Hasan b. 'Alí, and he revolted in Gílán and Daylamán, declaring himself "the Avenger" (*ath-Thá'ir*) of his predecessor, Sayyid Muḥammad b. Zayd, called *Da'i'l-Haqq* ("the Propagandist of the Truth"). Isma'il the Sámánid sent against him his son Ahmad and his cousin Abu'l-Abbás 'Abdu'lláh b. Muḥammad b. Núh. The armies met at a place called Falás,

and the Daylamites were defeated and two thousand of them slain, amongst them the fathers of the afterwards celebrated Mákán [b.] Kákí and of Hasan [b.] Fírúzán, the subsequent rulers of Gíl and Daylam.

Ismá'íl the Sámánid entrusts the government of Tabaristán to his cousin Abu'l-Abbás 'Abdulláh b. Muḥammad b. Núḥ b. Asad.

Ismá'íl the Sámánid, having entrusted the government of Tabaristán to his cousin Abu'l-Abbás, set out for 'Iráq to seek for Muḥammad b. Hárún. On reaching Samnán, he received tidings of the death of the Caliph al-Mu'taṣid (A. H. 289 = A. D. 902). Muḥammad b. Hárún effected a junction with Justán [b.] Wah-súdán, and both swore allegiance to Sayyid Náṣir-i-Kabír. In A. H. 290 (A. D. 903) the latter resolved on subjugating Tabaristán. Abu'l-Abbás summoned to his aid the Ispahbad Shahriyár, son of Pádhúsbán; the Ispahbad Sharwín, son of Rustam, king of the mountains; and the nephew of the latter, Parwíz, the lord of Láriján, and further wrote to Ismá'íl the Sámánid asking for help. In the month of Bahman, A. H. 299 (So A. H. 289) Muḥammad b. Hárún, Justán [b.] Wahsúdán, and Sayyid Náṣir reached Tamanjáda, and encamped in a plain known as Kázar. The war lasted forty days, and the people of Amul in fear sent their children and goods to the country villages. At length the army of Abu'l-Abbás seemed to be defeated, and began to flee in rout to Mámtír, but he, with Shahriyár (f. 124b) and Kawkabán of Daylam, hurled himself upon the centre of the army of Muḥammad b. Hárún, who, deeming the victory already won, had removed one foot from his stirrup and crossed it over his horse's neck. His army, taken thus unawares, was routed, and fled to Anúshadádhán.

Ismá'íl the Sámánid had sent his son Aḥmad to help Abu'l-Abbás, but he tarried on the way, hoping that his

cousin might be defeated. Abu'l-Abbás complained of this to Ismá'íl, who recalled Aḥmad to Bukhárá, and reproached him, saying, "Thou pretendest that if Tabaristán be lost, no harm will accrue to Bukhárá. Dost thou not know that, should such a thing happen, we should no longer be safe here?" Abu'l-Abbás then went to Ray, and sent to Fáris, governor of Gurgán, bidding him be on his guard until Muḥammad b. Hárún's death. Fáris forwarded this letter to Bukhárá, and requested Ismá'íl to send him his insignia, standard and ring. Muḥammad b. Hárún again collected an army and came to Amul. Fáris spread abroad a rumour that Ismá'íl was come, and on the day of battle stationed one of his officers dressed in Ismá'íl's robes, wearing his insignia, and bearing his standard in the centre of the army. Then he came to Muḥammad b. Hárún with ten men, saying, "O man, art thou mad to come and draw the sword against thy master? Lo, he sends me with his army and his signet-ring, promising thee pardon and safety and the government of this province." Muḥammad b. Hárún, seeing the signet-ring and other insignia, was confounded, and said to his men, "Do you remain where you are;" (f. 125a) then he said to Fáris, "Advance, let us go to the Master!" Thus Fáris brought him to the centre of his own army, where he at once cast him to the ground, put him in fetters, and carried him off prisoner. Of his army, some joined Fáris, others went to Baghdad, and the remainder stayed in Tabaristán. Muḥammad b. Hárún was carried to Bu-khárá, paraded round the town, and then immured and starved to death. And so long as Ismá'íl the Sámánid lived, Abu'l-Abbás ruled Tabaristán from Gurgán to Gilan.

Aḥmad b. Ismá'íl the Sámánid sends Salám to govern Tabaristán.

Ismá'íl on his death was succeeded by his son Aḥmad,

in A. H. 294 (= A. D. 906—7). After two years and a few months he dismissed Abu'l-‘Abbás, whom he hated, from the government of Țabaristán, and in A. H. 297 (= A. D. 909—910) sent to succeed him a Turk named Salám. His father's officers, such as Abú Șálih Mansúr and Fáris, were disgusted at this, and wished to swear allegiance to Abu'l-‘Abbás, who sought to retire to Gurgán to effect a junction with Fáris, but was stopped by Hurmazd-Káma, the lord of Tammísha, Rustam the son of Qárin, and the Ispahbad Shahriyár. He therefore returned to Amul, and tried to go thence by Kajú and Rúyán to Ray, but the Ispahbad Shahriyár met him at Injír and persuaded him to refrain from any act of rebellion. At this juncture Muḥammad b. Hajar arrived as an ambassador from Ahmád b. Ismá'il the Sámánid, bringing a robe of honour and conciliatory messages (f. 125b), and conducted him to Bukhára, where the Sámánid nobles advised that he should be treated with honour and sent at the head of 30,000 horsemen to ‘Iráq. In Jumáda I, A. H. 297 (= January—February, A. D. 910) Salám the Turk came to Amul, on the first day of the old Persian month of Adhar, and governed the country for 9 months and 22 days, till one day Abú Ahmád Zanrás (B. "Zanráshan") of Násirábád came before him to complain of the exorbitant taxes which he was compelled to pay, and was answered by blows; whereupon he rushed out and raised the people against the Turk, whom, after he had fired the bázár and repelled them for three days and nights, they drove out of the city.

Aḥmād b. Ismá'il sends Aḥmād b. Núḥ
to govern Țabaristán.

Thereupon Abu'l-‘Abbás Ahmád was made governor of Țabaristán, and he was accompanied by the son of Dhu'r-Riyásatayn.

The Russians come over the sea to plunder
Țabaristán.

This year 16 ships filled with Russians came to Abasgún, as they had already done in the time of Sayyid Ḥasan b. Zayd, who defeated and slew them. This time they wasted and looted Abasgún and the adjacent coasts, and carried off or slew many Musulmáns. The governor of Sári, Abu'd-Ḏarghám Ahmád b. al-Qásim, wrote news of this to Abu'l-‘Abbás. Next year the Russians returned in greater force, burned Sári and Panjáh-hazár, and carried off many prisoners. Then they sailed to Chashma-Rúd in Daylamán; but, while some of them were on land, a number of the people of Gílán descended to the sea-shore (f. 126a), burned their ships, and slew those who had landed. Shírwánsháh, King of the Khazars, hearing of this, intercepted such of their ships as had escaped and destroyed them and their crews, and thenceforth the marauding raids of the Russians were stopped. Abu'l-‘Abbás Ahmád b. Núḥ died in Șafar, A. H. 298 (= October, A. D. 910).

Aḥmād b. Ismá'il sends Muḥammad b.
Saqúk to Țabaristán.

When news of the death of Abu'l-‘Abbás reached Ahmád the Sámánid he made Muḥammad b. Saqúk, who was then at Ray, governor of Țabaristán, and sent his wazír Abu'l-Faḍl Muḥammad b. ‘Abdu'lláh al-Bal'famí from Bukhára to meet him. They met near Amul at a place called Bashir, and Muḥammad b. Ilísa was also there.

Rebellion of Sayyid Násir-i-Kábir.

This Sayyid, whose name was Abú Muḥammad al-Ḥasan b. ‘Alí, had for some time been engaged in study and

teaching in Gílán. On the return of al-Bal'camí to Bukhárá, and the arrival of Muḥammad b. Sa'�uk at Amul, the people of Fajam, Maraz, and all Gíl and Daylam flocked to him. He sent his son Abu'l-Husayn Ah̄mad to Rúyán, and thence expelled the Sámánid governor Muhim. Násir-i-Kabír then went to Kalár, and there received the allegiance of its Ispahbad Muḥammad b. al-Hasan. Thence he proceeded to Gúr-Shír and Jálús, sending on his cousin Ḥasan b. al-Qásim with the vanguard to take Jálús. Muḥammad b. Sa'�uk had advanced to Búrábád with 15,000 men. Then a battle was fought (f. 126b), in which Ibn Sa'�uk was defeated, and many of his soldiers slain. On a Sunday in Jumáda II, A. H. 301 (= January, A. D. 914) Sayyid Násir advanced to Jálús, captured Abu'l-Wafá Khalífa b. Núh, slew the Khurásání garrison, and razed the fortress to the ground. Ibn Sa'�uk fled by way of Amul, Málíka Dasht, Sári and Gurgán to Ray. Two days later Sayyid Násir came to Amul and established himself in the Palace formerly occupied by Ḥasan b. Zayd. He treated all with the utmost justice, pardoned such as had offended him, and received the allegiance of the people of Amul and the neighbourhood. Then 'Abdu'lláh b. al-Hasan raised the white standard at Sári, and summoned the people to support Sayyid Násir.

Quarrel between the Ispahbad Shahriyár and Násir, and arrival of an army from Bu-khárá to subdue Sayyid Násir.

'Aqíqí joined Sayyid Násir, and, having been given an army of Gílis and Daylamís, was sent to fight the Ispahbad Shahriyár. Between Aram and Kúlá, however, he fell into an ambush prepared for him by Shahriyár, and was slain. His troops fled, and his head was sent by Shahriyár to Ibn Sa'�uk. When news of Sayyid Násir's rising power reached

Bukhárá, Ah̄mad the Sámánid sent Muḥammad b. 'Abdu'l-Āzíz to Ȣabaristán, but forty days after his arrival there he was defeated by Sayyid Násir, whose power now became paramount over Ȣabaristán. He wished to raise a tax of one-tenth on all produce, but the people complained, and he desisted from his intention. Ah̄mad the Sámánid collected 30,000 of his own troops and sent to Turkistán for 10,000 more, intending to "transport the very earth of Ȣabaristán to Bukhárá" (f. 127a), but when he had only gone two stages on his journey, his attendants murdered him at midnight as he slept, and Sayyid Násir was for the moment left unmolested. Soon afterwards the Caliph al-Muqtadir bi'lláh appointed Ah̄mad the Sámánid's son Naṣr b. Ah̄mad b. Isma'īl (Naṣr I) regent of Khurásán in place of his father, and he, incited by the messengers of Hurmazd-Káma and Sharwín the son of Rustam, sent Ilyás b. Ilísá as-Sughdí at the head of 10,000 men to Ȣabaristán. When these reached Tammísha, Abu'l-Qásim Ja'far b. al-Hasan b. 'Ali an-Násir was at Sári, with a thousand men. Entrenching himself there, he wrote to his father informing him of the Sámánid advance. Abu'l-Husayn Ah̄mad [b.] an-Násir went to Gilán and Daylamán, and spent much money in collecting an army, while the Ispahbad Shahriyár pitched his camp at Wínábád above Sári, still retaining the black standard and draperies (of the 'Abbásids), though he sent reinforcements to Sayyid Abu'l-Qásim. An undecided battle took place at Sári between Sayyid Abu'l-Qásim and Ilyás b. Ilísá, and the Sámánid troops at length retired, leaving Ȣabaristán to Sayyid Násir-i-Kabír. The Ispahbad Sharwín also made peace with him, whilst Hurmazd-Káma retired to Astarábád, and the Sayyid handed over most of the administration to his cousin Abú Muḥammad al-Hasan b. al-Qásim, whom he set over his own sons, who were thereby filled with envy, as one of them, Sayyid Abu'l-

Husayn Ahmād b. an-Nāṣir, commonly known as Sāḥibu'l-Faysh ("the Commander in Chief") says in a poem (f. 127b):

فِيَّا عَجِبَنَا مِنْ قُرْبِ أَسْبَابِ مِبْعَدِي وَ قِلَّةِ مُسْعِدِي
فِيَّا دُولَةُ قَامَتْ عَلَيْيَ جَوْرَهَا
فَرِ الْعَدْلُ إِلَّا قَسْمَةُ بَسْوِيَّةٍ
فَمَا بَلِ الْأَنْرَابِيِّ رَفَعَتْ رُوْسِهِمْ
فَانْ رَزَقُوا مِنْكَ أَنْتَنِي قَدْ حُرْمَنَةُ
وَلَمْ أَنْتَ دُنْيَاكَ دُونِي عَقَابَةُ
فَمَا اللَّهُ عَنْ ضَلْلِ الْعَبَادِ بِغَافِلٍ
أَيْقَضَى قَرِيبَ الرِّحْمِ مِنْ أَجَدِ رَحْمَهُ
فَابْعَقَ عَلَى الْأَرْحَامِ خُوفَ شَمَائِلَةٍ
إِذَا خَانَى سَيْفِي وَ شَلَّتْ بِهِ يَدِي

He also reproaches his father, who was of the Imāmī sect, in these lines:

إِمَامُكُمْ ذَا آيَةُ مُنْزَلَةٍ
وَ فِي الْعَطَابِيَا جَعْدَةُ مَقْفَلَةٍ
وَ أَظْهَرَ الرِّشْوَةَ وَ الْقَنْدَلَةَ
غَصْتُمْ فَأَخْرَجْتُمْ لَنَا جَنَدَلَةَ
مِنْ قَبْلِ أَنْ يَاتِيَّكُمْ زَلَّةٌ

Strife arises between -Hasan b. -Qásim
and -Násir.

Násir-i-Kabír had sent -Hasan b. -Qásim to Gílán, bidding him bring the rulers of that province to Amul to swear allegiance to him. He wrote to Násir that he had persuaded Harúsandán the son of Tídá, Khusraw Firúz the son of

Justán, and Laythám the son of Wardán, with all their tribesmen, to come in. But these bore Násir a grudge, because he had not performed all that he promised them, so they swore allegiance, not to him, but to -Hasan b. -Qásim (f. 128a). On reaching Amul, -Hasan alighted at Muṣallá (the Oratory) and did not go before Násir, but came next day with his guards and retainers to ask for provisions for his army. Násir was frightened, and fled from his quarters on a mule towards Pá-yi-Dasht, but was pursued and captured by -Hasan, who brought him back to Amul, and thence sent him to the castle of Láriján, while his allies looted the Palace. Thereafter arose a great strife between the partisans of Násir and of -Hasan; and Laylá b. Nu'mán came from Sári, and headed an attack on -Hasan's palace. They reviled him, took from him his signet-ring, and brought him back to Amul before Násir, of whom they asked pardon. When -Hasan, deserted by his followers, was brought before Násir, the latter said without one reproach or bitter word, "I forgive thee," and bade him return to Gílán. But Abu'l-Husayn Ahmād b. an-Násir interceded for him, got him recalled, and gave him his daughter (who was afterwards the mother of Abu'l-Faḍl ad-Dá'i) in marriage; and he was given the government of Gurgán.

-Hasan b. -Qásim sets out for Gurgán. He is attacked by the Turks, and besieged in the Citadel.

After -Hasan b. -Qásim had set out for Gurgán, Sayyid Násir sent his son Abu'l-Qásim Ja'far after him to support him (f. 128b). But the latter, having a grudge against him, purposely lagged behind, and kept writing to his father, saying, "This man cherishes enmity against thee." And when, on approaching Gurgán, the Turks came out to give battle to -Hasan, Abu'l-Qásim abandoned him to his fate;

and Ḥasan, being unable to withstand them, fell back on Astarábád, and withdrew into the castle of Kajín, which had remained in good repair from the time of Shápúr Dhu'l-Aktáf [the Sásánian] until the time of Ardashír b. al-Ḥasan, who ordered it to be destroyed, lest it should fall into the hands of Tukush b. Il-Arslán. There Ḥasan remained all the winter, besieged by the Turks, while his men suffered much from the cold. At length, being in want of food, he made a sortie with a few of his followers, attacked the Turks and slew some of them, and made his way safely to Amul, and thence to Gílán. Sayyid Naṣír now retired from public life and devoted himself to study and teaching, and the fame of his knowledge in Jurisprudence, Traditions, Philosophy, Poetry and Literature brought him many visitors from distant lands. He finally died on Sha'bán 5, A. H. 304 (January 31, A. D. 917), having sent his son Abu'l-Ḥusayn Aḥmad to Gílán and made his son-in-law -Ḥasan b. -Qásim his successor.

-Ḥasan b. -Qásim, called ad-Dá'i ilā'l-Ḥaqq.

Abú Muḥammad al-Ḥasan b. al-Qásim b. al-Ḥasan b. 'Alí b. 'Abdu'r-Rahmán ash-Shajarí b. al-Qásim b. al-Ḥasan b. Zayd b. al-Ḥasan b. 'Alí b. Abí Tálib now succeeded under the title of *ad-Dá'i* (f. 129a) *ilā'l-Ḥaqq* ("The Summoner unto the Truth"), or, as he is called in the *Kitábū'l-Ansáb*, *ad-Dá'i aṣ-Ṣaghír* ("the Lesser Dá'i"). He reached Amul on Ramaḍán 12, A. H. 304 (= March 9, A. D. 917), and Sayyid Abu'l-Ḥusayn Aḥmad b. an-Násir surrendered the sovereignty to him. The brother of the latter, Abu'l-Qásim Ja'far b. an-Násir, sent to him, saying, "The kingdom is our father's; why then dost thou surrender it to him?" but he paid no heed, and an estrangement between the two brothers resulted. Ja'far went to Muḥammad b. Ṣa'lúk at Ray, and promised to adopt the black colour of the

'Abbásids, to coin money in the name of the (Sámánid) rulers of Khurásán, and to insert their names in the *khuṭba*, and help to recover Ṭabaristán for them.

Ḥasan governed justly and well, and made the people contented and happy. When Ja'far came to Amul, Ḥasan retired to Gílán in A. H. 306 (= A. D. 918-919), and Ja'far remained there seven months, extorting exorbitant taxes from the people, till -Ḥasan returned in Jumádá II, A. H. 307 (November, A. D. 919), and again established justice, so that all men prayed for long continuance of his life. He had his palace at Muṣallá ("the Oratory") near Amul, and built lofty dwellings for his officers round about him, so that they should not dwell in the city, or vex and molest the inhabitants. The Ispahbad Sharwín and Shahriyár the son of Wandá-ummíd agreed to pay him the tribute they had paid in the time of Sayyid Ḥasan b. Zayd, but -Ḥasan b. -Qásim, not deeming this enough, marched against them, defeated Shahriyár at Kawíj, and made peace with Sharwín.

At this time the Sámánids were vainly endeavouring to subdue Níshápúr, and Sayyid Ḥasan sent against it Laylá b. Nu'mán (f. 129b), who took it. Then he proceeded to Tús, where, being defeated by the Sámánid army, he fled to Gurgán. There a number of the Daylamite chiefs gave him their allegiance, and conspired with him to kill Sayyid Ḥasan by treachery, but, the plot being made known to the Sayyid, he, without saying a word to any one, marched to Gurgán, seized the conspirators, and beheaded them. Amongst them was Harúsandán, the father of Siyáh Gil, chief of Gílán. So men's hearts were filled with fear of Sayyid Ḥasan, and thenceforth no one dared to plot against him. Leaving Abu'l-Ḥusayn [b.] Naṣir at Gurgán, he then returned to Amul. Shortly after this Abu'l-Qásim b. an-Násir collected a number of followers in Gílán, while Sayyid Abu'l-Ḥusayn [b.] Naṣir also turned against Sayyid Ḥasan, and

sent his general Abú Músá Hárún Isfáh-dúst to Amul, where, however, he was defeated and slain. On this event 'Abdu'lláh b. Muḥammad al-Kátib has the following verse:

لَمْ يَهْمِمْ بِكُلِّ تَجْهِيدٍ وَّهُمْ مِمَّا يَعْجَبُ

Sayyid Ḥasan, having concluded peace with Abu'l-Ḥusayn for a payment of 10,000 dirhams, sent 'Alí b. Ja'far ar-Rází against the Ispahbad Shahriyár, and Ḥusayn b. Dínár against the Ispahbad Sharwín. Both submitted and came in (f. 130a), but fled on being informed that Sayyid Ḥasan thought to put an end to the trouble they were continually causing by casting both of them into prison. Sayyid Ḥasan was therefore compelled to pursue them, and finally had to be content with taking their sons as hostages for their good behaviour.

Sayyid Ḥasan next ordered Ilyás b. Ilísá^c to evacuate Gurgán, but, as he paid no heed, he was attacked, his army routed, and himself killed. When this news reached Bukhárá, the Sámánids sent Qará-takín the Turk with 30,000 horsemen to Gurgán. Sayyid Ḥasan and Abu'l-Ḥusayn retired into Tammísha, knowing that they could not withstand so large a host, and Abu'l-Ḥusayn presently deserted Sayyid Ḥasan, went to Gílán, and joined Abu'l-Qásim Ja'far, while Sayyid Ḥasan took refuge with the Ispahbad Muḥammad b. Shahriyár, who, however, put him in fetters and sent him to 'Alí b. Wah-súdán, governor for the Caliph al-Muqtadir at Ray. Táhir b. Muḥammad the scribe was sent to 'Alí b. Wehsúdán bidding him not to forward his prisoner to Baghdad, but to imprison him in his fathers' castle at (f. 130b) Alamút, where he remained a prisoner until Muḥammad b. Musáfir defeated 'Alí b. Wehsúdán at Qazwín, when Khusraw Fírúz released him and sent him to Gílán.

Meanwhile Sayyid Abu'l-Ḥasan and his brother Abu'l-Qásim Ja'far succeeded conjointly in expelling Qará-takín

from Ṭabaristán, which was rendered the easier by troubles in Khurásán which required his presence. The brothers then remained in Gurgán until Aḥmad Ṭawíl was sent against them from Bukhárá, but him also they defeated, and he fled alone to Bistám, while most of his army dispersed to Jájarm and Isfara'in.

Sayyid Ḥasan, on his release, came to Gílán, sent to Ṭabaristán for his hidden treasures and moneys, and therewith collected an army, with which he invaded Ṭabaristán, and advanced to Amul and Sári. Abu'l-Ḥusayn and Abu'l-Qásim sent Abú Bakr az-Zifrí to Amul to obtain news, but at Astarábád he heard that Sayyid Ḥasan had already reached Lamrásk, whereupon he at once returned to make his report. Abu'l-Ḥusayn, Abu'l-Qásim and [the son of] Harúsandán¹ held a council of war (f. 131a), and it was agreed that the first should march on Astarábád and give battle to Sayyid Ḥasan, while the two others remained in Gurgán. Next morning these last went out from the city to the Dá'i's Tomb to await news from Astarábád. A *ghulám* of 'Alí Qumí Darzí came out from Gurgán, however, with the news that Laylá's men were plundering their houses and stealing their treasures. Thereupon they went back to the city, and Abu'l-Qásim found the very mats stripped from his house, and learned that there were only ten of his followers left in it, whereupon he cast himself on the ground and burst into tears. Laylá denied any complicity in this robbery, but told Abu'l-Qásim that he could not remain in Gurgán; and as he feared to go alone, he gave him an escort of 30 men under Lashkar-sítán. The Daylamites had shut the gates, but he got out by the new

¹ [Harúsandán has already been beheaded; see p. 205 *supra*. Should we not perhaps read "the son of Harúsandán (پسر) having dropped out in the MSS.) i. e. Siyáh Gíl (cf. p. 205)? A little lower down this same person appears to be designated درزی قمی and علی قمی درزی, A. G. E.]

road of Kaláta, having only three *dinárs* in his possession with which to buy bread (f. 131b). On advancing a little further he met three men, who informed him that Sayyid Ḥasan had defeated his confederate Abu'l-Ḥusayn. Abu'l-Qásim and Darzí Qumí were now left alone in despair and bewilderment. The former bought an ass in a neighbouring village, and went by Bistám to Dámghán, and thence to Ray and Gilán.

Sayyid Ḥasan, having defeated Abu'l-Ḥusayn, sent him a kindly message, saying, "I am thy servant, and the kingdom is thine, having been thy father's before." So these two were reconciled.

When the House of Símjúr began to cause trouble in Khurásán, [Abú] 'Alí b. Símjúr came to Gurgán, and invited the Sayyids, as men of peace and religion, to abandon the country quietly to him. They refused, and fought a battle with him at the village of Jaláyin. Surkháb the son of Weh-súdán attacked and routed him, while Abu'l-Ḥusayn scattered his right wing. His men fled into the plain, but when they had gone some distance, the Turks turned at bay, alighted from (f. 132a) their horses, and fired a volley of arrows, completely routing their assailants, so that the Sayyids Ḥasan and Abu'l-Ḥusayn fled, accompanied only by one *ghulám*, and by 'Alí b. Buwayh [i. e. 'Imádu'd-Dawla], Mákán b. Kákí, and Jakáw the *sipahsálár*, while the Turks pursued them to Abasgún. In Tammísha they halted and began to fortify themselves, while Sayyid Ḥasan, leaving Mákán there, went on to Amul to gather fresh troops. Abu'l-Ḥusayn then again attacked the Turks, repulsed them, and re-occupied Gurgán. This victory was at the end of Dhu'l-Hijja, A. H. 310 (= April 20, A. D. 923). For some time after this Sayyid Ḥasan and Abu'l-Ḥusayn held Ṭabaristán thus, the former residing at Amul, the latter at Gurgán. Sayyid Ḥasan built mosques and colleges, encouraged and patronized

men of learning and poets, and governed the people wisely and beneficially. After a while Abu'l-Ḥusayn again quarrelled with and attacked him, but was defeated, and fled to join his brother Abu'l-Qásim.

These two then allied themselves with Mákán b. Kákí, 'Alí b. Khurshíd, Asfár b. Shírúya and Rashámúj, and determined to seize Sayyid Ḥasan, who, being informed of their designs, marched from Amul to Sári with Rustam b. Sharwín. The brothers Abu'l-Ḥusayn and Abu'l-Qásim marched along the coast to Mishkawá, meaning to fight him next day at Sári, but Sayyid Ḥasan fled that night, none knew whither. Abu'l-Ḥusayn nominated his own governors and lieutenants, and on Thursday (f. 132b), the 8th of Jumáda I (A. H. 311 = Aug. 24, A. D. 923), came to Amul, but behaved so exorbitantly and tyrannically towards the people that they longed with all their souls for the former government. And on Tuesday, Rajab 29, A. H. 311 (= Nov. 13, A. D. 923) Abu'l-Ḥusayn died.

On his death, Abu'l-Qásim, his brother, was left in undisputed possession of Ṭabaristán, for Sayyid Ḥasan had fled to the mountains, where many of those who loved his rule joined him. On hearing of Abu'l-Ḥusayn's death, he approached Amul, halting at a place known as *Gázar-gáh* (the Washing-place) to fight Abu'l-Qásim; but in Ramadán, A. H. 311 (= Dec. A. D. 923—Jan., A. D. 924), most of his men having deserted to the enemy, he again fled to the mountains. About the same date Sayyid Abu'l-Qásim ordered Khalil b. Kájí to kill 'Abdu'lláh [b.] Mubárik the scribe, stick his head on a pole, and parade it, with an ink-stand set before it in mockery, through the bázárs. But Abu'l-Qásim himself died soon afterwards on Tuesday, Dhu'l-Qa'da 10, A. H. 312 (= Febr. 7, A. D. 925).

All Gil and Daylam now swore allegiance to Abu'l-Qásim's nephew [Abú 'Alí] Muḥammad b. Ahmad [b.] al-Ḥasan, who

was beloved for his justice and beneficence as much as he was feared for his courage.

Abu'l-Qásim had made Mákán b. Kákí governor of Gurgán (f. 133a), and he, with Hasan [b.] Firúzán and Abú 'Alí b. Isfahán, agreed to swear allegiance to Abu'l-Qásim's little son (by Díkú, daughter of Isfahán) Ismá'íl and make him king; which design, however, they kept secret, until Sayyid Abú 'Alí summoned them to his presence, when they marched from Gurgán to Sári, Abú 'Alí having gone with only a few retainers to Mámtír. Mákán then sent his army to seize him, bidding them drag him from his horse, and snatch off his *kulah*, which was done. Then Mákán sent him to Gurgán to the Amír Ká, son of Wardásf, who came to Amul and crowned Ismá'íl. Mákán wrote news of this to Sayyid Hasan, and sent his brother Abu'l-Husayn b. Kákí with the insignia of royalty to Jájarm and Khurásán, whither also he despatched an army. 'Alí b. Buwayh, the paternal uncle of Aqdu'd-Dawla Fanákhusráw, was the Sayyids' governor of that place, and he, with his 400 men, was defeated and captured by Abu'l-Husayn b. Kákí, who slew all the Khurásání soldiers who fell into his hands. Soon afterwards Mákán wrote to his brother to return to Gurgán and take over the government of it from the Amír Ká; and he sent a confidential message to his brother bidding him kill Sayyid Abú 'Alí, who was lodging in the house of Radí, and send him his head. As the two sat drinking together, Abu'l-Husayn b. Kákí began to quarrel with the Sayyid, who, divining his object, made some pretext for leaving the room, and borrowed from one of his servants a small knife (f. 133b) which he concealed in his dress. Then he returned, and when Abu'l-Husayn b. Kákí, waxing more quarrelsome, seized him by the throat, he threw him down and ripped up his belly. To escape, the Sayyid was obliged to leap from the roof thirty yards down into the moat. He then sent his ring to

'Alí b. Khurshíd and Asfár b. Shírúya, who were in revolt against Mákán and were plundering on the high roads of Gurgán, and they at once joined him and swore allegiance to him. Soon he had an army round him, and was in possession of Gurgán.

As soon as Mákán heard of his brother's death, he collected an army and marched on Gurgán, but the Sayyid, by bribing Rashámúj the son of Shír-Mardán to desert to his side was able to discomfit and rout him. Mákán fled to Lamrásk (f. 134a) without halting, left the Amír Ká, son of Wardásf, there with a regiment, and continued his flight to Sári. Sayyid Abú 'Alí, having left 'Alí b. Khurshíd in charge of Gurgán, pushed on to Lamrásk, where the vanguard of his army had already defeated Amír Ká. Without halting he marched on to Sári and defeated Mákán, who fled into the city, after slaying Abú Ja'far Kúrankíj, who tried to seize him. He was pursued by the soldiers from quarter to quarter and repeatedly wounded, but struck down a soldier who tried to arrest him and escaped. In trying to cross the river he was thrown from his horse, which he then abandoned, together with his coat of mail, and fled through a garden to a house belonging to a poor man, whose help he implored, and who hid him in the branches of a mulberry-tree. The soldiers arrived there and threatened the poor man, who, however, would not betray Mákán's hiding-place. When they had gone, he brought Mákán out, bound up his wounds, and, when he was strong enough, set him on his way, so that he escaped to the highlands of Sári. When afterwards Mákán became powerful and prosperous, he richly rewarded his deliverer, whose name was Kayán Búj, raised him to a high position and conferred honour on his family. Sayyid Abú 'Alí came to Amul and took possession of Tabaristán. He ruled firmly and wisely, but ere long was killed by a fall from his horse whilst playing polo.

When the mourning for his death was concluded, the people (f. 134b) swore allegiance to his brother Abú Ja'far. His accession was soon followed by a serious riot, caused by the injustice of his minister Abu'l-Hasan [b.] Abí Yúsuf, in which disturbance many persons were killed, even in the chief Mosque, where the soldiers massacred numbers of the congregation as they came from public prayer on Friday, till at length the people rose and expelled the troops from the city.

Mákán b. Kákí kept writing from his highland retreat to the Dá'í urging him to revolt and promising him his support, but he would not stir until Mákán had collected 500 men at a place above Nátil still known as "Mákán's camp". When Sayyid Abú Ja'far learned this, he marched from Amul to Nátil, and encamped opposite Mákán. Many of the notables of Amul, such as Sayyid Abú Ja'far Mánk-dím, Abu 'Abdi'lláh Muḥammad b. al-Hasan, Abú Ja'far Muḥammad b. 'Alí, the head-man of Amul and nephew of Ḥusayn b. 'Alí Faqíh, and 'Abbás b. Qábúsán, wrote letters to Mákán promising to help him. He bade them remain quietly in the city, but they disobeyed him, and, gathering a great rabble of the townsfolk, made manifest their intentions (f. 135a). Sayyid Abú Ja'far, learning this, sent against them 1200 picked soldiers, who utterly routed these undisciplined levies, killing many of them. Next day Sayyid Abú Ja'far Násir entered Amul, where Abu'l-Hasan the minister had exacted large sums of money from the people.

Mákán again urged the Dá'í to revolt, but he still refused, until Asfár the son of Shírúya and Muṭrif, his minister, having exacted vast sums of money from the people, retired to Gurgán and openly cast off their allegiance to Abú Ja'far, who sent 'Alí b. Khurshíd to Sári as governor. After a month or so, Asfár came from Gurgán and attacked him, defeated him, imprisoned him in the caravanseray of Ḥasan b. Bahrám, seized the city, and proclaimed himself king.

Meanwhile Mákán's strength continued to increase, and he determined to attack Sayyid Abú Ja'far, who, on his approach, fled from Amul to Wandád-Hurmazd Kúh. Mákán occupied the city, and at once sent messengers to the Dá'í to bring him from Gilán. When he arrived, amidst the rejoicings of the people, he advanced with Mákán from Amul to Sári. Asfár fled at their approach (f. 135b), while the Ispahbad Sharwin retired into his highlands. At this juncture Naṣr b. Aḥmad the Sámánid marched from Bukhára with an army of 30,000 men to subdue Ṭabaristán and 'Iráq, and entered the highlands of Ṭabaristán. Abú Naṣr was Sayyid Ḥasan's governor in Shahriyár-kúh, and he blocked the roads, broke down the bridges, and so entangled Naṣr b. Aḥmad in the highlands that he was unable to get out, and was reduced to great straits for food and fodder, so that finally he sent an ambassador to Sayyid Ḥasan asking him on what terms he would let him depart. The Sayyid sent 'Abdu'lláh b. Salám and Abu'l-'Abbás [b.] Dhu 'r-Riyásatayn to him, and concluded peace, on the understanding that he should pay an indemnity of 20,000 *dinárs* and depart to Khurásán.

When the Sámánid had departed, Mákán began to behave arrogantly towards the Sayyid, who left him, and went to Gilán with the Ispahbad Sharwin b. Rustam. Mákán sent messengers to make apologies, but the Sayyid would not listen to them. Then Asfár collected an army of 7000 Turks, Gilís, and Daylamites and came to Amul, where he fought with Mákán for three days and nights at the gate known as *Dar-i-Für*. Rashámij had promised to help Mákán, and actually joined him on the fourth day. All the people were watching the fray from the roofs of the various buildings. Mákán looked back, saw them, and said, "Why do ye not take down these dogs?" Then Mákán's troops dashed at Asfár's and routed them, and

pursued them to Sári. Asfár came to Gurgán, releasing 'Alí b. Khurshíd, whom he had kept in bonds (f. 136a), and who was brought to Mákán, and by him restored to liberty. Mákán then marched on to Astarábád, while Asfár went to Abú Bakr b. Ilísá^c, Naṣr b. Aḥmad's commander-in-chief, who turned back to Sári, and in A. H. 315 (A. D. 927-8) despatched Hasan [b.] Fírúzán to the highlands to seek out Sayyid Abú Ja'far, whom he brought in to Sári, bare-headed and bare-footed, and imprisoned in the Palace of Abu'l-Abbás [b.] Dhu'r-Riyásatayn. Then the Dá'i wrote to Mákán, reproaching him bitterly for what he had done to Sayyid Abú Ja'far, notwithstanding all his protestations of friendship and promises of support to himself; and thereupon Mákán released Abu Ja'far and sent him to the Dá'i. Then the latter, supported by Gíl and Daylam, and accompanied by the Ispahbad Sharwín, came to Amul, where Mákán came out to meet him. Soon after this Mákán slew Abú Naṣr, who had come to Sári, with a blow from his mace, while he was riding with him, and restored the government of Shahriyár-kúh to the Ispahbad Sharwín, whom he dismissed with presents and robes of honour. Asfár joined Abú Bakr [b.] Ilísá^c and on his death, which occurred shortly afterwards, the army swore allegiance to him. Abú Bakr had a *ghulám* named Il-Tughdí, who, fearing Naṣr b. Aḥmad, joined Asfár, and secured for him the kingdom of Khurásán. Naṣr b. Aḥmad, hearing this, sent Ṣálíh b. Sayyár (f. 136b), with the insignia of royalty, to conciliate him, and Asfár waxed bold and tyrannical, so that the people of Khurásán conceived a great hatred for him.

Mákán and the Dá'i being now reconciled, a great army gathered round them, and they marched on Ray, expelled its governor, Muḥammad b. Ṣálük, and annexed it. Asfár, hearing of their absence, marched on Ṭabaristán with the army of Khurásán, and Abu'l-Hajjáj Mardáwíj b. Ziyár, the

elder brother of Washmgír, who was with Qará-takín the Sámánid, asked permission to join this expedition.

News of this invasion reached the Dá'i and Mákán at Ray, and the latter begged the former to remain there while he marched back to fight the invaders. But the Dá'i would not listen, and, with 500 men, marched to Amul. The people of Amul, on account of Abu'l-Abbás al-Faqíh al-‘Alaqí, refrained from helping the Dá'i; and Asfár, who was at Sári, hearing of his weakness at Amul, and of Mákán's absence at Ray, marched to Amul and attacked the Dá'i, who came out to meet him in battle, but was slain by Mardáwíj with a blow of his mace at 'Alí-ábád as he was endeavouring to recross the river and regain the city. On the same day Abú Ja'far Mánk-dím and another, a descendant of 'Aqíl b. Abí Tálib, were slain, and Ṭabaristán passed into the possession of Asfár, who appointed his own governors, and, being reinforced by a Turk named Agúshí and his tribe, marched on Ray and defeated Mákán, who fled to Ṭabaristán, while Asfár remained at Ray to enrich himself and his army (f. 137a). Then, leaving Agúshí at Ray, Asfár returned to Ṭabaristán. Mákán thereupon fled to Daylamán. Asfár swore allegiance to Abú Jaffar, who, however, he shortly afterwards seized, together with Abu'l-Husayn Shajári and Zayd b. Ṣálíh, and sent them in chains to Bukhárá, while Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn fled. These three remained in captivity at Bukhárá till the death of Abú Bakr Zakariyyá, when they were released, and returned to Ṭabaristán. Amul was ceded to Mákán on condition that he should not interfere with the rest of Ṭabaristán. Agúshí the Turk behaved so tyrannically at Ray that Asfár resolved to kill him, but he fled to Qum, pursued by Mardawíj, whom Asfár sent after him, but without success.

At this juncture the Caliph al-Muqtadir sent his cousin Hárún b. al-Gharíb against Ray, but he was defeated by

Asfár. Mákán, not regarding his treaty, strove to bring all Ṭabaristán under his control, made Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán his deputy at Amul, and himself marched to Gurgán and thence to Níshápúr, accompanied by the Ispahbad Sharwín and Shahriyár of Wandád-Hurmazd-Kúh. There he fought many battles and gained many victories, but a report arose in Ṭabaristán that he was dead, and Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán assumed the control of affairs and placed the crown on the head of Isma'il the 'Alawí, who was his half-brother, giving him Fátima, the daughter of Ahmad, who had been the wife of the Dá'i, as his wife. But Khadíja, the mother of Abú Ja'far, bribed two of Díkú's handmaidens with 400 *dinárs* to poison Isma'il with a poisoned lancet while he was being bled. Later, when these handmaidens quarrelled and divulged the secret, both were hanged at Shálús by Díkú. Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán came to Amul, but was expelled by Abú 'Alí of Isfahán and Abú Músá, two of Mákán's officers, and retreated to Daylamán. Asfár went from Ray to Qazwín, and slew many of its inhabitants, because they had, in a riot, slain his lieutenant, and burned the *bázárs*, and many of the people fled into exile. Mardáwíj b. Ziyár quarrelled with him, gathered a number of followers, and retired to Zangán, whence he made an attack on Qazwín, and drove Asfár to Ray, and thence to Qúmish, where he was joined by Abu'l-'Abbás b. Kálanjár. With him Asfár fell back by way of Quhistán on Ṭabas, whither he was pursued by Mákán. Thence he endeavoured to reach the castle of Alamút, but Mardáwíj stopped the way (f. 138), and finally captured him in Tálaqán and beheaded him. All this happened in A. H. 319 (A. D. 931). Mardáwíj, being now quit of Asfár, slew many of the rabble who had supported him, including Ahmad b. Rasúl and Abu'l-'Abbás 'Aṣṣári, and established himself at Ray. Mákán advanced from Khurásán to Ṭabaristán and made peace with Mardáwíj, who sent messengers

to Gílán by way of Qazwín and brought Násir to Ray. Mákán had tortured Abu'l-Faḍl Shágird, a relative of Muṭrif, to make him disgorge money; and Muṭrif induced Mardáwíj to march on Ṭabaristán. Mákán, learning this, came to Amul. Mardáwíj sent Násir by way of Láriján and Damáwand, but Mákán met him near Wálá-rúd and slew him and many of his followers. Mardáwíj retreated by way of Damáwand to Ray. At this period the sons of Buwayh had seized the provinces of Fárs and Kirmán, and Mardáwíj went to Isfahán to arrange his plans, but while there he was assassinated in the bath.¹

On the death of Mardáwíj, the army of Ray swore allegiance to his brother Washmgír b. Ziyár, who, having set in order the affairs of 'Iráq, sent Shiraj b. Laylá, Lashkári and Abu'l-Qásim to expel Mákán from Ṭabaristán. Mákán fled thence to Gurgán, on a Tuesday in Ramaḍán, A. H. 323 (= August, A. D. 935). Abú Bakr and Abu'l-Mudhaffar, who were both there, allied themselves with Abu'l-Qásim, and left him in possession of Gurgán when they had expelled Mákán (f. 138b). But in Ramaḍán, A. H. 324 (= July—August, A. D. 936) Abu'l-Qásim was killed by a fall from his horse whilst playing polo, and buried at Sári. His army swore allegiance to Ibráhím b. Gúshyár. The Amír Abú Ṭálib Washmgír came from Ray to Amul and thence to Sári, and Ibráhím b. Gúshyár came from Gurgán to meet him, but was dismissed from his command and degraded to his former rank. Washmgír then remained for some while at Sári, until Abú 'Alí Khalífa and Langarcha Pír were murdered at Amul. In Muḥarram, A. H. 325 (= Nov.—Dec., A. D. 936) he sent to Níshápúr and brought back Mákán, to whom he gave Gurgán. The command of the army of Ṭabaristán he conferred on Abú Dá'úd and Isfahí b. Ur-mazdyár, bidding them make war on Abú Músá b. Bahram,

¹ See *J. R. A. S.* for 1901, pp. 687—8.

Asfár. Mákán, not regarding his treaty, strove to bring all Ṭabaristán under his control, made Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán his deputy at Amul, and himself marched to Gurgán and thence to Níshápúr, accompanied by the Ispahbad Sharwín and Shahriyár of Wandád-Hurmazd-Kúh. There he fought many battles and gained many victories, but a report arose in Ṭabaristán that he was dead, and Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán assumed the control of affairs and placed the crown on the head of Isma'íl the 'Alawí, who was his half-brother, giving him Fátima, the daughter of Ahmad, who had been the wife of the Dá'í, as his wife. But Khadíja, the mother of Abú Ja'far, bribed two of Díkú's handmaidens with 400 *dinárs* to poison Isma'íl with a poisoned lancet while he was being bled. Later, when these handmaidens quarrelled and divulged the secret, both were hanged at Shálús by Díkú. Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán came to Amul, but was expelled by Abú 'Alí of Isfahán and Abú Músá, two of Mákán's officers, and retreated to Daylamán. Asfár went from Ray to Qazwín, and slew many of its inhabitants, because they had, in a riot, slain his lieutenant, and burned the *bázárs*, and many of the people fled into exile. Mardáwíj b. Ziyár quarrelled with him, gathered a number of followers, and retired to Zangán, whence he made an attack on Qazwín, and drove Asfár to Ray, and thence to Qúmish, where he was joined by Abú'l-'Abbás b. Kálanjár. With him Asfár fell back by way of Quhistán on Ṭabas, whither he was pursued by Mákán. Thence he endeavoured to reach the castle of Alamút, but Mardáwíj stopped the way (f. 138), and finally captured him in Tálaqán and beheaded him. All this happened in A. H. 319 (A. D. 931). Mardáwíj, being now quit of Asfár, slew many of the rabble who had supported him, including Ahmad b. Rasúl and Abú'l-'Abbás 'Assári, and established himself at Ray. Mákán advanced from Khurásán to Ṭabaristán and made peace with Mardáwíj, who sent messengers

to Gílán by way of Qazwín and brought Násir to Ray. Mákán had tortured Abu'l-Faḍl Shágird, a relative of Muṭrif, to make him disgorge money; and Muṭrif induced Mardáwíj to march on Ṭabaristán. Mákán, learning this, came to Amul. Mardáwíj sent Násir by way of Láriján and Damáwand, but Mákán met him near Wálá-rúd and slew him and many of his followers. Mardáwíj retreated by way of Damáwand to Ray. At this period the sons of Buwayh had seized the provinces of Fárs and Kirmán, and Mardáwíj went to Isfahán to arrange his plans, but while there he was assassinated in the bath.¹

On the death of Mardáwíj, the army of Ray swore allegiance to his brother Washmgír b. Ziyár, who, having set in order the affairs of 'Iráq, sent Shiraj b. Laylá, Lashkári and Abu'l-Qásim to expel Mákán from Ṭabaristán. Mákán fled thence to Gurgán, on a Tuesday in Ramaḍán, A. H. 323 (= August, A. D. 935). Abú Bakr and Abu'l-Mudhaffar, who were both there, allied themselves with Abu'l-Qásim, and left him in possession of Gurgán when they had expelled Mákán (f. 138b). But in Ramaḍán, A. H. 324 (= July—August, A. D. 936) Abu'l-Qásim was killed by a fall from his horse whilst playing polo, and buried at Sári. His army swore allegiance to Ibráhím b. Gúshyár. The Amír Abú Tálib Washmgír came from Ray to Amul and thence to Sári, and Ibráhím b. Gúshyár came from Gurgán to meet him, but was dismissed from his command and degraded to his former rank. Washmgír then remained for some while at Sári, until Abú 'Alí Khalífa and Langarcha Pír were murdered at Amul. In Muḥarram, A. H. 325 (= Nov.—Dec., A. D. 936) he sent to Níshápúr and brought back Mákán, to whom he gave Gurgán. The command of the army of Ṭabaristán he conferred on Abú Dá'úd and Isfáhi b. Ur-mazdyár, bidding them make war on Abú Músá b. Bahram,

¹ See *J. R. A. S.* for 1901, pp. 687—8.

who had rebelled in Daylamán. Abú Ja'far Muḥammad, who was at Amul, was joined by Abú Dá'ud, and these, accompanied by Abú Ja'far Násir, went to attack Abú Músá, whom they defeated and expelled from that country. Daylamán, Jálús and the regions on that side of Amul were conferred by Abú Táhir Washmgír on Ahmád b. Sálár, while Muḥammad b. Ahmád an-Násir ruled at Amul, giving audience every Monday and Thursday, and holding religious discussions with the doctors of Islám every Wednesday. Abú Dá'ud was at Sári, which suffered greatly this year from floods, so that the people fled into the highlands. Abú Dá'ud summoned all the ministers and officials, and warned them that any exaction of which they might be guilty would be severely punished (f. 139a).

In Muḥarram, A. H. 328 (= Oct.—Nov., A. D. 939) Naṣr b. Ahmád the Sámánid sent Abú 'Alí b. Ahmád b. Muḥammad al-Mudhaffári to Gurgán. Mákán appealed for help to Washmgír, who sent Isfáhí, with numerous levies from Gíl and Daylam. For seven months there was war in Gurgán, and at length Mákán and his allies were defeated, though reinforced by Shíraj b. Laylá. Finally, driven out of Gurgán by the army of Khurásán, Mákán fell back on Tabaristán and halted at Amul. At this juncture news arrived that Hasan the Buwayhid had come from Kirmán to Ray, seeking to conquer 'Iráq. Washmgír marched at the head of an army to a place two stages distance from Ray called Mushkú, where a battle was fought, and the army of Hasan the Buwayhid was defeated, and fell back on Isfahán. In this battle the chamberlain Ibn Shá'úshtí was slain, and Hasan the Buwayhid captured the Gílá-gúr, but Washmgír's men recovered him and brought him in his bonds to Washmgír, who set him free. Some days later, Washmgír came from Ray to Damáwand and summoned Mákán b. Kákí before him. He arrived on the 'Ashúrá

(Muḥarram 10) A. H. 329 (= October 15, A. D. 940), and was received with the utmost honour and sent to Sári. As he was returning thither from Damáwand, the commander-in-chief Abu 'Alí came to Dámghán, marching on 'Iráq. Washmgír turned back from Ray to Wíma near Damáwand, and sent to Mákán to join him. Mákán, leaving his cousin Ḥasan [b.] Firúzán at Sári, went to Washmgír, and they met at Isháq-ábád. On Saturday, the 21st of Rabí' I, A. H. 329 (= December 24, A. D. 940) they drew up in battle-array against the commander-in-chief [of the Sámánids]. At the first attack of the Khurásánis (f. 139b) Washmgír fled; but Mákán stood firm, till, 1400 of his Gilí and Daylamite guards having been slain, twenty Turkish champions hurled themselves upon him, dragged him from his horse, and slew him. His head, with a number of notable Daylamites who had been taken prisoners, was sent to Bu-khárá¹. His *wasír*, the father of Ustád Ibnu'l-Āmid Muḥammad Qumi, al-Ḥusayn b. Muḥammad, known as *kala*, one of the finest scholars of the age, was also slain, and his head sent to Bu-khárá. Thither also was sent his secretary, who, because of his accomplishments, was received with honour at the Sámánid court, where he remained for the rest of his days.

Washmgír, meanwhile, fled to Láriján, whence, ten days later, he came to Muṣallá of Amul. There, on Wednesday, the 28th of Rabí' II, A. H. 329 (= December 31, A. D. 940) he received the news of Mákán's death. Ḥasan [b.] Firúzán, Mákán's cousin, and his clansmen agreed that Washmgír had purposely deserted their kinsman, and so rebelled against the latter, who sent Shíraj b. Laylá to fight them. He drove them out of Sári, and they fell back on Astarábád. Shíraj came to Amul, and advanced on Astarábád,

¹ For the celebrated despatch written on this occasion by Iskáfi, see Anecdote III of the *Chahár Maqála*, pp. 28—30 of my translation.

while Ḥasan [b.] Firuzán fled to 'Iráq and joined the Sámánid commander-in-chief, whom he induced to invade Ṭabaristán. Washmgír then retired from Gurgán to Sári, where, at a place called Walajúy, a battle took place, wherein Washmgír stood firm; and even in the midst of it (f. 150a) news arrived of the death of Naṣr b. Aḥmad and the succession of his son Núḥ. Thereupon the Sámánid general made peace with Washmgír, and set out for Bukhárá, accompanied by Ḥasan [b.] Firuzán, who, on the way thither, treacherously slew his chamberlain Mušawwiq, and, with the plunder which he had seized, returned to Gurgán, while the Sámánid general proceeded on his way to join Núḥ b. Naṣr the new sovereign. All this happened in the year A. H. 331 (= A. D. 942—943). Washmgír made Isfahí governor of Ṭabaristán and himself went to Ray.

At the end of Ramaḍán, A. H. 331 (beginning of June, A. D. 943) Ḥasan the Buwayhid advanced from Isfahán by way of Qazwín, and Washmgír came forth from Ray to give him battle. Shír Mardí and Gúrígír deserted him and went over to his enemy, and Washmgír, filled with apprehension, was defeated, and fled to Muṣallá near Amul. Ḥasan the Buwayhid seized Abú 'Alí the scribe, Aḥmad b. Muḥammad al-'Umarí and Abú 'Umar the *wasir*, and bade them disclose Washmgír's treasures. They indicated to him as the treasurer Abu'l-Ḥasan Mámṭírí, who, under torture, gave up all his own wealth, but not a grain of his master's. On reaching Amul, Washmgír sent Binán b. al-Ḥasan as an ambassador to Ḥasan [b.] Firuzán, who, however, imprisoned him in the castle of Jahína, and again came to Sári, where Washmgír then was. A battle ensued, and Muḥammad b. Dabírí and Isma'íl b. Mardúchín deserted to Ḥasan [b.] Firuzán's side. Thereupon Washmgír again fled to the Ispahbad Shahriyár b. Sharwín in the highlands, and, taking all his kinsmen and women-folk with him (f. 140b), made his way

to Bukhárá, where Núḥ b. Naṣr the Sámánid came out to meet him and received him with honour. Washmgír's lieutenant Isfahí came to Amul, whence, learning that Washmgír had fled, he moved to the castle of Kuhrúd. A riot ensued in Amul, wherein many officers and myrmidons of the government were slain, and Ja'far b. Alanbán was hanged, and the people of Qum who were there were maltreated, till Ḥasan [b.] Firuzán came to Amul and encamped at Sha'bú-Dasht, whence he went to Láriján and captured the castle and slew Isfahí b. Akharyár, and seized all his property, and sent the spoils to his own castle in Daylamán.

Then Núḥ b. Naṣr the Sámánid sent Qarátakín at the head of 30,000 horsemen with Washmgír to Ṭabaristán. When he reached Gurgán, Ḥasan b. Firuzán pretended that he was going to attack him, but suddenly slipped past him from Astarábád to Amul, destroying the roads and bridges, by way of Mámṭír and Tarícha. He was pursued by Washmgír to Sári, whence, by way of Amul, he made good his escape to Daylamán. Washmgír advanced to Jálús, and Qarátakín demanded money of him, so that he was obliged to turn back to Amul and give him a share of his possessions, besides presenting all the men of learning and position to him in the mosque, in order that they also might he laid under contribution. Meanwhile Ḥasan b. Firuzán remained in his castle وَبَسَبْ جَنْ دَارَاجِنْ بَدْ, and encamped his men at a place called Dúládár. Washmgír marched thither, while Ḥasan [b.] Firuzán encamped on the sea-shore beyond Darband. Washmgír put his horse into the sea and attacked them, and captured Abu'l-Qásim b. al-Ḥasan ash-Sháfrání, whom he at once beheaded. Ḥasan [b.] Firuzán then took refuge with Mázyár b. Justán, while Washmgír came to Amul and there abode. [Ḥasan] b. Firuzán then retired to Rúyán and took refuge with the Ustundár. Washmgír, learning this, suddenly attacked (f. 141a) them and dispersed their troops.

Hasan [b.] Fírúzán next fled to Láriján, whence, by way of Damáwand, he went to Astarábád and took up his abode in the castle of Kachín. Washmgír came from Amul to Gurgán, but no sooner had he arrived there than Hasan the Buwayhid came from Ray by Amul to Astarábád, where he was joined by Hasan [b.] Fírúzán. They then proceeded to Gurgán and fought and defeated Washmgír, who retired to Níshápúr. The Ispabhad Shahriyár came to Hasan the Buwayhid, who was now in possession of Tabaristán, where he left 'Alí b. Níkáma, and himself returned to 'Iráq and settled at Ray. The Ustundár brought forth Abu'l-Faḍl ath-Thá'ir al-'Alawí (the grand-nephew of an-Násir al-Kabír) and established him at Jálús. The people collected round him. Hasan the Buwayhid, on hearing this, sent an army under Abu'l-Faḍl Muḥammad b. al-Husayn, known as Ibnu'l-'Amíd, to Amul to help 'Alí b. Níkáma, but Abu'l-Faḍl ath-Thá'ir deserted the Buwayhid force at Tamanjádiya, and came to Amul, where he established himself in the Sayyid's palace, while the Ustundár took up his abode at Kharmazar above Amul. After some time, these two quarrelled, and ath-Thá'ir al-'Alawí went to Gilán. Hasan the Buwayhid gave an army to Hasan [b.] Fírúzán, and sent him to Tabaristán. At this juncture Hasan the Buwayhid's mother died at Ray, and was buried with great pomp at Jálús near Amul, and all Tabaristán passed under the sway of Hasan [b.] Fírúzán, who discovered Abú Ja'far the brother of Mákán at Sári. Washmgír sent to Núḥ the Sámánid to ask his help, and received in response to his appeal several thousand troops, with whom he suddenly attacked Gurgán, and surprised and defeated Hasan [b.] Fírúzán, whose army joined Washmgír (f. 1416), while their late captain fled by night to the castle of Kachín. Washmgír then obtained control of the country.

At this date the Buwayhids had over-run the two 'Iráqs,

al-Hijáz and Syria, as is fully set forth by Abú Ishaq Ibráhím b. Hilál aş-Şábí in his *Kitábu't-Táji fi áthári 'd-Dawlati 'd-Daylamíyya*, and had made Baghdad their capital. Hasan the Buwayhid, the father of 'Aḍudu'd-Dawla Fanákhusráw, made his brother Mu'izzu'd-Dawla governor of Ray, while he himself held sway over 'Iráq. As soon as he heard of the return of Washmgír, he set out with a large army of Persians and Arabs to attack Tabaristán. Washmgír fled to Daylamán, but its people refused to shelter him for fear of the Buwayhids. Ruknu'd-Dawla Hasan the Buwayhid advanced as far as Jálús, and Washmgír took refuge with Abu 'l-Faḍl ath-Thá'ir, but for whose protection the Daylamites would have surrendered Washmgír to his foes. Ruknu 'd-Dawla the Buwayhid retired to Amul and remained there a month, till news of the death of his brother 'Alí reached him, whereupon he left Tabaristán and returned to 'Iráq. Thereupon Washmgír and ath-Thá'ir al-'Alawí, accompanied by a host of Gilís and Daylamís, came to Amul and appointed their own governors. Leaving the Sayyid at Amul, Washmgír himself marched to Gurgán. Shíraj b. Laylá, Wardánsháh and Abu'l-Hasan the brother of Násir conspired together and slew the chief supporters of ath-Thá'ir, while Muḥammad b. Wahrí, one of his chief intimates, joined them, so that the Sayyid was left alone, and fled by night to Daylamán, while the conspirators plundered and looted Amul (f. 142a).

When Ruknu'd-Dawla had concluded the mourning for his brother, he collected a large army, marched on Gurgán, attacked Washmgír, and drove him by way of Nasá and Báward to Merv, which was then governed for Núḥ the Sámánid by Mansúr Qarátakín. Níshápúr had been seized by Muḥammad b. 'Abdu'r-Razzáq, who had revolted against Núḥ. Washmgír and Qarátakín made a combined attack on him, and he, unable to withstand them, retired

to Gurgán, where he joined Ruknu'd-Dawla's governor, Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán. In Shawwál, A. H. 337 (= April, A. D. 949) Qarátakín and Washmgír entered Gurgán, and Muḥammad b. 'Abdu'r-Razzáq fled to Ray and took refuge with Ruknu'd-Dawla. Qarátakín returned to Níshápúr and there died. Amír Núh thereupon appointed Abú 'Alí Muslim commander in chief in Khurásán, and sent him against Ruknu'd-Dawla. He reached Ray in A. H. 342 (= A. D. 353—4), besieged Ruknu'd-Dawla in the citadel, and finally made peace with him on the condition that he should pay to the Court of Bukhárá a yearly tribute of 200,000 *dinárs*. Thereupon Abú 'Alí Muslim retired, to the great vexation of Washmgír, who wrote to the Amír Núh saying that, if he had pressed his advantage, he might have taken Ruknu'd-Dawla captive. Amír Núh, incensed at this, dismissed Abú 'Alí Muslim from his office of commander in chief, and gave it to Abú Sa'íd Bakr b. Malik. Abú 'Alí Muslim, being informed of his dismissal, revolted against Amír Núh, omitted his name from the *khuṭba*, and seized Níshápúr. And about the same time, as it chanced, in A. H. 343 (= A. D. 954—5) Amír Núh died, and was succeeded by his son 'Abdu'l-Malik. Thus Abú 'Alí Muslim's power became greater, and he concluded (f. 142b) an offensive and defensive alliance with Ruknu'd-Dawla. They agreed to invade Ṭabaristán, the former by way of Shahriyár-Kúh, the latter by Hurmazd-Kúh; but soon after they had effected a junction, Abú 'Alí Muslim died, and his Khurásání soldiers dispersed, whereupon Ruknu'd-Dawla retired to Ray, and Washmgír remained unmolested, though enmity continued to exist between the two, until, when Manṣúr b. Núh the Sámánid came to the throne, he sent a large army under Muḥammad b. Ibráhím Simjúr to help Washmgír against the Buwayhid. Thereupon Ruknu'd-Dawla, being alarmed, sought for help from Baghdad and Fárs, from his brother

Mu'izzu'd-Dawla and from the sons of 'Aḍudu'd-Dawla. In the year A. H. 356 (= A. D. 967) [Abu'l-Ḥasan] Muḥammad b. Ibráhím Simjúr joined Washmgír outside Gurgán.

One day about this time Washmgír wished to go for a ride, but was advised by his astrologer not to do so. He waited till the afternoon prayer, at which time some horses were brought for him to see. Amongst these was a very fine black horse from Bukhárá. He ordered it to be saddled, mounted it, and rode forth a little way, when he remembered with vexation the astrologer's advice. Thereupon he turned back, when suddenly he was attacked by a wild boar, which gored his horse, while he fell to the ground with blood pouring from his nose, eyes and ears, and shortly afterwards expired. This was in Muḥarram, A. H. 357 (= December, A. D. 967).

Washmgír left two sons (f. 143a), Bahistún and Qábús, of whom the former was at this juncture in Ṭabaristán and the latter with his father. The nobles swore allegiance to Qábús, to whom [Abu'l-Ḥasan] Muḥammad b. Ibráhím Simjúr also gave his support. Bahistún, greatly disappointed, thereupon made overtures to Ruknu'd-Dawla, and went to him at Ray, while his brother Qábús continued to strengthen his hold on Ṭabaristán and Gurgán, and to conciliate the nobles by gifts of lands and money. Amongst others he was joined by his maternal uncle the Ispahbad Rustam b. Sharwín b. Shahriyár Bawand. And on Muḥarram 25, A. H. 366 (= November 28, A. D. 970) Ruknu'd-Dawla died.

'Aḍudu'd-Dawla Abú Shujá' Fanákhusráw, the son of Ruknu'd-Dawla, was in Fárs with his brother Mu'ayyidu'd-Dawla. The mother of both of these was the daughter of Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán, the cousin on the father's side of Mákán Kákí. Fakhru'd-Dawla, the third brother, was in Hamadán. Him the other two attacked, and he fled before them to Shamsu'l-Ma'álí Qábús in Ṭabaristán, who received him

with honour. His two brothers (f. 143*b*) offered Qábús the revenues of Ray for a year if he would surrender Fakhru'd-Dawla to them, threatening him with war in case of refusal; and on his rejecting their proposals with scorn, 'Ađudu'd-Dawla collected a great army of Kurds, Lurs, Arabs, Daylamites and Turks, and sent them under the command of his brother Mu'ayyidu'd-Dawla to invade Ṭabaristán. They met and defeated Qábús at Astarábád, and he fled with Fakhru'd-Dawla, bearing with him his treasures, to Níshápúr, where he placed himself under the protection of Tásh, who was ordered by Amír Núh the Sámánid to help him to recover his kingdom. Tásh thereupon marched on Gurgán, sending Fá'iq by way of Qúmish, and, aided by Qábús, besieged Mu'ayyidu'd-Dawla in Gurgán for two months. In spite of the scarcity of provisions to which the garrison was reduced, Mu'ayyidu'd-Dawla, at the advice of the astrologer Abu'l-Fadl of Herát, waited till Mars, the planet fortunate to the Turks, had begun to decline. At this juncture news of the death of 'Ađudu'd-Dawla reached him, and he secretly bribed Fá'iq and other captains of the besieging army to flee when battle should be joined, which happened on Wednesday, Ramaḍán 22, A. H. 371 (= March 21, A. D. 982). In consequence of the desertion of these faithless officers, Tásh and Qábús were defeated and compelled to retire to Níshápúr. At this time Fírúzán b. Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán ruled over Daylamán, his brother Naṣr b. Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán over Qúmish, and the Ispahbad Sharwín Báwand over Ṭabaristán.

On the death of 'Ađudu'd-Dawla (f. 144*a*) quarrels arose between his sons, and Fakhru'd-Dawla proceeded to 'Iráq, but shortly afterwards died at Ray. Qábús meanwhile returned to Gurgán, and, by gifts and promises, tried to conciliate the chiefs of that country. Núh b. Mansúr the Sámánid died, and was succeeded by Amír Rađí. Abú 'Alí b.

Ḥasan Símjúr rebelled against him, and Khurásán was plunged in confusion. Amír Rađí fled to Ghazna, and appealed for help to Sabuktagín, who had succeeded Alptagín as ruler of that place. Sabuktagín collected an army and marched on Níshápúr against Abu 'Alí Símjúr and Fá'iq, whom he met in battle at a place called Tafsúr. Qábús, though at heart sympathizing with the Sámánids, had been compelled to place his son Dárá as a hostage in the hands of Abú 'Alí. During the battle Dárá escaped and joined the Sámánid Amír Rađí. Abú 'Alí was defeated, and Sultán Mahmúd b. Sabuktagín, to whose efforts the victory was largely due, was appointed by Amír Rađí commander in chief of Khurásán, and given the title of Sayfu'd-Dawla, while his father, Sabuktagín, received Balkh as his reward, and withdrew to Herat. Amír Rađí retired to Bukhárá, where he shortly afterwards died.

Sultán Mahmúd, now in secure possession of Khurásán, allied himself with Ilak Khán, and the two came to Bu-khárá, seized Amír Rađí's son, Ibráhím al-Muntaşir, and put to death some other Sámánid princes. Muntaşir, however (f. 144*b*), succeeded in effecting his escape to Níshápúr, and, being pursued thither by Mahmúd, fled to Gurgán, where he was well received and generously treated by Qábús, together with Abu'l-Qásim b. Símjúr and Arslán Bálu, who were with him. Qábús further advised them, having regard to the strength of Mahmúd and Ilak Khán, to abandon for the present all hopes of recovering Khurasán, and rather to turn their attention to Ray, which was ruled by the boy-king Majdu'd-Dawla b. Fakhru'd-Dawla. Thither, accordingly, they marched, accompanied by the two sons of Qábús, Dárá and Minúchihr, but Abu'l-Qásim and Arslán Bálu, bribed by the nobles of Ray, induced them to retire without molesting the city. The sons of Qábús left them and returned to their father, while Muntaşir made another attempt to

recover Níshápúr, whence he was driven back by Sultán Mahmúd to Gurgán. This time, however, Qábús, seeing that Muntaṣir could effect nothing, sent 2000 men to oppose his entrance, and thenceforth (f. 145a) concerned himself no further with the fortunes of the House of Sámán. He sent the Ispahbad Shahriyár b. Sharwín to subdue the district of Shahriyár, which was held by Rustam b. al-Marzubán, the maternal uncle of Majdu'd-Dawla Abú Tálib Rustam b. Fakhru'd-Dawla, whom he defeated, and proclaimed Qábús ruler of that country.

Bátí b. Sa'íd was dwelling amongst a section of the Jál-i-Isfandárí, but, though outwardly their ally, his heart was with Qábús. Naṣr b. Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán, driven by famine from Daylam, attacked and defeated them, and took prisoner the Ispahbad Abú'l-Faḍl, who shortly afterwards died. Bátí fraternized with Naṣr, and the two agreed to attack Amul, whence they drove out the governor, Abú'l-Abbás the chamberlain. Having occupied Amul, Bátí wrote a letter to Qábús, informing him of the victory, and tendering his allegiance. Leaving Naṣr, he then proceeded to Astarábád and easily persuaded its inhabitants to accept the rule of Qábús, who sent the Ispahbad Shahriyár to support him (f. 145b)¹. Fírúzán b. al-Ḥasan [b. Fírúzán], hearing of this, marched from Gurgán to attack them, and had almost succeeded in defeating Bátí outside Astarábád when a number of the Kurds and Arabs in his army suddenly raised the battle-cry of Qábús, and deserted to his enemy. In consequence of this Bátí not only put his army to flight, but captured him and a score of his chief officers. The fugitives were opposed and turned aside from Gurgán by the Sálár Khargásh, a

¹ [From the beginning of this page as far as l. 21 of p. 234 is entirely extracted from al-'Utbí's *Ta'ríkh al-Yamini* (Delhi ed. of A. H. 1263, pp. ۲۸—۴۶ and ۳۰۱—۴۹; Buláq ed. of A. H. 1286, vol. I, pp. ۲۹۶ to end, and Vol. II, pp. ۱—۴ and ۱۶۱—۱۷۸) A. G. E.].

kinsman of Qábús; and the latter was soon afterwards crowned at Gurgán in Sha'bán, A. H. 388 (= August, A. D. 998).

The fugitives were received at Ray with reproaches, and the minister Abú 'Alí Ḥamúla¹ at once proceeded to collect an army of Turks, Arabs and Daylamites ten thousand strong, with which he set out for Gurgán, accompanied by Manúchihir² b. Qábús, Asfár b. Kurdúya, Abú'l-Abbás b. Já'i, 'Abdu'l-Malik Mákán, Músá Hájib, Bísitún b. Tíjásaf, Kinár b. Fírúzán, and Rashámúj, all leading men of Daylam. When they reached the district of Shahriyár, Qábús resolved to oppose them. Abú 'Alí Ḥamúla sent messengers to try to win over to his side Naṣr b. Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán, of whose attitude he felt doubtful, urging him, out of regard for the bond of kinship between him and Majdu'd-Dawla (f. 146a), to espouse his cause, and promising to reward him with the district of Qúmish. Naṣr, deceived by these promises, came to Sári, and, taking the right hand one of the two roads to Gurgán, advanced to within a short distance of Qúmish. Here he made known to his soldiers the real reason why he had espoused the cause of Majdu'd-Dawla. Thereupon they differed in opinion, some being for Gurgán and others for Ustundár, while Naṣr, with the rem-

¹ For this correction of the reading "Hamawayh" (هَمَاعِيْه) of the MS. I am indebted to Mr. Ellis, who has looked it up in the *Yamini* (Delhi ed., p. ۲۹; Add. 7310 of the Museum, dated A. H. 696, f. ۱۱۲a, and Or. 1513, dated A. H. 767, f. ۱۰۸a). "In all these texts," he adds, "the full name of this personage appears as أبو علی حسن بن احمد بن حموده. The same is the case in the Bodleian MS. of the *Mu'jamul-U'dabá* of Yáqút. (Bodl. Or. 753, f. ۱۷a), as I am informed by Mr. Amedroz. The Delhi ed. of the *Yamini* vocalizes the name as حموده, whilst the Buláq ed. (Vol. II, p. ۲) and Add. 7310, f. ۱۱۲a, agree with Ibn Isfandiyár in reading ابن حموده."

² Ibn Isfandiyár has "Mansúr b. Qábús", but, as Mr. Ellis informs me, "Minúchihir" is the reading of all texts of the *Yamini* (Delhi ed. p. ۲۹; Buláq ed., Vol. II, p. ۲; Add. 7310, f. ۱۱۲a; Or. 1513, f. ۱۰۸a).

nant which clave to him, advanced to Qúmish, and requested Abú 'Alí Ḥamúla to put him in possession of the citadel. They assigned to him the castle of Júmand, where he placed his family and his baggage and stores.

Abú 'Alí Ḥamúla, leaving Naṣr b. Fírúzán at Qúmish, returned by Sári to Gurgán, where he encamped outside the city by the Mausoleum of the Dá'í. For two months fighting continued between him and the allies of Qábús, till famine prevailed in Gurgán, and food became hardly obtainable. Rain, floods and storms presently combined with dearth to render the position of the besiegers more and more difficult. Thereupon the soldiers of Qábús made a sortie, and a fierce fight ensued in which some 1300 men were slain. The Daylamites were defeated, and many of their chiefs, including Sipahsálár b. Kúrángij, Zarhawájastán b. Ashkálí, Ḥaydar b. Sálár, and Muḥammad b. Wahsúdán were taken captive, while Abú 'Alí Ḥamúla retreated to Qúmish, where he urgently summoned Naṣr b. al-Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán to assist him. Fearing the advance of Qábús, however, he dared not remain in Qúmish, but retreated to Ray, while Naṣr marched to Samnán. Here he halted and demanded re-inforcements from Majdu'd-Dawla, who sent (f. 147a) the son of his chamberlain Baktakín with six hundred Turkish horsemen. Qábús, on the other hand, despatched Bátí b. Sa'íd, and subsequently the Ispahbad Shahriyár, against the Daylamites. Bátí, however, suffered a serious defeat at the hands of Naṣr, and his army was annihilated.

Majdu'd-Dawla, greatly encouraged by this victory, sent his maternal uncle, Rustam b. al-Marzubán, with 3000 men to re-inforce Abú 'Alí Ḥamúla, appointing him Ispahbad of Shahriyár. Naṣr came out to meet Rustam as far as Damáwand, and helped him to take effective possession of the district assigned to him. The Ispahbad Shahriyár fell back on Sári to seek aid from Prince Minúchihr, the son of

Qábús, and watched his opportunity, until, Rustam having been separated from Naṣr, he attacked him and drove him out of the country back to Ray, and established himself in his place.

After this Majdu'd-Dawla made peace with Qábús, and the two agreed to make an end of Naṣr b. Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán, who, notwithstanding his ancient and noble lineage, was generally hated for his exactions and oppressions (f. 147b). Naṣr discovered their intention, and, hearing that Sultán Mahmúd's governor of Quhistán, Arslán Hindú-bacha, had attacked and driven back Abu'l-Qásim [b.] Símjúr, he went to the latter, and, eager to avenge himself on Majdu'd-Dawla, persuaded him to attack Ray. He was, however, easily repulsed; and, while retiring in disappointment, was attacked and routed by the troops of Qábús, whereupon he and his confederate Abu'l-Qásim offered their services to Sultán Mahmúd of Ghazna. Abu'l-Qásim, for reasons set forth in al-'Utbi's *Ta'rikh-i-Yamini*, was soon compelled (f. 148a) to flee from the Sultán's court, but Naṣr remained in the Sultán's service, and was finally given in fief Biyár and Júmand. These, however, did not satisfy him, and he suffered himself to be beguiled by specious promises to Ray, where he was put in chains and sent as a prisoner to the castle of Ustúnáwand, while Qábús subdued all the surrounding strongholds, and bestowed them on his chief officers and nobles.

About this time the Ispahbad Shahriyár, having collected a large army, began to shew signs of restiveness, and Rustam b. Marzubán was sent against him from Ray, followed by Bísitún b. Tíjásf, who defeated and took him prisoner. Rustam, being a partisan of Qábús and ill-disposed towards the ruler of Ray, proclaimed Qábús king, with the acquiescence and approval of Bísitún. Qábús conferred Gilán on his son Minúchihr, and shortly afterwards reduced the dis-

nant which clave to him, advanced to Qúmish, and requested Abú 'Alí Ḥamúla to put him in possession of the citadel. They assigned to him the castle of Júmand, where he placed his family and his baggage and stores.

Abú 'Alí Ḥamúla, leaving Naṣr b. Fírúzán at Qúmish, returned by Sári to Gurgán, where he encamped outside the city by the Mausoleum of the Dá'i. For two months fighting continued between him and the allies of Qábús, till famine prevailed in Gurgán, and food became hardly obtainable. Rain, floods and storms presently combined with dearth to render the position of the besiegers more and more difficult. Thereupon the soldiers of Qábús made a sortie, and a fierce fight ensued in which some 1300 men were slain. The Daylamites were defeated, and many of their chiefs, including Sipahsálár b. Kúrángij, Zarhawájastán b. Ashkalí, Ḥaydar b. Sálár, and Muḥammad b. Wahsúdán were taken captive, while Abú 'Alí Ḥamúla retreated to Qúmish, where he urgently summoned Naṣr b. al-Hasan [b.] Fírúzán to assist him. Fearing the advance of Qábús, however, he dared not remain in Qúmish, but retreated to Ray, while Naṣr marched to Samnán. Here he halted and demanded re-inforcements from Majdu'd-Dawla, who sent (f. 147a) the son of his chamberlain Baktakín with six hundred Turkish horsemen. Qábús, on the other hand, despatched Bátí b. Sa'íd, and subsequently the Ispahbad Shahriyár, against the Daylamites. Bátí, however, suffered a serious defeat at the hands of Naṣr, and his army was annihilated.

Majdu'd-Dawla, greatly encouraged by this victory, sent his maternal uncle, Rustam b. al-Marzubán, with 3000 men to re-inforce Abú 'Alí Ḥamúla, appointing him Ispahbad of Shahriyár. Naṣr came out to meet Rustam as far as Damáwand, and helped him to take effective possession of the district assigned to him. The Ispahbad Shahriyár fell back on Sári to seek aid from Prince Minúchihr, the son of

Qábús, and watched his opportunity, until, Rustam having been separated from Naṣr, he attacked him and drove him out of the country back to Ray, and established himself in his place.

After this Majdu'd-Dawla made peace with Qábús, and the two agreed to make an end of Naṣr b. Ḥasan [b.] Fírúzán, who, notwithstanding his ancient and noble lineage, was generally hated for his exactions and oppressions (f. 147b). Naṣr discovered their intention, and, hearing that Sultán Maḥmúd's governor of Quhistán, Arslán Hindú-bacha, had attacked and driven back Abu'l-Qásim [b.] Símjúr, he went to the latter, and, eager to avenge himself on Majdu'd-Dawla, persuaded him to attack Ray. He was, however, easily repulsed; and, while retiring in disappointment, was attacked and routed by the troops of Qábús, whereupon he and his confederate Abu'l-Qásim offered their services to Sultán Maḥmúd of Ghazna. Abu'l-Qásim, for reasons set forth in al-'Utbí's *Ta'rikh-i-Yamini*, was soon compelled (f. 148a) to flee from the Sultán's court, but Naṣr remained in the Sultán's service, and was finally given in fief Biyár and Júmand. These, however, did not satisfy him, and he suffered himself to be beguiled by specious promises to Ray, where he was put in chains and sent as a prisoner to the castle of Ustúnáwand, while Qábús subdued all the surrounding strongholds, and bestowed them on his chief officers and nobles.

About this time the Ispahbad Shahriyár, having collected a large army, began to shew signs of restiveness, and Rustam b. Marzubán was sent against him from Ray, followed by Bísitún b. Tíjásf, who defeated and took him prisoner. Rustam, being a partisan of Qábús and ill-disposed towards the ruler of Ray, proclaimed Qábús king, with the acquiescence and approval of Bísitún. Qábús conferred Gilán on his son Minúchihr, and shortly afterwards reduced the dis-

tricts of Ustundáriyya, Rúyán and Jálús, so that his dominions now included, besides these regions, Gurgán, Ṭabaristán and Daylam to the shores of the Caspian Sea (f. 148b). He also entered into friendly relations with Sultán Mahmúd.

For all his noble qualities, his learning, piety, munificence, magnanimity, wisdom, prudence and intelligence, Qábús was, however, arrogant, harsh, and sometimes cruel. No one was secure against his occasional acts of violence, and many men of condition suffered death at his hands, so that a growing discontent became apparent. Now he had a chamberlain called Na'ím, a simple and guiltless man, whom he had made governor of Astarábád; and him, on the mere suspicion of his inclining to the Mu'tazilite heresy, he condemned to death. Na'ím craved a respite, that he might establish his innocence (p. 149a), but his request was refused, and he was put to death by Qábús. This so exasperated the nobles and officers that they determined to depose Qábús, who had gone for change of air to Janáshk, and knew nothing of their disaffection until one night they surrounded and attacked his camp and plundered his baggage, but were driven off by his retainers. They then went to Gurgán, seized the city, and brought thither Prince Minúchihr, the son of Qábús, from Ṭabaristán, threatening him that, unless he would consent to depose his father and accept the crown at their hands, they would find another ruler and cast off their allegiance to his house. Minúchihr, being unable to oppose them, deemed it best to agree to their demands.

Meanwhile Qábús, with his retainers and baggage, came to Bistám, there to await the upshot of the affair (f. 149b), and his son Minúchihr was compelled by the rebels to march against him. Qábús summoned Minúchihr into his presence, which he entered with every mark of respect and with tears in his eyes. After bewailing the untoward events

which had forced him in appearance to oppose his father, Minúchihr offered, if Qábús wished it, openly to espouse his cause; but the latter, recognizing the hopelessness of his own position, gave Minúchihr his blessing and handed over to him his signet-ring and the keys of his treasures, and retired to Janáshk, there to end his days in prayer and pious exercises. The rebels, however, could feel no security as long as Qábús was alive, and soon found on opportunity to put him to death secretly (f. 150a)¹. He was buried beneath a dome outside Gurgán on the road to Khurásán.

After mourning for three days, according to the fashion of the Daylamites, Minúchihr ascended the throne and assumed the reins of government, while Qábús was soon forgotten:

كُنْ لَكَ يَكْنَ بَيْنَ الْهَجَوْنِ لِلْأَعْفَى أَنْيَسْ وَلَمْ يَسْمُرْ بِمُكْتَأْ سَامِرْ

Letters of condolence from the Caliph al-Qádir Bílláh, conferring on him the title of Falaku'l-Ma'álí, soon reached Minúchihr, who made it his first business to conciliate, with presents and professions of loyalty, the powerful Sultán Mahmúd of Ghazna, who recognized his sovereignty in Gurgán, Ṭabaristán and Qúmish, and sent Abú Muḥammad b. Mihrán as an ambassador to confer on him a robe of honour and other marks of his favour; while he on his part agreed to pay a yearly tribute of 50,000 *dinárs*, and, on the occasion of the campaign against Nárdín, supplied a contingent of a thousand picked soldiers of Daylam (f. 150b). Later Minúchihr sent Abú Sa'íd Sawák, the greatest noble of Gurgán, to Sultán Mahmúd to pray that he would bestow on him, for the confirming of the alliance, the hand of one of his daughters. To this request a favourable answer was brought back by the ambassador, who was then

¹ See Dawlatsháh, pp. 48-49 of my edition.

sent to Ghazna a second time accompanied by the Qádí of Gurgán to drew up the marriage-contract and bring back the bride (f. 151a).

Having thus secured his position, Minúchihr prepared to take vengeance on his father's murderers, which he had hitherto feared to do, and did not rest until he had put most of them to death, save the son of Khargásh, who fled into exile, and none knows what fate overtook him. Abu'l-Qásim Ja'dí, who had been in command of the army of Qábús, long evaded capture, and finally (f. 151b) took refuge with the Sultán at Níshápúr, who, however, handed him over to Minúchihr, from whom he met with his deserts.

To return now to Minúchihr's brother Dárá, who, as we saw (p. 227 *supra*), escaped from the custody of Abú 'Alí b. Símjúr and joined the Sámánid Amír Rađí. When his father Qábús had established his rule, Dárá continued for a time in his service, but presently, his fears and suspicious being aroused, he again fled secretly into Khurásán, where he was at first well received (f. 152a) by the Sultán, but presently, falling under suspicion, he escaped to Sháh Shár of Ghars, between whom and himself an ancient friendship existed, but who dared not persist in refusing his surrender to the Sultán. He was imprisoned by the Sultán for some time — more rigorously after he had once succeeded in escaping —, but was finally received back into favour, and sent with Arslán Jádhib¹ to assume the government of Tabaristán and Gurgán, whence, however, owing to the wisdom of his brother Minúchihr in conciliating Sultán Maḥmúd, he was speedily recalled, and attached to the Sultán's personal service. At this juncture (f. 152b) Amír Abu'l-Fawáris,

¹ The India Office MS. (A) has "Hárib", but the British Museum MS. Add. 7633 (B.), f. 182b, "Jádhib", which is, as Mr. Ellis points out, certainly correct, as it is confirmed by all texts of the *Yamini* (Delhi ed., p. 141f; Buláq ed., Vol. II, p. 19; Add. 7310, f. 177a; Or. 1513, f. 170a).

son of 'Ađudu'd-Dawla the Buwayhid, came from Kirmán to the Sultán to complain of the wrongs which he had suffered at his brother's hands, and a dispute occurred between him and Dárá as to the nobility and antiquity of their respective families in the course of which the latter made use of expressions so insulting and improper that he was again disgraced and imprisoned till Muḥarram, A. H. 409 (= May-June, A. D. 1018), when, at the intercession of the Prime Minister, he was released, and his estates were restored to his stewards.

In A. H. 424 (= A. D. 1033) Minúchihr died, and was succeeded by his son [Abú] Kálanjár, who was the contemporary of Sultán Ma'súd b. Maḥmúd of Ghazna. In A. H. 425 (= A. D. 1033—4) the latter, in spite of the urgent dissuasion of his ministers and nobles, decided to visit the former in Gurgán and Tabaristán. Abú Kálanjár answered (f. 153a), "I am thy servant: the king does but visit his own house;" but he retired to one of his castles, and even ventured a remonstrance at the exactions and irregularities committed by Ma'súd's troops. Finally, as summer advanced and the weather grew warm, Ma'súd retired to Gurgán, where, on the very day of his arrival, he learned that two thousand Seljúq Turkmáns had reached Merv, and had been joined by two of the sons of Seljúq, Yaghmur and Búqá. This was the first revolt of the Seljúqs, and their power continued to increase until Jaghri¹ Beg Dá'ud seized Khwárazm, and thence marched to Tabaristán and Ray, occupying and annexing most of the realms of the House of Washmgír (or Ziyárids) except the mountains. And in A. H. 441 (= A. D. 1049—1050) Abú Kálanjár died².

¹ Add. 7633, f. 183b, has حَفَرْ بَيْكَ, "Jaghár Beg", but on the authority of ar-Ráwandi's *History of the Seljúqs* (Nº. 1314 *Suppl. Persan* of the Bibliothèque Nationale, f. 37b), transcribed in A. H. 635, I prefer this form. See *J. R. A. S.* for 1902, p. 585.

² Ibnu'l-Athír places his death in A. H. 440.

He was succeeded by his cousin Kay-Ká'ús b. Iskandar b. Qábús, chiefly celebrated as the author of the Qábús-náma¹, who was contemporary with Rustam b. Shahriyár, and ruled in the mountain districts until A. H. 462 (= A. D. 1069—1070), when he died, and was succeeded by his son [Gílánsháh], to whom there remained but a shadow of power. For Tughril the Seljúq had traversed Tabaristán and Gílán, levying taxes and appointing governors (f. 153b), and thence had passed on to Ray [and Baghdad], restored the authority of the Caliph al-Qá'ím bi-amrilláh and put down the agents of the Fátimid Anti-Caliph al-Mustansír, and in return for all his services received the title of Sultán. Gílánsháh died, and was succeeded by his cousin Anúshirwán b. Minúchihr b. Qábús, in A. H. 471 (= A. D. 1078—9)².

[Here follows some account of Alp Arslán's conquests, and in particular of a wonderful march which he made with 100,000 men from Balásághún to the Euphrates to relieve the Caliph al-Qá'ím, who was hard pressed by the Byzantines. This march he is said to have accomplished in sixteen days. The author now turns back to trace the history of the Ispahbads of the House of Báw from the earliest times down to the period which he has now reached.]

(F. 154a). To the Ispahbads of this ancient and noble house was given the title "King of the Mountains" (*Maliku'l-Jibál*). Their ancestor Báw was a vassal of Khusraw Parwíz, whom he aided in his wars with the "Romans" and

¹ An excellent edition of this interesting book of counsels was lithographed at Tíhrán in A. H. 1285.

² The chronology here seems very confused, this same date being given for the death of Tughril, who really died in A. H. 455 (A. D. 1063). A little further on, however, the date of Alp Arslán's death is correctly given as A. H. 465 (A. D. 1072), but on f. 158a the same erroneous date is repeated.

with his rebellious subject Bahrám Chúbína, and for whom he successively governed Iṣṭakhr, Adharbayján, 'Iráq and Tabaristán. Over the latter province he maintained his sway for 15 years after the Arabs had overrun the rest of Persia, but was at last treacherously slain by Walásh, who struck him from behind with a brick, and usurped his authority, driving his son Suhráb into exile. The latter, however, aided by the men of Kúlá, Khúrzád, Khusraw-isfáhí and Qárin-kúh, attacked Walásh at Panjáh-hazár and slew him, and was crowned at Farím. From that time until the death of Fakhru'd-Dawla, though they were partially subdued at different times by the 'Alawí Sayyids, the House of Gáwbára, the Qárinwands, the Buwayhids and the Ziyárids, no king or ruler was able to destroy or extirpate them, or (f. 154b) to take undivided possession of their domains.

Suhráb was succeeded by his son Mihr-mardán, and he, after a brief reign, by his grandson Sharwín b. Surkháb, who was the contemporary of Wandád-Hurmazd, and first took the title of "King of the Mountains". He and Wandád-Hurmazd united to drive the Arabs out of Tabaristán. The sons of these two, Shahriyár b. Sharwín and Qárin b. Wandád-Hurmazd were contemporaries of Hárúnu'r-Rashíd, to whom the former had been given as a hostage by his father.

Shahriyár was followed successively by his two sons Ja'far and Qárin. The latter, in the Caliphate of al-Mu'tásim, in the year A. H. 227 (= A. D. 841—2) abandoned the Zoroastrian religion and embraced Islám. He was the contemporary of the Dá'il-Kabír, who sent the Ustundár Padhúsbán to ravage his lands until he submitted to the Sayyid, and committed to him his sons Mázyár and Surkháb in the year A. H. 252 (= A. D. 866). The latter died young, and was succeeded by his son Rustam. When the

Dá'í, who was still reigning, punished the Daylamites for their disobedience by cutting off the hands and feet of about a thousand of them, the remainder of them fled to this Rustam, who led them to Qúmish, captured it, and banished the Dá'í's viceroy, Sayyid Qásim, to Sháh Dízh in Hazár Jaríb.

Rustam, being on bad terms with the Sayyid Muhammád b. Zayd (f. 155a) joined Ráfi' b. Harthama, the governor of Khurásán, and with him ravaged Mázandaran, Daylam and Rúyán. After a while Ráfi' returned to Khurásán, and, being routed by 'Amr b. Layth, fled to Gurgán and made peace with the Sayyid, but sent a message to Rustam informing him that this truce was only a stratagem, and inviting him to meet him at Astarábád. On his arrival, however, Rustam was treacherously seized by Ráfi' as he sat at meat, and was cast into prison, where he died in Ramaḍán, A. H. 282 (= October—November, A. D. 895).

He was succeeded by his son Sharwín, who made peace with Sayyid Násir-i-Kabír, and was contemporary with Mákán b. Kákí. Sharwín was in turn succeeded by his son Shahriyár, who was contemporary with Ruknu'd-Dawla the Buwayhid and Washmgír b. Ziyár. His son, who predeceased him, bore the name of his grandfather, Sharwín. Shahriyár survived till the time of Qábús b. Washmgír and Sultán Maḥmúd of Ghazna.

[Here the author cites from the *Chahár Maqála* the account of Firdawsí, and how he took refuge from Sultán Maḥmúd with this prince, given in that work by Nidhámí-i-Ārúdí-i-Samarqandí; which account has been published with a German translation by Dr. Ethé at pp. 89—94 of the *Z. D. M. G.* for 1894, Vol. XLVIII, and criticised by Nöldeke in his *Iranische Nationalepos*, pp. 21—30 of the *tirage-à-part*. A full English translation of this passage, which extends from f. 155a, l. 17 to f. 157b, l. 12, will be found

at pp. 77—84 of my translation of the *Chahár Maqála*, so that it may be passed over in this place.]

(F. 157b). The Ispahbad Shahriyár was succeeded by Dárá, who reigned but a short time, and was followed by his son Shahriyár, who accompanied Qábús b. Washmgír in his 18 years' exile, conquered Shahriyár-kúh and expelled its governor Rustam b. Marzubán, and, assisted by Bátí b. Sa'íd, in A. H. 387 (= A. D. 997) defeated Firúzán b. al-Hasan, and afterwards Naṣr b. Ḥasan.¹ But towards the end of the reign of Qábús (f. 158a) Shahriyár rebelled against him, and, being defeated by Rustam b. Marzubán, was imprisoned till his death. After this none of the House of Báwānd dared shew themselves or claim any power, until, when the Seljúqs conquered Khurásán, and the power of the House of Washmgír was destroyed, the Ispahbad Hu-sámu'd-Dawla Shahriyár b. Qárin restored in some degree the power and fortunes of his house.

[The author now returns to the history of the Seljúqs at the point where he left it to recount the history of the Báwānds, namely the death of Tughril and the accession of Alp Arslán. Most of what follows belongs to the general history of Persia from this to the Author's own time (first half of the thirteenth century of our era), while another hand has carried on the chronicle to A. H. 750 = A. D. 1349—1350.]²

(F. 158b). During the reign of Alp Arslán, Ṭabaristán suffered much from the constant passage of his troops, but the Ispahbad Qárin b. Surkháb of the House of Báwānd succeeded in re-establishing his power to some extent in the mountains, while the power of the House of Washmgír continually grew less. Qárin died in A. H. 486 (= A. D.

¹ See above, pp. 228—231.

² "This continuation," observes Mr. Ellis, "is absent from Add. 7633, f. 188b."

1093), and was succeeded by Ḥusámu'd-Dawla. About this time began the power of the Assassins. The 'New Propaganda', begun by Ḥasan-i-Şabbáh in Ray, was soon extended to Dámghán, Shahriyár-kúh, Damáwand and Qazwín, till finally the mountain fastness of Alamút, "the Eagle's Nest", was surrendered to them by its warden, 'Alawí Mahdí, on Wednesday, Rajab 6, A. H. 483 (= September 4, A. D. 1090), a date which, by a most curious coincidence, is represented by the sum of the numerical values of the letters composing its name¹. 'Alawí Mahdí received from Ḥasan-i-Şabbáh an order for 3000 *dinárs* on the governor of Gird-i-Kúh and Dámghán, Ra'is Mudhaffar, who, though ostensibly subordinate to Amír Dád Ḥabash b. Altúntásh, had secretly accepted the doctrine of, and sworn allegiance to, Ḥasan-i-Şabbáh. It was a great surprise to Mahdí when, on his presenting this order, it was at once honoured. The growing power (f. 159b) of Ḥasan-i-Şabbáh aroused the alarm of the Nidhámu'l-Mulk, who, however, was assassinated on the eve of Friday, Ramaḍán 12, A. H. 485 (= October 16, A. D. 1092) at Síhna near Naháwand by one of Ḥasan-i-Şabbáh's *fidd'is* named Táhir-i-Arráni, who had disguised himself as a Ṣúfí.

Very shortly after this, Maliksháh (f. 160a) died, and the civil war which broke out between his sons Muḥammad and Barkiyáruq permitted the Assassins to strengthen their position unmolested. On the death of Barkiyáruq, Muḥammad sent his brother Sanjar to attack them in Khurásán. He began by capturing a stronghold named Qal'a-i-Atash-Kúh

¹ This coincidence is remarked in the *Ta'rikh-i-Guzida* and many other histories. The name of the castle must, however, to yield the correct sum,

be written in its full form **آمُوت آله**, Áluh-ámút. I believe that Ibnu'l-Athír's explanation of the name as meaning "the Eagle's Teaching" is correct, for *áluh* occurs in Pahlawí meaning an eagle, and *ámút* certainly stands for *ámúkht* ("taught").

("the Castle of the Mountain of Fire")¹ which they had seized at the very gates of Isfahán, and putting several thousand of them to death there. He also ordered the Ispahbad Ḥusámu'd-Dawla Shahriyár b. Qárin to co-operate with him in extirpating the Assassins, under pain of dismissal, but he, displeased at the peremptory and minatory tone of the message, refused to do so. Thereupon² the Seljúq monarch sent 5000 horsemen under the command of Amír Sunqur of Bukhára to Mázandarán, ordering his governors in Láriján, Rúyán and Amul to join him and assist him. At Amul, accordingly, he was met by a number of local magnates (f. 160b), who proposed to accompany him by the sea-shore to Sári. The Ispahbad Ḥusámu'd-Dawla, being informed of this, collected to himself Amír Mahdí of Lafúr, one of the Qárinwands, and all the *amirs* and notables of Shahriyár Kúh, at a place called Aram, and together they marched on Sári, of which they proceeded to repair the fortifications. Sunqur encamped at a place called Atrábin. The Ispahbad promised his black Persian *kuláh*, round which he had wound a turban, to whichever of his sons would attack and rout the enemy. Najmu'd-Dawla Qárin at once alighted from his horse, took a Gili shield, opened the gate and went out, followed by his son, Fakhru'l-Mulk Rustam. Ḥusámu'd-Dawla had with him four hundred Gilís, all with shields and white plumes (*parcham*), and these he drew up in ranks before Sunqur's army. Then Farámarz b. Shírzád came forth with his horsemen.

Now Husámu'd-Dawla had induced an Amír named Bekcherí to desert Sunqur as soon as battle was joined; this he did, and was received with honour and sent to the Is-

¹ See *J. R. A. S.* for 1902, pp. 606-609. The castle in question is generally named Dízkuh or Shah-Díz. It fell on Sha'bán 6, A. H. 500 (= April 2, A. D. 1107).

² ["In A. H. 500 (= A. D. 1106-7)": so Add. 7633, f. 191a. A. G. E.]

pahbad's palace. Najmu'd-Dawla Qárin then attacked Sunqur; the noise of battle scared all the water-fowl in the surrounding marshes (f. 161a) and they rose into the air with tumultuous cries, so that Sunqur thought that he was being attacked by another force in the rear. His army gave way, and fled, pursued by Najmu'd-Dawla, who killed and took captive many of them, especially the foot-soldiers of Amul. The people of Sári blackened the faces of the captive Amulis, branded on their foreheads the names of Muhammad and 'Alí, and paraded them through the town, after which they were released. Then the Ispahbad divided the abundant spoils which had fallen to their lot, and dismissed the *marzubáns* and other local chiefs who had helped him with presents and robes of honour.

Sunqur meanwhile fell back on Gurgán, and thence returned to Isfahán, where he told the Sultán that by force they could effect nothing in that wild country, but only by political stratagems. So the Sultán sent another embassy to the Ispahbad, telling him that Sunqur had exceeded his orders in making this attack, and asking him to send one of his sons to the court at Isfahán. To this proposal the Ispahbad finally consented, on receiving the Sultán's solemn promise, confirmed by an oath, that the son thus sent should be treated with all honour; and, summoning his sons before him, communicated to them the Sultán's proposal, and asked which of them would go. Najmu'd-Dawla Qárin, having taken part in the attack on Sunqur, dared not venture, but his brother 'Alá'u'd-Dawla 'Alí b. (f. 161b) Shahriyár volunteered to go, and was accordingly sent off to Isfahán with a pious Sayyid named Muntahí as his tutor, and an escort of a thousand horse and two thousand foot. His father accompanied him from Sári as far as Farím, and sent him on his journey by way of Asrán and Samnán.

At this time the castle of Ustúnáwand was in the hands of the Assassins, and also the castle of Mansúr-kúh. Some of the garrison of the latter had come to Dámghán, and the Amír Qachghuz attacked them and slew many. Then he joined 'Alá'u'd-Dawla 'Alí, and, being under obligations to his father Husámu'd-Dawla the Ispahbad, took charge of him and brought him to Isfahán, where he was most graciously received by the Sultán, who was still more favourably impressed when he saw the young Prince's prowess in polo, hunting, and throwing the mace, which he could throw as far as the Sultán could shoot an arrow. The Sultán then offered him the hand of his sister in marriage, but he, fearing the jealousy of Najmu'd-Dawla, suggested that this honour should rather be accorded to his elder brother. The Sultán approved this suggestion; the marriage contract was drawn up, and 'Alá'u'd-Dawla was sent back to Tabaristán with presents and robes of honour to convey the news. At Amul he was magnificently received by all the notables, and there he tarried ten days, when he was joined by the chief men of Shahriyár-kúh, who accompanied him to Sári. His father, after congratulating him on his success, sent him to his brother Najmu'd-Dawla Qárin, who, however, refused to receive him, and, being rebuked by their father the Ispahbad, sought permission to go to Baghdad, which he was suffered to do.

On reaching Baghdad, Najmu'd-Dawla, who was a brave and skilful horseman, perfect in all knightly accomplishments, was met by the Sultán, who soon afterwards took him with himself to Isfahán, where he married him to his sister. Then he set out to return to Tabaristán, on hearing which his younger brother 'Alá'u'd-Dawla craved permission from their father the Ispahbad to retire into seclusion, for he feared his brother (f. 162b). Husámu'd-Dawla met his son Najmu'd-Dawla at Farím towards Sam-

nán, and gave him the castle of Kúzá. This vexed 'Alá'u'd-Dawla, since it had been given to him, and, though his father sent Amír Mahdí of Lafur to Zárim, where he was, to pacify him, he retired in anger to Gulpáyagán, and took up his abode in a village called Mírwand-ábád, which was his mother's property. Najmu'd-Dawla came to Sári, and, charging his father with being privy to his brother's withdrawal, threatened him, ill-used his servants, and desired to claim for himself the symbols of authority; and his father, being then 75 years of age, finally gave way to his violent and unfilial conduct, abdicated, and retired to Amul. Thither Najmu'd-Dawla, fearful of what men might say of him, followed him, offered profuse apologies, and brought him back to Sári; but, as his conduct did not greatly amend, Husámu'd-Dawla again withdrew to Húsam into religious seclusion. "I have heard from my father," says the author, "that when he reached Amul, he passed by the gate of a Mosque where was a school for children, and said (f. 163a), 'O my children, when you grow up, say, 'Shahriyár, abandoning his throne, fled to Daylamán from the hands of his own son Qárin.'" All the people of Gil and Daylam rallied round him at Húsam, but he, wearied of sovereignty, occupied himself in building, farming and religious exercises. After a while he fell ill, and his son Najmu'd-Dawla, again repenting of his harshness, sent several notables to Amul to bring his father thither. There he met him, fell at his feet and apologized for his conduct, and brought him with him to Sári, leaving the care of the estates of Húsam to an old servant called Amír Hasan.

The Sultán, Muhammad b. Maliksháh, had a young son named Malik Ahmád, whom he entrusted to the care of an Amír named Sunqur-i-Kúchak, and sent to Ray, making him governor of that town, together with Awa, Sáwa, Arrán, Khwár, Samnán, Rúyán, Láriján, Ṭabaristán and Gurgán.

But every agent sent by Sunqur-i-Kúchak to Amul was expelled by Najmu'd-Dawla Qárin. This continued for some time, till at last Sunqur sent to 'Alá'u'd-Dawla 'Alí, Najmu'd-Dawla's brother, offering to appoint him governor of Amul and Ṭabaristán, if he would come to Malik Ahmád. So 'Alá'u'd-Dawla (f. 163b) came to Ray, where he was well received, and sent with Sunqur's brother Jáwalí an army to Amul. There the notables came out to meet him, with Amír Hassán Bahá'u'd-Dawla the governor of the town, and installed him in the palace called Kúshk-i-Jáwalí, which in the author's time was razed to the ground by Sháh Ardashír. Husámu'd-Dawla, on hearing this, came with the army of Shahriyár-kúh to Lák-Abandán, and made an agreement with Jáwalí, whom he sent with Sháh Gházi Rustam to Aram, where he was entertained for a week, and then sent back to 'Iráq.

About this time a quarrel arose between the Ispahbad and the Assassins, because they had killed a certain Abu Ja'far Bawandí. One day the Ispahbad Sháh Gházi Rustam was passing through the quarter of the Mosque of Zanakú when an Assassin sprang out on him and tried to stab him, but failed and was slain by the clubs of the companions of his intended victim. To his father Sháh Gházi made light of this event, but a little later, while on his way from Sári to Amul, two Assassins attacked him while he was out hunting in the plain of Walikán, at a moment when he had alighted to drink water, and inflicted a deep gash in his side. One of these Assassins was killed by Husayn Shírzil; the other drew his knife (f. 164a), rushed amongst the Ispahbad's servants, and wounded several of them ere he was himself slain. Sháh Gházi recovered from his wound, which, though deep, had not involved the intestines. His father the Ispahbad came to Amul on hearing the news, and wept bitterly over his son's misfortune.

About this time Sultán Sanjar commanded the Ispahbad to wait on him, but he apologized on the ground of his age, and offered to send his sons. Sanjar was angry at this, and sent his nephew Sultán Mas'úd with an army to Astarábád to take Shahriyár-Kúh from the Ispahbad, who, however, defeated him near Tammísha and slew many of his men. He was joined by Kiyá Buzurg ad-Dá'i ila'l-Haqq [b. al-] Hádí with 5000 Daylamites, and soon afterwards by his son Sháh-i-Ghází, who had recovered from his wound (f. 164b); and with their aid inflicted a second still more severe defeat on Mas'úd, who, having lost half his army, together with the Amír Jálwáli, fled to Gurgán. This happened in A. H. 521 (A. D. 1127).

Sanjar, infuriated at this reverse, invited one of his *amirs* to volunteer to avenge it. Bazghash offered his services, which were accepted, and came to Dámghán, whence he sent harsh messages to the Ispahbad, who was at the castle of Kúzá, and who received his threats with derision. It was then Ramaqán, but, as soon as the fast and ensuing festival were over, he moved to Tammísha, while Bazghash came to Astarábád and besieged the castle of Rúhín. The Ispahbad left his son Táju'l-Mulúk Mardáwíj in Tammísha, and came to Sári. Mardáwíj remained for eight months (f. 165a) in Tammísha, so that Bazghash could not move, while Qárin b. Garshásf continued to defend the castle of Rúhín successfully. Then news arrived that Qarája the cup-bearer had gone to Baghdad with the army of 'Iráq and was acting as Atábek, or guardian, to Seljúqsháh, and that Mas'úd also had gone to them from Gurgán; and Bazghash, being recalled by the Sultán, was compelled to retire.

The Ustundár Kay-Ká'ús and Fakhru'd-Dawla Garshásf agreed together to rebel against the Ispahbad. When each had returned to his own country, the latter first revolted at Gulpáyagán, and ravaged the district of Astarábád. The

Ispahbad retaliated by attacking Gulpáyagán, plundering and burning the neighbourhood, and killing several of Fakhru'd-Dawla's men. Meanwhile the Ustundár Kay-Ká'ús took advantage of the Ispahbad's absence to attack Amul, burn the Ispahbad's palace of Baqrá-Kaláta, and expel his retainers from the town. Fakhru'd-Dawla meanwhile, being driven out of Gulpáyagán, retired to the castle of Jahína. The Ispahbad despatched his son 'Alá'u'd-Dawla Hasan to attack Kay-Ká'ús, who, however, set an ambush for him and defeated him, so that he fled, and, by the help of one Dárgil, crossed over by boat into Gilán and betook himself to the house of Sultán-Sháh-i-Gíl. After a while he desired to return to his father the Ispahbad, who, however, being vexed at his defeat, refused to receive him, and ordered that he should retire to Karkam, and that certain of his officers, Amír 'Ali Sábiqú'd-Dawla, Mudhaffar-i-'Alawí (f. 165b), Majdu'd-Dín Dárá and Abú Hásim-i-'Alawí, should for a period of one year not ride on horseback, and should each retire to a different place, which in each case he specified. But Amír 'Ali Sábiqú'd-Dawla propitiated the Ispahbad with a gift of a thousand sheep, though he was still kept out of his fief-holds for a year. Shortly afterwards the Ispahbad succeeded in surprising and putting to flight the Ustundár Kay-Ká'ús, and plundering his palace.

One of the Ispahbad's vassals named Minúchihr had embellished his estate of Kuhrúd with all sorts of rare merchandise from India, Asia Minor, Egypt and Syria. He had several daughters and eighteen sons, of whom the eldest, Abú Ḥarb, was violent, undutiful, shameless, and without fear of God. One day he fled from his father, who sent soldiers in pursuit of him. He had reached the dyke called Dar-band-i-Shínúh when they came up with him, and he, to escape, leaped his horse into the river Hormuz, which there runs like a mill-race. The soldiers, supposing him to have

perished, returned, but he reached the shore and made his way to Amul, where he was furnished with clothes (f. 166a), and sent to the court of the Ispahbad, who treated him with kindness and sent him back to his father.

His father, meanwhile, had disinherited him in favour of a younger brother, which so infuriated him that one night in Ramaḍán he invited his brothers to a banquet, and caused each one to be murdered as he was leaving the house. Then he came to his father, and, taking him unawares, smote him on the head with a mace and slew him (f. 166b), while his followers cut down one or two servants who offered resistance. He then announced to the people that he had done this deed by order of the king of Māzandarān, and sent a message to the Ispahbad, saying what he had done, and promising to appear before him if summoned. So the Ispahbad, who was just setting out for Amul from Kajúr, bade him come, and Abú Ḥarb joined him with 300 soldiers, horse and foot. The combined armies marched by way of Daylamán, Kalár, and Gúrshírad to Kajú, which they set on fire. Near this place they were met by the Ustundár Kay-Ká'ús, and a fierce fight ensued, in which 900 of the Ustundár's men were killed and 400 taken prisoners, though he himself escaped with a few retainers. The Ispahbad (f. 167a) than returned to Amul, where he bound the 400 unfortunate captives to the staircase of the Palace which Kay-Ká'ús had burned, wrapped it in reeds and matting, and burned them all. The Ispahbad then set out for Daylamán, but when he reached Banafsha-gún, Kay-Ká'ús came before him with a sword and a winding-sheet to make his submission. He was ordered to collect his army and join the Ispahbad at Amul to help him in dislodging Garshásf from his castle of Juhína. There he received, at the Ispahbad's command, 1000 gold *dinars* of Amul from the *marzubán* of that city, whose exactions had,

as he declared, driven him into rebellion, and a remission of certain sums of money for which he was responsible....

(F. 167b). The Ispahbad Sháh Gházi Rustam was now sixty years old. On the first of Farwardín, the Persian Nawrúz, he reviewed his army at Sári, in the *maydán* of Atrábin, Sábiq of Qazwín being on one side of him, and on the other Abú Ḥarb of Láriján. He bade them bring him a polo-stick and ball, and struck the ball, saying, "O sixtieth year, I know not whether thou art come for sickness or death!" Then he threw down the polo-stick and dismissed his army; and on that very day he fell sick. He retired to the village of Zínwán, distant one parasang from Sári, and there died on the 17th of Farwardín, A. H. 558 (April, A. D. 1163), leaving two sons, Sharafu'l-Mulúk Hasan b. Rustam and 'Alá'u'd-Dawla, and a daughter, whom Sháh Ardashír gave in marriage to the Ispahbad Našíru'd-Dawla Dárá b. Bahman. 'Alá'u'd-Dawla was put to death by Sháh Ardashír near Tarícha. On the death of Sháh Gházi Rustam a poet has the following verses:

لیو سپید سر ز دماغند این بودن
کاندر زمته رستم مازندران نمایند
اع پرده دار پرده فرو عذر که بار نیست
بر خشت رستم بن علی شیریار نیست

The Ispahbad Sháh Gházi was buried by the notables of Tabaristán, such as the Ispahbad Majdu'd-Dín Dárá, king of Daylamán, Amír 'Alí Sábiq'u'd-Dawla, Sayyid Hashim the 'Alawí and Amír Surkháb, in the college where 'Alá'u'd-Dawla had been buried. After the funeral these notables met in the house of Shahrasán b. Asán, and (f. 168a) wrote to Sharafu'l-Mulúk Hasan to inform him of his father's death. He, though ill at the time, at once came to Sári,

and despatched his boon-companion Kay-Ká'ús with fifty horsemen to Aba-sar to seize his brother Náširu'l-Mulk, who enjoyed the fullest confidence of the late Ispahbad Sháh Ghází, and cut off his head.... The warden of the castle of Ṭabarák sent to the Ispahbad offering to surrender it, as he was a Turk, and could not hold it. "Iráq also," he added, "like Mázandarán, is thine; send thy warden to Ṭabarák, and take possession of Ray, for I have business before me." So, though it was bitter cold that year, the Ispahbad sent 300 men and a warden to take possession of that country, and ordered the *marzubán* of Láriján and the Ustundár to keep a daily watch on the state of the castle and the Amír 'Inánj.

When the Ispahbad used to sit late drinking wine, none of his servants dared go to his home, for, if he wanted one of them, and did not find him, he would on such occasions punish him with death. So only when he fell asleep towards morning did they dare to depart to their homes to rest. One night 300 of these servants conspired together to kill him, and those who were on duty, watching their opportunity, fell upon him, and so plied their swords and maces that, when they left him dead, not one of his limbs was whole. Then (f. 168b) they went out, saying that the Ispahbad desired to be left alone, and bade all disperse, which they did. Sháh Ardashír, learning what had happened, desired to pursue the murderers, but was dissuaded; but such as were recognized were arrested wherever they were found and sent to him, singly or in batches, and he caused them to be hung up and shot with arrows, until in the course of a year, all had been taken and killed.

The Ispahbad had four sons and one daughter. Two of the sons, Yazdigird and 'Alí, died before their father, while Husámu'd-Dawla Sháh Ardashír and Fakhru'l-Mulúk Rustam survived him. His daughter was noted for her piety, de-

voutness and virtue. Náširu'd Dín Rúz-Bihán composed the following verses on the death of the Ispahbad:

ای آمدن و گذشتنت چون سیلاب
چون آتش سوختی جهانی بشتاب
چون باد نه آسایش بودیت نه خواب
در خاک نیان شدی کنون چون سیماب

When the Ustundár Hazárasp obtained control of his dominion, he ordered his son Zar-míwand Máníwand and his brother Shirwánsháh to be put to death. Both fled for protection to king Ardashír, who (f. 169a) sent a message of remonstrance to the Ustundár, saying:

چون سبک سر بود خوبیش کم سبک سر سبکته در افتاد بدام

Admonition, however, availed nothing. The Ustundár was abandoned by 'Aynu'd-Dawla Siyáh, Arslán, Ṭanṭíq and the Turkish Amírs, who joined themselves to the King, and were re-inforced by Arjásf, who, having obtained king Ardashír's permission, raided the marches of Daylamán, and brought in all the inhabitants and the soldiers of that district into Amul, on which Hazárasp began to march. King Ardashír collected an army of 14,000 Turks and Tájíks, set out for Rúyán, and came as far as Nátíl, where he heard that Hazárasp was engaged in battle with Khwájak. The King sent on his standards and insignia, and as soon as these were seen, Hazárasp's men took to flight, and many were taken and killed, while he himself fell back on Kajú. The King encamped at Siyáh-rúd, where he remained two days, till the people of Rúyán came in to make their submission to him. Then he marched on to Kajú, ravaging the country as he went, and then returned to Qúr-shírad and Kalar (f. 169b).

In this year Sultán Ṭughril and the Atábek Muḥammad¹ rebelled, and demanded help from the King, having already received it from the Caliph, the Amírs of Aywa, and the armies of Arrán, Adharbayján, Akhlát and Marágha. The Ispahbad Bahá'u'd-Dín was accordingly sent to join them, and he came to Lafúr with so splendid an equipment of weapons adorned with gold that he was nick-named "the Golden Amír" (*Amír-i-Zarrín*). He aided in defeating the Atábek Darkala, and was dismissed to his country with honour and presents, while the Ispahbad was thanked for the aid which he had lent.

In this year a noble, brave and accomplished 'Alawí waited on the king, and was by him given rank and insignia, and assigned the district of Daylamán, which belonged to Kiyá Buzurg ad-Dá'i ila'l-Haqq ar-Riḍá b. al-Hádí. He at once entered into possession, and ruled justly, and put to death the Ispahbad Shahriyár and Rustam, and liberated Bárkala after he had been imprisoned for some years, and imprisoned the governor of the city (*shahr-dár*) for sixteen years (f. 170a) in the castle of Kúzá

In this year also Táju'd-Dín Túránsháh b. Zardastán died. Arjásf obtained permission to go to Alexandria (*sic!*) and raise an army wherewith to invade Gílán, but died there. King Ardashír made his cousin Hizibrú'd-Dín Khurshíd commander-in-chief of his army, and made him governor of Amul and viceroy of Rúyán. Hazárasp and his brother went to Hamadán to Sultán Ṭughril and the Atábek Muḥammad, and prayed these to intercede for them that they might be permitted to return home. The Atábek 'Izzu'd-Dín was there-

¹ That is, I suppose, the Atábek Muḥammad the son of Ilduguz, to whose wise administration the prosperity of the first ten years of the reign of Ṭughril b. Arslán (reigned A. H. 573—590 = A. D. 1177—1194) was due, according to the historian of the Seljúqs, Najmu'd-Dín Abú Bakr Muḥammad ar-Ráwandi. See *J. R. A. S.* for 1902, p. 876.

fore sent as an ambassador to Amul to the king of Mázandarán, who, however, declined to overlook Hazárasp's previous misdeeds. Hazárasp was told that he must himself go to the king and seek to conciliate him:

خواراسفرا جواب باز دادند که ملازمت درگاه او باید کرد و رضای او
جست پادشاه هنری الدین خوشیدرا مدد فرستاده ابو بکر درازگوشرا
ت بدر دروازه ری بدنبال پر داشته بدوانیدند و شاعر میگوید
ملک مازندران را چون توان کرد ببتو بکری و ترکی چند عاجز
که کون غریب از صد من ایپیشم رفو نکنند صد مرد مضرز

(F. 170b). The following verses were also improvised on Hazárasp by other poets:

(بیت)

پیر ران چو خوار اسپرا یک اسپ نمند
درازگوش نلب کرد و زو حمایت خواست

(رباعی)

شاعر بیوس مرکب تری جویند خردا ز پی هنر و بازی جویند
شاید که خوار اسپ پس از عمر دراز قوت ز درازگوش رازی جویند
(رباعی)

هرگز رستم ز نیز باری رنجد یا رعد ز بانگ نبل بازی رنجد
شایق که خوار اسپ انگیزد اوست هرگز ز دراز گوش رازی رنجد
(رباعی)

نه بیغ و نه بوسنان گوینم بی تو نه با می و دوستان نشینم بی تو
نوك می خار باد در دیده من گر عیچ گل جهان بچینم بی تو

He left a little son named Sanjar Sháh, born of Turkán Khátún, and one of Ṭughánsháh's retainers named Manklí-

tukuz undertook to be his guardian, or Atábek. He put to death the Qáqí Burhán, and on this a poet says:

جور تو ز جور آل مردان بیش است
پر عان کشتن ز خون عثمان بیش است
انصف بد که اشک مظلومان
گر جمع شود ز آب طوفان بیش است

Sháh Ardashír soon afterwards (f. 171a) hanged Manklitukuz for this deed. Sanjar Sháh and his mother carried off Qiwám 'Alí and other notables to Khwárazm, and seized the king of Khurásán, Quṭbu'd-Dín Khán, who was his eldest son, and cut off his head, which he sent to the king at the Palace of Dawlatábád at Sári, on which a poet says:

عمر سر نه به بر سر رفای تو بود
بی تی سر او چون سر زردستان باد

..... (f. 171) Verses on the untrustworthiness of women:

زن گر نه یکی عزار باشد در عهد کم استوار باشد
چون نقش دفا و عهد بستند بر نام زنان قلم شکستند
زن نیک بود و نی زمانی تا جز تو نیافت مهربانی
چون با دگری فرو نشیند خواعد که وجود تو نبینند
این کار زنان راست بازست افسون زنان بد درازست

Qizil Arslán was assassinated at Hamadán by four men, at the instigation of Záhida Khátún¹, who plucked the ring from his finger, gave it to the Atábek Abú Bakr, his nephew, and said, "Go, assume control of Arrán and Adharbayján." This Abú Bakr did, and reigned in peace for twenty years.

¹ This took place in A. H. 587 (= A. D. 1191).

At this time took place the accession and coronation of the Ispahbad Shamsu'l-Mulúk Rustam. Ruknu'd-Dawla Qárin, accompanied by the nobles of Ṭabaristán, came to make him their offerings at the castle of Dárá. The day fixed for the coronation was declared by the astrologers to be unlucky, but the Ispahbad paid no heed to their objections. The coronation festivities lasted seven days, according to the old Persian fashion, and included the usual feastings, rejoicings, and giving of presents, while the notables and Ispahbads and Báwands assembled from all the country-side. When (f. 172a) these congratulations were finished, on the eighth day the Ispahbad ascended the throne, and girded on the royal girdle, and confirmed the governors in their appointments, and caused the Ispahbads and Amírs to cast aside their mourning, and clad them in robes of honour.

Ruknu'd-Dawla Qárin was dissatisfied with the Ispahbad on account of the inheritance of his elder brother Sharafu'l-Muluk, and appealed to the Sultán, who sent 'Alí Sháh, governor of Dámghán and Bisṭám, with some soldiers to bid the Ispahbad, first with gentleness, and, if this failed, with a show of force, to surrender Sharafu'l-Muluk's inheritance to his brother Ruknu'd-Dawla. He also ordered the Amírs of Ray and Gurgán to help him in this. So 'Alí Sháh came by way of Firuzkúh to Láriján, and encamped at Rúdbár-pich, and sent his brother-in-law on with a message by way of Mankúl; but the people of Shaláb waylaid him and killed him. There was a certain 'Alawi named Músá, who, before Tukush b. Il-Arslán became king², had fled from Khwárazm and taken refuge with king Ardashír, and had long been a source of trouble and sedition in Tammisha. He induced the Sultán to appoint him *wasir* to 'Alí Sháh.

¹ Till A. H. 607 (A. D. 1210). See S. Lane-Poole's *Mohammadan Dynasties*, p. 171.

² i.e. King of Khwárazm, which he did in A. H. 568 (= A. D. 1172).

whom he tried to persuade (f. 172b) to seize the Ispahbad and take from him the kingdom of Mázandarán. Failing in this attempt, he strove to provoke the Ispahbad against 'Alí Shah, who sent his head to the Ispahbad, by whom it was paraded for three days in the market. His sons, who were at Amul, were also arrested and imprisoned for some time in the castle of Kuhrúd. Peace was then concluded between the Ispahbad and 'Alí Shah, and the former restored to Ruknu'd-Dawla the estates of his elder brother Sharafu'l-Mulúk. Ruknu'd-Dawla then surrendered the castle of Kuzá to the Ispahbad's warden Afrásiyáb, and himself waited on the Ispahbad, who received him with all honour.

Shortly after this the Assassins (f. 173a) treacherously murdered Ruknu'd-Dawla, and obtained various signal successes. Shamsu'l-Mulúk had no son, but he gave his sister in marriage to the Ispahbad Shahriyár b. Kíkhwár b. Rustam b. Dárá b. Shahriyár, who was "the Father of kings" (*Abu'l-Muluk*). This sister bore a son named Kíkhwár, who was cousin on the father's side to king Husámu'd-Dawla Ardashír b. Kíkhwár. Husámu'd-Dawla Shahriyár lived in the reign of Maliksháh the Seljúq, who used to address him as his "father", as witnessed by the verse of the poet Ráfií:

م ملک خواند م پدر سلطان عصرش در جهان
گر نداری باور از من نامه سلطان نگر
بر جهان و بر بزرگان جهان تا روز حشر
شہریار قارئ سرخابرا فرمان نگر

while in another verse he says:

داند ملک از قدر ترا داور گیتی خواند پدر از فخر ترا خسرو علام

At this period Sultán Jalálu'd-Dín Muḥammad Khwárazmsháh, taking advantage of the growing weakness and dis-

ruption of House of Báwand, took possession of sundry castles and lands outside Tammísha, and garrisoned them with his own men. Abú Riḍá Husayn b. Muḥammad Abu 'l-Alawí al-Mamtírí, on Shawwál 21, A. H. 606 (= April 1, A. D. 1210) treacherously murdered Naṣru'd-Dawla Shamsu'l-Mulúk. This caused further confusion and disorganization, and many of the nobles of Ṭabaristán submitted to Muḥammad Khwárazmsháh. But in a little while this dynasty in turn was brought to an end by the terrible Mongol Invasion (f. 173b). The destruction and devastation resulting therefrom included Ṭabaristán as well as other provinces of Persia, and for thirty years it was without a king or ruler, while the armies of destroying Mongols traversed it to and fro.

At last, after this period of anarchy, the people of Mázandarán and Ṭabaristán met in council at Sári, and chose as their ruler Malik Husámu'd-Dawla Ardashír b. Kíkhwár (or Kíkhwáz) b. Rustam b. Dárá b. Shahriyár, who for some time revived the glories of his ancient house and kingdom. But soon he too was overtaken by misfortune, even as Shamsu'l-Ma'álí Qábus b. Washmgír says in well-known verses:¹

فَلْ لَذْنَى بِصَرُوفِ الدَّهْرِ عَيْنَى فَلْ عَنَّدَ الدَّعْرِ إِلَّا مَنْ لَهُ خَطْرٌ
أَمَا تَقْرَبَ أَبْحَرَ يَعْلُو فَوْقَ جَيْفٍ وَيَسْتَقْرُرُ بِأَعْلَى قَعْدَرِ الدَّرَرِ
وَفِي أَسْمَاءِ نَجْوَمٍ مَا لَهَا عَدْدٌ وَلَيْسَ يُكَسِّفُ إِلَّا أَشْمَسَ وَالنَّقْرَ
(F. 174a)

On his accession, Husámu'd-Dawla Ardashír transferred the capital from Sári, which the House of Báwand had always hitherto made its metropolis, to Amul, where he made his palace at Qará-Kaláta on the banks of the river Hurmuz. Once, says the author, when he was walking through it, he

¹ These verses are also cited at the end of the third volume of the *Yatimatu'd-Dahr* (Damascus edition, p. 290). I have translated them at p. 470 of my *Literary History of Persia*.

read, amongst the paintings on the wall a long bilingual (*mulamma*) *qaṣida* by Siráju'd-Dín Qumrí, beginning as follows:

وَصَلَ الْعَبْدُ إِلَيْيَ مَقْدِمَ كَسْرَى الْثَانِي
مَلِكَ الْعَادِلِ بْنِ الْعَزَّةِ وَالْبَرْقَانِ
بَاسِطَ الْجُنُودِ عَلَى الْكَاشِحِ وَالْخَلَانِ
صَدِقَ الْوَعْدَ فَلَا يَخْلُفُ كَالْخَوَانِ
أَرْدِشِيرُ أَنْ شِدْرِيْ دَلَّ دَهْ كَهْ بَخْشَشْ وَجَنَّكَ
نَكْنَارَدْ أَثْرَ هَسْتَيْ دَرِيَا وَنَبِنَكَ
أَنْدَهْ بَهْرَامْ فَلَكْ رَوْيِ سَوَى كُورْ نَهَدْ
جَوْنْ وَقْ أَزْ بَيْشْ بَرْ آرَدْ بَكَهْ جَنَّكَ خَدَنَكَ

His father Kinkhwár (or Kíkhwáz) was the nephew of Sháh Ardashír b. al-Hasan, while he himself was the nephew of Jalálu'd-Dín Hasan b. 'Alá'u'd-Dín Muḥammad [Khwárazmsháh]. But in the year A. H. 647 (= A. D. 1249–1250) he died, having reigned fifteen years.

[It is not clear at what point the record written by *Ibn Isfandiyár* ends, and the continuation supplied by another hand and carried down to A. D. 750 (= A. D. 1349–1350) begins, but it seems unlikely that *Ibn Isfandiyár* continued the history beyond this point].

At this time Mangú Qáán (the grandson of Chingíz Khán) sat on the Mongol throne. Husámu'd-Dawla Ardashír was succeeded by his elder son Shamsu'l-Mulük Muḥammad (f. 174b). Mangú Qáán sent an army under the Amír Kat Búqá to subdue the castles and strongholds of the Assassins. Many of these he reduced, but Gird-i-Kúh, Alamút, Tún und Qáin still held out. Mangú then sent his brother, the redoubtable Húlágú, who first took Tún and Qáin, and captured so many prisoners that Khurásán was filled with slaves.

He then laid siege to Gird-i-Kúh and Alamút. Kiyá Muḥammad b. al-Hasan, entitled by his followers al-Qá'im bi'amri'lláh, was at that time Grand Master of the Assassins, but he was killed by one of his sons, and his son Ruknu'd-Dín Khúrsháh (or Khwarsháh), who was but an inexperienced lad, succeeded him. The philosopher Naṣiru'd-Dín Túsi, whom Kiyá Muḥammad b. al-Hasan had forcibly detained and compelled to act as his *wazir*, while professing friendship for the heretics, was inwardly eager to compass their destruction, and when Ruknu'd-Dín Khúrsháh asked his advice as to how he should answer Húlágú Khán, he counselled him (f. 175a) not to give battle, for which the stars were not propitious, but to surrender Alamút, which he accordingly did. He was at once put in chains and sent off to Mangú Qáán, who, however, on hearing what had been done, sent a messenger to meet him and put him to death. Alamút was destroyed, and its priceless treasures and library delivered to the flames. But Naṣiru'd-Dín Túsi was treated with honour, and retained in Hulágú Khán's service.

Húlágú Khán now marched on Baghdad, [sacked the city and destroyed the last 'Abbásid Caliph, al-Mustaṣim bi'lláh, as is well known]. As regards the remaining stronghold of the Assassins, Gird-i-Kúh, orders were issued to all the princes, potentates and nobles of the district to besiege it in turns; and after two or three years the turn came to the King and the Ustundár of Mazandarán. So the King of Mázandarán, Shamsu'l-Mulük Muḥammad b. Ardashír, and the Ustundár, Shahrákím b. Namáwar, set out to conduct the siege; and a daughter of the latter had been betrothed to the former. It was spring, and there was in Rúyán (f. 175b) a poet named Quṭb-i-Rúyáni who composed a *tarjí'-band* in the dialect of Tabaristán on the spring season and the hunting in Rúyán, as follows:

داوا ورد^۱ درشی^۲ چل شم ای شیم
 و اپی کرد بناز و شکت و عار^۳ دجیردیم^۴
 کنی کرم^۵ وادکن سرما و کالیم^۶
 روباری او هارش بلی^۷ در فالیم^۸
 مید شمی^۹ شنی ای سنبله خوری بیم
 آهو سنبل^{۱۰} ور^{۱۱} بکرد زیله رازیم^{۱۲}
 نیکس دعیت^{۱۳} جام زر در بودیات^{۱۴} سیم
 دبیری^{۱۵} بیازریر بسیم^{۱۶} زری میم
 و نوشہ بنز عو^{۱۷} کرد سرو در ومه^{۱۸}
 چادر بکبو کرد بکلو^{۱۹} کرد جومه^{۲۰}

[The following additional verses are given only in B.]

ایلک و ویلک عا و شکت ای سکیلم
 سنناور بیا ای زکه نلیرم
 و بیسی حا و شکوت جون و شکوت هنکم
 روی سمع و شکوت بوجون سنبوره دم
 فونیم وندی هازه سر بوشهه رم
 شیم هازن آسا سر بدوله جم
 کیلونه و بیسی دم دجاينی خور
 هاییت و عشت سون دشت و کو و مسیر

[The following additional verses are omitted in A.]

بجیردیم A. درشتی^۲ C. بهار^۳ A. داواه^۴ C.
 بایع^۵ B. دکالیم^۶ B. کرمه^۷ C. عجیردیم^۸
 در^۹ C. سنبلی^{۱۰} B. میدشی^{۱۱} C. در فالیم^{۱۲}
 بودیات^{۱۳} C. بودیات^{۱۴} B. دیست^{۱۵} C. دست^{۱۶} زاریم^{۱۷} B.
 نیازر دو^{۱۸} A. نیازرس^{۱۹} C. دپری^{۲۰} A. دپری^{۲۱} C. سروادروم^{۲۲} B.
 بناز و عو^{۲۳} B. کرچومه^{۲۴} C. سروادروم^{۲۵} B.

شکار کاعیکم خروم بورود^۱ ازی
 ویری وند کاعیکم خوش بوكلاری
 جتنه خور شکار سک شکار سلاری
 ... عیکم بسی ریوز بباشکاری
 کوهیکم جری تر لسرا ولاری
 آپنه نیاز عیکم خوش بوسلاز
 شد کین خشت عولار زتن عو^۲ زماین
 بین انکشت عوکلر در کیب جای

When Shamsu'l-Mulük was killed, his brother 'Alá'u'd-Dawla 'Alí was made king, and he was aided by his brother-in-law the Ustundár Shahrákím, but a fresh inrush of Mongols reduced his power to nothing and filled the land with ruins. He died in A. H. 663 (= A. D. 1264-5), in the same year in which his brother had been killed, and the devastation of Rustamdar, Mázandarán and Rúyán took place at the same time.

(F. 176). Malik Táju'd-Dawla Yazdigird next succeeded, and in his time such order prevailed that a single officer, armed only with an axe, Hasan Qádi Kal by name, used, alone and on foot, to collect all the taxes of Mázandarán from Tamimísha to Alisha-rúd, and bring them to the capital. Táju'd-Dawla maintained the most friendly relations with the Ustundár Sháh Gházi. He reigned 30 years, overcoming many difficulties in his relations with the Mongols, and died in A. H. 701 (= A. D. 1301-2). He left a son named Sikandar, who, however, died soon after him, and he was succeeded by another son named Naširu'd-Dawla Shahriyár. In his days there were still seventy flourishing colleges in Mázandarán.

سو^۱.

Shahriyár, following the example of his predecessors, allied himself by marriage with the Ustundár Sháh Kay-Khusraw. The Mongol dominion, however, left them but little power or security, and Shahriyár, after a reign of twelve years, died in A. H. 714 (= A. D. 1314—1315), and (f. 176b) was succeeded by his brother Malik Ruknu'd-Dawla Sháh Kay-Khusraw b. Táju'd-Dawla Yazdigird. At this juncture Amír Mú'min, Amíru'l-Umará, represented the Mongol government in Ṭabaristán, and between him and Ruknu'd-Dawla there was perpetual warfare. The latter entrusted his women and children to the care of the Ustundár Naṣíru'd-Dawla Shahriyár, who placed them at Iwájan in Kalá-Rustáq; but could not prevail against Amír Mú'min, who enjoyed the fullest confidence of the Mongol sovereign Úljáytú Sultán Muhammad Khudá-banda, and who, having obtained authority to that effect from the Mongol camp (*urdú*), sent his son Amír Qutlugh Sháh to invade Mázandarán. Several battles took place between him on the one hand, and Shahriyár and the Ustundár on the other. One of the most celebrated of these battles, in which the latter were victorious, and many Turkish *amirs* and notables of Mázandarán who were with Qutlugh Sháh were killed, took place at Lít-Kúh on the road to Yásamín-Kaláta. At length Amír Mú'min himself invaded Mázandarán, and Sháh Kay-Khusraw, unable to withstand him (f. 177b), set out for the [Mongol] camp (*urdú*). By chance Amír Tálish Chubán had been appointed Amír of Khurásán, and was proceeding thither. Kay-Khusraw met him, courted his favour, and promised to bring the Ustundár Naṣíru'd-Dawla Shahriyár to his presence. They journeyed on together to Amul, and alighted in the Maydán-i-Rúdbár Báqalí-pazán. There Sháh Kay-Khusraw brought the Ustundár before Amír Tálish Chubán, who treated them both with honour, and remained that winter at Amul. Amír Mú'min's power was thus checked. Kay-Khusraw, fearing

the Mongol Amírs, who were constantly going and coming, conveyed his women and children and baggage to the Ustundár, from whom he bought for them the village of Fímat near Ganjáwarúz, and there abode; and there his descendants dwell to this day. He died in A. H. 728 (= A. D. 1327—8).

He was succeeded by his son Sharafu'l-Mulúk, a handsome and well-dispositioned youth, whose accession was hailed with joy by all the notables of Mázandarán. His reign was peaceful and happy, but short, (f. 177b), for he died in A. H. 734 (= A. D. 1333—4).

He was succeeded by his brother Malik Fakhru'd-Dawla Ḥasan b. Sháh Kay-Khusraw, the last of the Báwand kings, whose accession was nearly contemporary with Sultán Abú Sa'íd's death¹. This practically coincided with the end of the Mongol Power in Persia, which lasted about 80 years from the date of Húlágú Khán's capture of Baghdad in A. H. 656 (= A. D. 1258). The author speaks highly of the order and good government which prevailed during this period, especially during the reigns of Gházán Khán, Úljáytú Khudá-banda, and Abú Sa'íd, which, says he, one might think that the poet Dhahír-i-Fáryábí was describing when he said:

آرام یافت در حرمِ امن و حش و طیب
آسود نشست در کنفِ عدل انس و جان
گردون فرو گشاد میان از جفای تیغ
ایام ببر گشود ز از گردن کمان
(f. 178a) مله چنین مستخر و حمی چنین معناع
دیرست تنداد فلک از دسی نشان

On Abú Sa'íd's death anarchy supervened, each *amir* striving

¹ He died in A. H. 736 (= A. D. 1335—6).

to seize what he could for himself out of the general wreckage. Amongst those who thus rose to power was Amír Mas'úd Sarbadál [or *Sar-ba-dár*], who rose up in Sabzawár, killed his brother Pahlawán 'Abdu'r-Razzáq, gathered round himself a number of rogues and vagabonds, and established himself in a citadel which he made for himself in Sabzawár. Tughá-Tímúr was nominally Sultán of Khurásán, but his *wazír*, 'Alá'u'd-Dín Muḥammad, had practically (f. 1786) got possession of all the power, and used it most oppressively. His tyranny, and that of a tribe of Turks called Jataz, reduced the people of Khurásán to desperation. The disaffected joined themselves to Amír Mas'úd Sarbadál, whose power thus rapidly increased, so that he defeated many of the Mongol and Turkish *amírs*, and even Arghún-Sháh and his brothers, until he finally held possession of Khurásán from Jám and Bákharz to Mázandarán. His popularity largely depended on the fact that all spoils of war were equitably shared by him with his followers, and that he in no way distinguished himself from them.

He now marched on Herát and attacked Malik Mu'īnu'd-Dín Husayn-i-Kart. The battle lasted three days and nights, and 7000 men are said to have perished in it, including Amír Mas'úd's spiritual director Shaykh Ḥasan Júrí; and Amír Mas'úd was finally defeated and fell back on Mázandarán. At Bayárú-kamand he had another battle with Tughá-Tímúr, whose brother, Shaykh 'Alí Káwán, he killed. He defeated Tughá-Tímúr and took captive Píshín Khátún and other ladies of his house (f. 179a), and pursued, captured and put to death his *wazír* 'Alá'u'd-Dín Muḥammad at Qal'a Kamín. Tughá-Tímúr fled from him to Lár and Qaṣrán, where he was re-inforced by Malik Fakhru'd-Dawla and the Ustundár.

Amír Mas'úd soon succeeded in re-establishing his power in Khurásán, which, from Herát to Gurgán and Qúmish, fell

under his sway, and he placed his governors in each important town. He then came to Astarábád, intending to subjugate Ṭabaristán, and sought by all means to win over to him its kings and rulers. Kiyá Jamálu'd-Dín Ahmad Jál, a powerful, sagacious and experienced noble, obtained permission from the King of Mázandarán to go with his nephews Kiyá Táju'd-Dín and Kiyá Jalál, to Astarábád, and try to come to terms with Amír Mas'úd, who received them well, but forced them to accompany him on his onward march to Sári, whence he sent to the kings at Amul (f. 179b) desiring to see them. After prolonged consultation, Malik Fakhru'd-Dawla of Mázandarán and Malik Jalálu'd-Dawla Iskandar the Ustundár determined to resist Amír Mas'úd by force, and sent him a harsh answer. Thereupon, leaving some of his men at Sári, Amír Mas'úd marched on Amul. The two armies met outside Amul on Dhul-Qa'da 17, A. H. 743 (= April 13, A. D. 1343), in the plain of Búrán, where the Mázandaránis had constructed at Qará-Kaláta by their King's Palace a temporary stockade, which they prepared to defend with the utmost stubbornness. Jamálu'd-Dín Ahmad Jál, seeing that battle was inevitable, and that Amír Mas'úd would not hearken to his advice (f. 180a), sent repeated and urgent messages to his friends and kinsmen to "defend the honour of Mázandarán", and not to concern themselves about his possible fate; "for," said he, "I am an old man, who have lived my life: if I perish and Mázandarán continue in honour it is better than that ye should submit to subjection and abasement." The Mázandaránis responded to this heroic advice, and all, from Tammísha to the frontiers of Gilan, forgetting their private quarrels and jealousies, presented a united face to the foe. Amír Mas'úd, alarmed at their firmness, requested Kiyá Jamálu'd-Dín Ahmad Jál and his nephews to extricate him from Amul (f. 180b). Amír 'Alí Hawákhún (? Mawákhún) deserted him for the Mázandaranis, which added

to his alarm, and he gave Kiyá Ahmád Jál five *kharwárs* of *dirhams* to guide him out of the country. The Kiyá sent this money to his kinsmen, and bade them construct earth-works from the river Hurmuz to Sári and close the roads. After ten days' sojourn in Amul, Amír Masúd quitted it with his army. At Yásamín-Kaláta, one parasang's distance from the city, he was confronted by the Ustundar Jalálu'd-Dawla, while the soldiers of Mázandarán attacked him in the rear. Masúd, seeing that he was out-manœuvred, killed Kiyá Jamálu'd-Dín Ahmád Jál and his nephews, and fled towards Láwích, making for the mountains. The woods and thickets which he was compelled to traverse were swarming with his foes, while the Kings closely pursued him, and one vast battle raged from Yásamín-Kaláta to Rúdbár-i-Núr; until the Khurásánis, after sustaining heavy losses, were finally completely disorganized and scattered:

جمع آمد بوند چو پرورین یکچند
گردون چو بنات نعششان پیراگند

Finally (f. 181a), after two days' flight, Amír Masúd, with a few of his followers, reached the mountains by way of Rúdbár-Bálú, and began to ascend. The path was barred by the scouts of Taju'd-Dawla, the Ustundár's brother, Malik-i-Mu'adhdham Sharafu'd-Dawla Gustahm, and he was forced to turn back by way of Rúdbár-Uz; but, losing his way, was taken captive.

Amír Masúd, wounded and captive, was brought before Malik Fakhru'd-Dawla, who asked him as to the original size of his army. He answered that provision had been made for 4000 horses, 600 mules and 400 camels, from which could he deduced the size of the army. He was then sent on to the Ustundár Jalálu'd-Dawla, who, after two days' consideration, put him to death. His body was buried on the road to Kálíjar under a mill on the east side of the stream.

صاحب نظری کجاست ذ در نگرد
تا این همه مملکت بدان می ارزید

(F. 181b). His head was cut off, stuffed with straw, and exhibited to all men at the very place where he had, a few days before, encamped with so great and well-equipped an army.

غرة مشو گر ز چرخ کار تو گردد بلند
ز آنکه بلندی دند تا بتواند فکند
(رباعی)

عمری بمراد رانده گیر آخر چه وین نمه عمر خوانده گیر آخر چه
گیم که بکام دل بمالی صد سال صد سال دگر بمانده گیر آخر چه
(بیت)

اگر پادشاهست در پینه دوز جو خفتند گردد شب هر دو روز
(قصیده)

دل در جهان مبند که یاریست نی وفا
جامیست نی شراب و شرابیست نی صفا
نوشش مچش که زهر افعیست در عقب
خمرش محور که رنج خمارست در قفا
راه امل میو که آن دار قد خلت
رسم طلل محور که الربع قد عفا

The people of Ṭabaristán, except the learned and religious classes, used to wear their hair long and hanging loose — sometimes as much as a yard (*gas*) in length; but, some days after the execution of Amír Masúd-i-Sarbadál, Malik Jalálu'd-Dawla, seeing that his late foe had his hair shaved, adopted the same practice, together with the wearing of the turban, and first his own kinsmen, and then the rest

to his alarm, and he gave Kiyá Ahmád Jál five *kharwárs* of *dirhams* to guide him out of the country. The Kiyá sent this money to his kinsmen, and bade them construct earth-works from the river Hurmuz to Sári and close the roads. After ten days' sojourn in Amul, Amír Mas'úd quitted it with his army. At Yásamín-Kaláta, one parasang's distance from the city, he was confronted by the Ustundár Jalálu'd-Dawla, while the soldiers of Mázandarán attacked him in the rear. Mas'úd, seeing that he was out-maneuvred, killed Kiyá Jamálu'd-Dín Ahmád Jál and his nephews, and fled towards Láwích, making for the mountains. The woods and thickets which he was compelled to traverse were swarming with his foes, while the Kings closely pursued him, and one vast battle raged from Yásamín-Kaláta to Rúdbár-i-Núr; until the Khurásánis, after sustaining heavy losses, were finally completely disorganized and scattered:

جمع آمد، بوند چو پیویس یکچند
گردون چو بنات نعششان پیراگند

Finally (f. 181a), after two days' flight, Amír Mas'úd, with a few of his followers, reached the mountains by way of Rúdbár-Bálú, and began to ascend. The path was barred by the scouts of Taju'd-Dawla, the Ustundár's brother, Malik-i-Mu'adhdham Sharafu'd-Dawla Gustahm, and he was forced to turn back by way of Rúdbár-Uz; but, losing his way, was taken captive.

Amír Mas'úd, wounded and captive, was brought before Malik Fakhrú'd-Dawla, who asked him as to the original size of his army. He answered that provision had been made for 4000 horses, 600 mules and 400 camels, from which could he deduced the size of the army. He was then sent on to the Ustundár Jalálu'd-Dawla, who, after two days' consideration, put him to death. His body was buried on the road to Kálíjar under a mill on the east side of the stream.

صاحب نظری کجاست ؟ در نگرد
تا این همه مملکت بدان می ارزید

(F. 181b). His head was cut off, stuffed with straw, and exhibited to all men at the very place where he had, a few days before, encamped with so great and well-equipped an army.

غرة مشو گر ز چرخ کار تو گردد بلند
ز آنکه بلندی دند ت بتواند فگند
(رباعی)

عمی بمراد راند، گیر آخر چه وین نمه عور خواند، گیر آخر چه
گیم که بکم دل بمالی صد سال صد سال دگر بماند، گیر آخر چه
(بیت)

اگر پادشاهست و پینه دوز چو خفتند گردد شب هر دو روز
(قمعه)

دل در جبان مبند که بیزیست نه وفا
جامیست نه شراب و شرابیست نه صفا
نوشش مچش که زهر افعیست در عقب
خمرش محور که رنج خمارست در قفا
راه اهل میو که اندار قدر خلت
رسم ظلل محور که الربع قد عفا

The people of Ṭabaristán, except the learned and religious classes, used to wear their hair long and hanging loose — sometimes as much as a yard (*gas*) in length; but, some days after the execution of Amír Mas'úd-i-Sarbadál, Malik Jalálu'd-Dawla, seeing that his late foe had his hair shaved, adopted the same practice, together with the wearing of the turban, and first his own kinsmen, and then the rest

of the people, imitated him, so that the new fashion became general, and the long locks, called *kalālak*, and the head-dress called *kalā-band*, were finally abandoned.

It has been already described how, in the reign of Malik Ruknu'd-Dawla Sháh Kay-Khusraw, Amír Mú'min and his son Qutlugh-Sháh caused dissension in Mázandarán which led to great disorganization, and how Malik Shamsu'l-Muluk Muhammad treacherously slew his brother 'Alá'u'd-Dawla 'Alí, and assumed the reins of government¹. Malik Ruknu'd-Dawla Sháh Kay-Khusraw went to the [Mongol] camp (*urdú*) and brought back an order for the dismissal of Malik Shamsu'l-Muluk, who retired to Gílán for a while, but was presently summoned thence by Ruknu'd-Dawla, who, at the advice of Amír Qutlugh Sháh, put him to death, together with his brother Malik Ardashír and 'Alá'u'd-Dawla 'Alí (f. 182b) in the summer-palace of Ardashír-ábád.

Thus Malik Sháh Kay-Khusraw, being left alone, was weakened, and Qutlugh Sháh strengthened; and the former, gradually pushed back, conveyed his family and possessions to the domain of the Ustundár, whose people helped and supported him. There his sons, and those of Sharafu'l-Muluk, Fakhru'd-Dawla, and the other brothers, grew up, honoured and treated in every way like the princes of Ustundár; until, moved by false suspicions, he put to death Kiyá Jalál b. Ahmad Jál, which caused universal disgust and consternation amongst the nobles who had hitherto supported him, save the rival Kiyás of Chaláp, with whom he was now compelled to ally himself. Of these, Kiyá Afrásiyáb of Chaláp was his principal ally.

In Mázandarán, thus distracted, there now appeared the dervish orders, *pirs*, and *muríds*, which had already appeared in Khurásán. Afrásiyáb (f. 183a) and his kinsmen became

¹ This statement cannot be reconciled with that on p. 261 *supra*, ll. 9—10, but the meaning of the text seems clear in both passages.

enthusiastic for this doctrine, and desired to persuade Malik Sháh Kay-Khusraw to it. The Kiyás of Jalál attached themselves to the chief Ustundár, Malik Jalálu'd-Dawla Iskandar. Malik-i-Mu'adhdham marched on Amul and ravaged the surrounding territory. Fakhru'd-Dawla came with two or three thousand men to the camp of the king of Ustundár to sue for peace, which was granted; and the united forces then expelled the Kiyás of Chaláp from Amul. These allied themselves with their former foes, the Kiyás of Jalál. The king of Mázandarán tried to regain their confidence, but could not overcome their mistrust. Amír Sayyid Qiwámu'd-Dín, whom the Kiyás of Chaláp regarded as their saint and spiritual director, disliked Malik Fakhru'd-Dawla on account of his real or supposed heretical tendencies. Finally on Muharram 27, A. H. 750 (= April 17, A. D. 1349) Malik Fakhru'd-Dawla was treacherously murdered in the bath at Amul by 'Alí Kiyá b. Afrásiyáb and his brother Muhammad Kiyá (f. 183b). His family, having no other place of safety, again took refuge with the supreme Ustundár Jalálu'd-Dawla Iskandar, who received them with all hospitality and kindness.

Malik Fakhru'd-Dawla left four sons, all of tender years, Malik Sharafu'l-Muluk, Sháh Ghází, and Malik Ka'ús¹, of whom the eldest was but ten years of age. Malik Jalálu'd-Dawla not only protected and cared for them while they were young, but when they were grown up he undertook several campaigns with a view to restoring them to their kingdom. On one occasion he attacked Kiyá Afrásiyáb, the Kiyás of Jalál and Sayyid Qiwámu'd-Dín at Marán-Dih near Amul (f. 184a), and killed the former, but finally, with his men of Rustamdár, was out-numbered and driven back by the Mázandaránis. In this battle 330 of the men of Rustamdar were slain, and it was the last attempt of the kings of Bawand

¹ The name of one son is evidently omitted.

of the people, imitated him, so that the new fashion became general, and the long locks, called *kalálaq*, and the head-dress called *kalá-band*, were finally abandoned.

It has been already described how, in the reign of Malik Ruknu'd-Dawla Sháh Kay-Khusraw, Amír Mú'min and his son Qutlugh-Sháh caused dissension in Mázandarán which led to great disorganization, and how Malik Shamsu'l-Mulük Muhammad treacherously slew his brother 'Alá'u'd-Dawla 'Alí, and assumed the reins of government¹. Malik Ruknu'd-Dawla Sháh Kay-Khusraw went to the [Mongol] camp (*urdú*) and brought back an order for the dismissal of Malik Shamsu'l-Mulük, who retired to Gílán for a while, but was presently summoned thence by Ruknu'd-Dawla, who, at the advice of Amír Qutlugh Sháh, put him to death, together with his brother Malik Ardashír and 'Alá'u'd-Dawla 'Alí (f. 182b) in the summer-palace of Ardáshír-ábád.

Thus Malik Sháh Kay-Khusraw, being left alone, was weakened, and Qutlugh Sháh strengthened; and the former, gradually pushed back, conveyed his family and possessions to the domain of the Ustundár, whose people helped and supported him. There his sons, and those of Sharafu'l-Mulük, Fakhru'd-Dawla, and the other brothers, grew up, honoured and treated in every way like the princes of Ustundár; until, moved by false suspicions, he put to death Kiyá Jalál b. Ahmad Jál, which caused universal disgust and consternation amongst the nobles who had hitherto supported him, save the rival Kiyás of Chaláp, with whom he was now compelled to ally himself. Of these, Kiyá Afrásiyáb of Chaláp was his principal ally.

In Mázandarán, thus distracted, there now appeared the dervish orders, *pirs*, and *murids*, which had already appeared in Khurásán. Afrásiyáb (f. 183a) and his kinsmen became

¹ This statement cannot be reconciled with that on p. 261 *supra*, ll. 9-10; but the meaning of the text seems clear in both passages.

enthusiastic for this doctrine, and desired to persuade Malik Sháh Kay-Khusraw to it. The Kiyás of Jalál attached themselves to the chief Ustundár, Malik Jalálu'd-Dawla Iskandar. Malik-i-Mu'adhdham marched on Amul and ravaged the surrounding territory. Fakhru'd-Dawla came with two or three thousand men to the camp of the king of Ustundár to sue for peace, which was granted; and the united forces then expelled the Kiyás of Chaláp from Amul. These allied themselves with their former foes, the Kiyás of Jalál. The king of Mázandaran tried to regain their confidence, but could not overcome their mistrust. Amír Sayyid Qiwámu'd-Dín, whom the Kiyás of Chaláp regarded as their saint and spiritual director, disliked Malik Fakhru'd-Dawla on account of his real or supposed heretical tendencies. Finally on Muharram 27, A. H. 750 (= April 17, A. D. 1349) Malik Fakhru'd-Dawla was treacherously murdered in the bath at Amul by 'Alí Kiyá b. Afrásiyáb and his brother Muhammad Kiyá (F. 183b). His family, having no other place of safety, again took refuge with the supreme Ustundár Jalálu'd-Dawla Iskandar, who received them with all hospitality and kindness.

Malik Fakhru'd-Dawla left four sons, all of tender years, Malik Sharafu'l-Mulük, Sháh Gházi, and Malik Ká'ús¹, of whom the eldest was but ten years of age. Malik Jalálu'd-Dawla not only protected and cared for them while they were young, but when they were grown up he undertook several campaigns with a view to restoring them to their kingdom. On one occasion he attacked Kiyá Afrásiyáb, the Kiyás of Jalál and Sayyid Qiwámu'd-Dín at Marán-Dih near Amul (f. 184a), and killed the former, but finally, with his men of Rustamdár, was out-numbered and driven back by the Mázandaránis. In this battle 330 of the men of Rustamdár were slain, and it was the last attempt of the kings of Báwand

¹ The name of one son is evidently omitted.

to assert their power, which had endured in Mázandarán for 705 years; for the founder of the Dynasty, Báw-i-Shápúr, established his independence in A. H. 45 (= A. D. 665-6), while the last of them, Malik Fakhru'd-Dawla Ḥasan, was killed, as above stated, in A. H. 750 (= A. D. 1349).

Colophon of India Office Manuscript.

تمت في شهر سند ١٣٣ كتبه عبد الجلاني
تمت بين رسم ناق المازندراني

NOTES.

(The following notes by Mr. A. G. Ellis of the British Museum comprise such observations as he was kind enough to send me on the proofs which I submitted to him, and which could not be incorporated in the text either as corrections or foot-notes.)

P. 9. "The setting of this anecdote is quite historical, for the three persons concerned were all contemporaries. You will find a notice of 'Abdu'l-Malik b. Qurayb al-Asma'i in De Slane's translation of Ibn Khallikán, vol. II, p. 123, and of al-'Attábi in the *Fihrist* of al-Warráq, vol. I, p. 121. See also De Slane, *op. cit.*, vol. II, p. 466 and vol. III, p. 99."

"With regard to the Shī'a "rijál" (notable men) all the authorities that I quoted contain much the same matter; but I could not tell which of them might be accessible to you. Of -Najáshí, I think, no MS. is at present recorded in Europe. I have a Bombay lithograph, which can easily be procured. The *Fihrist* of -Túsí (contemporary with -Najáshí) you have in the *Bibliotheca Indica*. Concerning -Astarábádí and his *Manhaju'l-Maqál*, see Rieu's *Arabic Supplement*, N° 635. I have a Persian lithograph of the book. The *Muntaha'l-Maqál* of Muḥammad b. Isma'il al-Ḥáfirí is a quite recent work, compiled from all accessible older authorities, and extremely useful, though somewhat condensed. Of this also I have a Persian lithograph. Another book of which I possess a Bombay edition is the *Ikhtiyar* of Muḥammad b. 'Umar al-Kashshí (see Rieu's *Arabic Sup-*

plement, N° 833). It often contains useful information, but is not very easy of reference. I have also a Persian edition of the *Naqdu'r-Rijál* of at-Tafríshí (Rieu's *Arabic Supplement*, N° 636); but it is rather meager, and does not add much to the contents of the first-named works."

"In the following notes I have quoted several times from a book which you may perhaps know, namely 'Umdatū't-Tálib fi ansábi Áli Abi Tálib' ("the Student's Mainstay for the [verification of the] genealogies of the House of Abú Tálib"). It was composed in Arabic under the Amír Tímúr by Ibn 'Utba ('Uqba, 'Inaba) Jamálu'd-Dín Ahmad b. 'Áli, who died in A. H. 828 (= A. D. 1424—5)."

P. 19. "Concerning Hasan b. Yahyá al-'Alawí, called Kúchak, see 'Umdatū't-Tálib, p. 68."

P. 32. "Abdu'r-Rahmán b. Khúrzád, author of a *Kitábu'l-Masálik wa'l-Mamálik* is cited. May not this be intended for Ibn Khurdádhbih? It is true the last is usually called 'Ubaydu'lláh. Still there is some slight uncertainty with regard to his name, and we know next to nothing about the man. The remark about the excellence of Samarqand will be found on p. 172 of De Goeje's edition of his book, together with the saying of ar-Raqqáshí with some variation. On p. 171 of the same edition Ibn Khurdádhbih says of Tabaristán that it is احسن الأرض مفروقة. De Goeje omits these words in his translation, and gives no explanation. In his critical notes he says that al-Muqaddasí has معروفة in place of مفروقة. Al-Muqaddasí says that he got this rhyming notice from a book which he found in the library of 'Adudu'd-Dawla, and adds — وَزَدْتُ فِيهِ مَا لَا يَجِبُ تَرْكَهُ. 'Abdu'lláh b. Khurdádhbih, the father of 'Ubaydu'lláh, was, I may mention, according to -Tabarí (Series III, pp. 1014—1015) governor (*wáli*) of Tabaristán."

Ibid. "Husayn b. Mundhir ar-Raqqáshí was the Imám

'Áli's standard-bearer and an Anṣári. There are brief notices of him in the *Manhaju'l-Maqál*, p. 118, and the *Muntaha'l-Maqál*, p. 115. There is nothing to show how he came to know anything about either Samarqand or Tabaristán. He may, however, have been a Persian, as his *kunya* is Abú Sásán."

P. 36. "Concerning 'the son of Amír Ká', compare 'Umdatū't-Tálib, pp. 71, 72, where Amír Ká appears as —

الحسين أمير كـ القـمـيـ القـلـبـ بشـكـنـيـهـ بـنـ عـلـيـ بـنـ مـحـمـدـ اـنـعـرـفـ بـلـيـهـ عـلـيـهـ
a descendant from Isma'il Jálibu'l-Hijára by eight generations."

P. 37. "A Jew named Sham'ún (Simon). Or. 7633 has شـمـعـونـ بـنـ خـدـادـادـ. This suggests a reminiscence of the Jewish Maccabean hero Shim'on ben Mattathyah. Mattathyah = Gift of God = Khudádád."

P. 39. "In the *Akhbár-i-Barmakiyán* of Diyá'u'd-Dín Baraní (Bombay ed., pp. 6—7) allusion is made to this talisman. Baraní, however, speaks of it as an armlet, and does not mention its origin. The anecdote connected with the ring is as follows. The courtiers introduced Barmak into the presence of 'Abdu'l-Malik, who, as soon as he saw him, ordered him to be severely beaten and thrust out. Afterwards the courtiers prayed the Caliph to make known to them Barmak's offence. 'Abdu'l-Malik replied that Barmak carried poison upon his person, and that upon his own arm were two jewels which, whenever anyone should come before him having poison upon him, would be attracted towards one another. When Barmak entered, these two jewels were so strongly drawn together as to cause pain to the Caliph's arm. Angered at this, 'Abdu'l-Malik ordered Barmak to be chastised."

P. 47. "May not 'Abu'l-'Amr' perhaps be the same person as أبو معـرـجـ بـنـ أـنـيـ سـعـيدـ الـسـعـيـلـيـ (*Yatimatu'd-Dahr*, Damascus ed., vol. III, p. 274) and استـنـادـ أـبـوـ اـنـعـرـ يـعـرـ بـنـ الـحـسـينـ

(*Dumyatu'l-Qaṣr*, Add. 9994, f. 80b)? Unfortunately, all that we seem to know about these three names is that they all belonged to the same part of Persia."

Ibid. "There is a biographical notice of Muḥammad b. Zayd at pp. 71 *et seqq.* of the *'Umdatū'l-ṭālib*."

Ibid. "By 'Tabāṭabā al-‘Alawī' must be meant Abū 'Abdīllāh al-Ḥusayn b. Muḥammad b. Ṭabāṭabā al-Ḥasanī, one of the chief authorities of the author of the *'Umdatū'l-ṭālib* for the pedigrees of the earlier Sayyids. He was the Shaykh of Abu'l-Ḥasan 'Alī b. Muḥammad al-‘Umari, another of Ibn 'Utba's authorities, who was in al-Mawṣil in A. H. 423 = A. D. 1032 (*Umda*, p. 364) and in Amid in A. H. 430 = A. D. 1038—9 (*Ibid.*, p. 60). For Ibrāhim Ṭabāṭabā, the genealogist's ancestor, see *Umda*, p. 158."

P. 50 (also p. 46). "As-Sarwī". As-Sam'ānī (*Ansāb*, Add. 23,355, f. 297b, gives سروری from سروری in the district of Ar-dabīl, but سروری from ساریة in Mázandarān. Unfortunately he does not mention anyone derived from the last named place."

Pp. 50 and 55. "Ibnu'l-Mahdī al-Māmīrī and Sayyid Imām Bahā'u'd-Dīn al-Ḥasan b. Mahdī al-Māmīrī are, I suppose, the same person."

P. 52. "The ascription of the authorship of the *Kitābu'l-Faraj bā'da'sh-Shidda* to Qādī Abu'l-Qāsim at-Tanūkhī is an error. The real author was his son Muḥassīn b. 'Alī, as is clearly shewn by various allusions in the book itself."

P. 54. "Abu'l-Faraj 'Alī b. al-Ḥusayn must be the poet Ibn Hindū. He was a native of Ray, and one of the *Kutābu'l-Inshā* of 'Aḍudu'd-Dawla the Buwayhid. He was in Jurjān about A. H. 410 = A. D. 1019—1020 (aṣ-Ṣafadī's *Wāfi bī'l-Wafayāt*), and died in A. H. 420 = A. D. 1029 (Hájji Khalīfa, vol. III, p. 252; vol. VI, p. 15)."

P. 59. "Concerning Zarrīn Kamar, see the *'Umdatū'l-ṭālib*,

الحسن الملقب بزرين كمار بن على, a direct descendant of 'Abdu'r-Rahmān ash-Shajārī."

Ibid. "Imádī is, I suppose, identical with the homonymous contemporary of Sanā'ī of Ghazna mentioned by Dawlatshāh, p. 98, and noticed by 'Awfi in vol. II of the *Lubāb*, pp. 257 *et seqq.* The author of the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣahā*, vol. I, p. 350, calls him 'Imádī Shahriyārī, and says that he composed poems in praise of 'Imádu'd-Dawla ad-Daylāmī and Ṭughrīl Beg the Seljuq. He admits, however, that some critics say that there are more 'Imádīs than one. Taqīyyu'd-Dīn Kāshānī in his *Khulāṣatu'l-Ash'ār*, (Or. 3506, ff. 449b—452a) has a long notice of 'Imádī. He distinguishes two poets of this name, 'Imádī-i-Ghaznawī and 'Imádī-i-Shahriyārī. The latter was a native of Shahriyār, one of the dependencies of Ray, and resided in the last-named city. In the latter part of his life he was attached to the court of Ṭughrīl b. Arslān. He died in his native place in A. H. 573 (= 1177—8)."

Sheet 9 (pp. 129—144). Owing to the vagaries of the Post Office, this sheet was printed off before the corrections indicated by Mr. Ellis had been made. These, therefore, are included with the longer notes in this place.

P. 129, l. 26. For "whom" read "whose". "Abū Jaysh al-Hilālī. Properly this *kunya* should be *Abu'l-Jaysh*, not *Abū Jaysh*, but perhaps in a Persian MS. the absence of the article may not be significant. Otherwise I had thought of ابو حنش عجم بن النعيم, who was a Badawī poet of the reign of al-Mahdī, and a friend of Bashshār b. Burd (died A. H. 167 or 168 = A. D. 783—4 or 784—5). See the *Kitābu'l-Aghānī*, vol. III, p. 60, vol. XI, p. 65, vol. XVIII, pp. 74—75. I have not, however, discovered his tribal *nisba*, and there does not appear to be any evidence of his ever having been in Ṭabaristān. Add. 7633 has distinctly ابو جيش.

Pp. 130—131 (and also pp. 120, 124 and 125 *supra*). "For 'Amr b. 'Alá read 'Umar b. al-'Alá. So Țabarí, Series III, pp. 136, 137, 493, 500, 520, and 521, and Add. 7633."

P. 130, l. 26 "The story to which reference is here made is given in brief in the *Murâṣṣa* of Ibnu'l-Āthír, ed. Seybold, 1896, p. 184."

P. 132, ll. 16—23. "Either the India Office MS. or yourself has jumped a few lines. I have inserted a translation of these in their place on the proof, and enclose herewith a copy of the passage from Add. 7633." (The lines in question are, I find, actually omitted in the India Office MS. The amended translation runs as follows. "Next came Sa'íd b. Salm (so Țabarí) b. Qutayba b. Muslim, who was replaced after six months by Ḥanímál and 'Abdu'lláh, the sons of 'Abdu'l-Āzíz. Ten months later, in A. H. 177, these were superseded by Muthanná b. al-Hajjáj, who ruled for a year and four months, and was followed in A. H. 179 by 'Abdu'l-Malík b. Qa'qa', who remained one year..." "For Házim, Add. 7633, supported by Țabarí, has Kházim."

Pp. 134 and 136. "Both these alternative motives for the destruction of the Barmecides are recorded by Țabarí (series III, pp. 669 *et seqq.* and pp. 676 *et seqq.*.)"

Pp. 134, l. 16. "By -Nawfali 'Alí b. Muḥammad b. Sulaymán an-Nawfáli is probably intended. See De Goeje's Index to Țabarí, p. 400."

P. 140, l. 30. "Add. 7633 has Khalífa b. Sa'íd here, as well as in l. 19 above."

Ibid. "For Mihrúya, De Goeje (Țabarí, Series III, pp. 650 *et seqq.*) has Mahruwayh."

P. 141, l. 12. "Fárisí should at least be *Jurayshi*, but *Jurashi* is the older and better form, and is the actual reading of Add. 7633. This *nisba* is thus vocalized by as-Sam'áni (Add. 23,355, f. 127a), who derives it from *Juraysh*, a Ḥimyarite tribe. Țabarí (Series III, pp. 650 *et seqq.*) has *al-Harashi*."

Ibid., l. 28. "Read *Zufar* for *Zafr*; and in l. 29 read 'Amira for 'Umayra, which is always a woman's name."

P. 142, ll. 22, 25, 28. "Read *Nuṣaym* b. Kházim for *Naṣim* b. Házim."

P. 144, l. 12. "Through" is, of course, a misprint for "though".

P. 147, l. 2. Correct, as above on p. 141, *Jurayshi* to *Jurashi*.

Ibid. ll. 5—6. "For Bizist-i-Fírúzán = Yahyá b. Abí Manṣúr, see *Fihrist*, p. 275, al-Qiftí's *Tárikh al-Hukamá*, pp. 357—359. He died in A. H. 215 or 217 (= A. D. 830 or 832); see Suter, *Die Mathematiker und Astronomen der Araber*, N° 14.

P. 174, 6. The text has *Tarchí* for *Tarícha*, but the emendation, suggested by Mr. Ellis, seems pretty certain.

P. 180, l. 4. "Here, as on the previous page, A. wrongly reads *al-Musta'in* for *al-Mu'tazz*, which latter is not only required by history, but is in every case the actual reading of A. Țabarí gives the name of this Caliph as Muḥammad, but in the *Mafátiḥ al-Ulūm* of al-Khwárazmí and in the *Wáfi* of as-Şafádí (Add. 23,858, f. 112a) he is called Zubayr."

P. 187, ll. 14—15. "Abu'l-Husayn Ahmád b. Muḥammad was a Shajári Sayyid, a descendant of a different line from Sayyid Hasan's. See 'Umdat al-Ṭálib, p. 71, l. 18, where his relationship to Sayyid Hasan is expressed by حَنَدَ عَلَى أخْتِهِ حَنَدَ. This must, I think, imply 'brother-in-law'. The word حَنَدَ may be used of any relation through a woman, according to the lexica."

P. 190, l. 2. "Compare Țabarí, Series III, pp. 2039—2201."

P. 191, ll. 14—15. "Compare Țabarí, Series III, pp. 1929—2159."

P. 193. "Martyrdom of Sayyid Muḥammad". Abu'l-Fara-júl-Isbáhání, the author of the *Kitáb al-Agháni*, gives, in his *Maqátilu'l-Ṭálibiyyín* (Tíhrán, A. H. 1307, p. 229), rather a

different account of the death of Muḥammad b. Zayd. He relates that Isma'il b. Aḥmad, who had made himself master of Khurásán, sent against him one of his officers named Muḥammad b. Hárún with orders to attack him. An engagement took place at Báb Jurján in which the Sayyid was mortally wounded. After the battle he was found on the field still breathing, and was carried to Jurján, where he died. His funeral obsequies were performed by his adversary Muḥammad b. Hárún. These events took place in Ramaḍán, A. H. 289 (*sic*). Sayyid Muḥammad's son Zayd was taken prisoner in the battle, and brought to Jurján, where he still is at the present time,' i. e. A. H. 313 (= A. D. 925—6). Abu'l-Faraj was born in A. H. 284 (= A. D. 897), five (or three) years before the above mentioned battle was fought."

P. 194, l. 15. "This *Shajara-i-ansáb-i-Talibiyya* is most probably identical with the *Ansábu ashráfi'l-amṣár* of Ibn Ṭabáṭabá, already mentioned on p. 47, l. 8."

P. 195, ll. 17—18. "Add. 7633 (= B.) has أبْعِيم وَمُحَمَّد ابْنَاء امْصَا الْفَقِهَانِ. The vocalization and meaning of امْصَا are obscure. The dictionaries do not give much help. مَصَّا is one of the nomina verbi of مَضَى, and has amongst other meanings that of 'carrying an enterprise to its conclusion'. I would suggest that a derivative مَصَّانَة should be read, but unfortunately no such form is recorded in the lexica. فَقِهَانِ must, I think, be an error for فَقَهَاء [this last is the reading of A.], for no such form as فَقِهَانِ, although quite possible, is recorded."

P. 198, end. "The person usually known by the title of *Dhu'r-Riyásatayn* was the famous *wazir* of the Caliphate al-Faḍl b. Sahl. As, however, he was murdered at Sarakhs in A. H. 202 (= A. D. 817—818), he can hardly be the

person intended here, unless 'grandson' could be substituted for 'son'."

P. 199, l. 25. "Abu'l-Faḍl Muḥammad b. 'Abdu'lláh al-Bal'amí was the father of the Persian translator of -Ṭabári, and died in A. H. 329 (= A. D. 940—941). See -Sam'áni's *Ansáb*, Add. 23,355, f. 90."

P. 210, ll. 5—6. "The addition in parentheses (which is found in B.) seems necessary, otherwise the personality of Díkú on p. 216 is rather enigmatical."

P. 210, l. 18. "'The Sayyids' governor'. He was appointed by نَصْرَانِ; i. e. the family of an-Násiru'l-Kabír, not by Sayyid Hasan."

P. 215, 14. "Mánkdím was a descendant of Zaynu'l-'Abídín, not of 'Aqil b. Abí Tálib."

P. 219, ll. 24 *et seqq.* "The news was brought to Hasan b. Fírúzán at Sári, not to Washmgir at Amul."

P. 227, ll. 3—4. "Add. 7310, f. 8, vocalizes the name of Sultán Maḥmúd's father سُبْكْتِيْجْنِ 'Subuktigín', not 'Sabuktagin'."

P. 229, l. 5 and note. As regards the vocalization *Hum-múla* adopted by the Delhi edition, Mr. Ellis remarks that if the name be Arabic, as it appears to be, such vocalization is inadmissible, as giving no meaning. The same edition incorrectly gives this person's full name as *Abu'l-Husayn b. Aḥmad b. Hummúla*, 'Ali having dropped out after Abú.

P. 229, l. 8. "As to the name *Asfár b. Kurdiya* the texts of the *Yamíni* vary. Add. 7310 reads سَارِ; the Delhi ed. has شَارِ; Or. 1513 and the Bulaq ed. concur in reading شَابُورِ.

P. 229, l. 10. "The *Yamíni* adds after the name *Rashá-múj* the words ابن أخْت عَظِيم الدِّبَلِم. See Delhi ed., p. ۲۷; Bulaq ed., vol. II, p. ۱; Add. 7310, f. 112a. The MS. Or. 1513, f. 108a, has incorrectly شَامُوج for شَابُورِ."

P. 245, l. 29. "Add. 7633 (= B.) reads شیرزیل. I take *Shirzil* (or *Shira-zil*) to be a clan name. Compare Ȇamīza (*Ta'rikh*, pp. 241—2), who mentions the *Shirdhilawandān* as the tribe or clan (قبيلة) of 'Alī b. Buwayh, and the *Wardadawandān* as that of Asfār b. Shírawayh (Shírū'ē), both these leaders being 'Daylami', as opposed to Mardawīj, who was a 'Jílī'. Also *Shirzilwand* are named in the original Persian of Ibn Isfandiyár as forming part of the 400 prisoners burnt by the Ispahbad."

INDEX.

This Index includes, besides a few general references to matters of special interest, (1) names of persons, (2) names of places, and (3) titles of books mentioned in the preceding pages. In the arrangement of the Muhammadian names, the prefixes *Abú* ("Father of . . .") and *Ibn* ("Son of . . .") are disregarded, so that, for example, the names *Abu'l-Fadl* and *Ibn Khurdádhib* must be sought under the letters F and K respectively, not under A and I. Between two names the word *Ibn* ("Son of . . .") is represented by *b.*, but in the case of Persian names, the Persian *idáfat* (-i-) is sometimes employed to indicate the same relation: *e.g.* *'Abdu'lláh b. Táhir* and *Qárin-i-Shahriyár*. A hyphen prefixed to a name (generally a *nisba*) means that the Arabic definite article *al-* should precede it: *e.g.* *Harún-Rashid* = Hárún al-Rashíd, or, according to the phonetic transcription which I adopt, Hárúnu'r-Rashíd. Each name is written in full the first time it occurs, but some of the commonest names are occasionally abbreviated as follows: *A.* = Ahmad; *Ibr.* = Ibráhím; *Ism.* = Isma'il; *H.* = Hasan; *Hus.* = Husayn; *'Ab.* = 'Abbás; *'Al.* = Abdu'lláh; *'A.* = 'Alí; *'U.* = 'Umar; *Q.* = Qásim; *M.* = Muhammád; *Ya.* = Yahyá. Persian names I have thought it best always to write in full. Place-names are distinguished by an asterisk, while titles of books are printed in italics. In the case of names of little-known places in Tabaristán, where the vocalization is often extremely uncertain, I occasionally refer to Melgunof's *Das südliche Ufer des kaspischen Meeres* (Leipzig, 1868) as "Mel.", and to Dorn's four volumes of *Muhammadianische Quellen zur Geschichte der südlichen Küstenländer des kaspischen Meeres* as "Dorn I", "Dorn II", etc. To facilitate identification, I have occasionally indicated in brackets after a name the century of the Christian era in which the owner flourished, or, in the case of place-names, the district in which the place is apparently situated. When it is desired to indicate in which half of a century a person flourished, a small (1) or (2) is added to the Roman figure: thus (IX²) means the latter half of the ninth century of our era.

INDEX.

Abu'l-A'azz M. b. Qays (IX²), 172.
 *Aba-sar (Sári), 250.
 *Abasgún, 78, 199, 208.
 Ibn 'Abbád. See *Isma'il b. 'Abbád, -Sáhib*.
 'Abbás, House of —, or 'Abbásid Caliphs, 10, 51, 99, 108, 110, 111, 125, 143, 144, 161, 177, 201, 205, 259.
 See also under the names of individual Caliphs.
 'Abbás b. -'Aqilí (IX²), 174.
 'Abbás, brother of the Maṣmughán (IX²), 176.
 'Ab. b. M. -Háshimí (VIII²), 121.
 'Ab. b. Qábúsán (X¹), 212.
 'Ab. b. Zufar (not Zafr, see note on p. 277, l. 1; IX¹), 141.
 'Abbása (sister of Hárún-Rashíd), 134, 136, 139.
 Abu'l-'Abbás 'Al. b. M. b. Núh b. Asad -Sámáni (X¹), 195—199.
 Abu'l-'Ab. A. b. 'Abd -Azíz b. Abí Dulaf -Ijlí (governor of 'Iráq, IX²), 191.
 Abu'l-'Ab.-Faqih -'Alaqí (X¹), 215.
 Abu'l-'Ab.-'Aṣṣári (X¹), 216.
 Abu'l-'Ab., the chamberlain (X²), 228.
 Abu'l-'Ab. b. *Dhu'r-Riyásatayn* (X¹), 213, 214.
 Abu'l-'Ab.-Ghánimí (minister of Qábús b. Washmír (X²—XI¹), 92.
 Abu'l-'Ab. b. Já'i (X²), 229.
 Abu'l-'Ab. b. Kálanjár (X¹), 216.
 Abu'l-'Ab.-Qaṣṣáb, Shaykh —, 80. (See Jámí's *Nafáḥát*, Calc. ed., 1859, pp. 323—6).
 Abu'l-'Ab.-Rúyáni, Qádi'l-quḍáyat (X²—XI¹), 76.
 Abu'l-'Ab.-Ṣaffáḥ (Caliph, A. D. 750—754), 111.

Abu'l-Abbás, Sayyid — (X²—XI¹), 51, 54.
 Abdál, The —, 109.
 *Ab-Dara (near Kúsán), Castle of —, 61.
 *'Abd-'Adhím, Shrine of —, near Ray, 70.
 'Abd -'Azíz -'Ijlí (IX), 47.
 'Abd -Hamíd Maḍrúb (governor of Ṭabaristán, VIII²), 125.
 'Abd -Hamíd (secretary of Marwán II, A. D. 744—750), 111.
 'Abd -Jabbár b. 'Abd -Rahmán (VIII²), 118, 121.
 'Abdu'lláh b. -'Abbás (VII), 111, 112.
 'Al. b. 'Abd -'Azíz (VIII), 132.
 'Al. b. 'Azíz (officer of Ṭáhirids, IX²), 179.
 'Al. b. Abí Burda b. Abí Músá -Ash'arí, 6.
 'Al. [b.] Faḍlawayh -Sarawí (not -Sarwi, as in text), 46.
 "As-Sam'áni, *Ansáb*, Add. 23,355 (Brit. Mus.), f. 297b, gives سَرْوَى, Sarwi from سَرْوَى, Sarwá, in the district of Ardabíl, but سَرْوَى, Sarawi from سَرِيَّة, Sáriya (now Sári) in Mázandarán. Unfortunately he does not mention anyone derived from the last-named place." A. G. E.
 'Al. b. Hasan (adherent of Sayyid Náṣir-i-Kabír, X¹), 200.
 'Al. b. Házim (VIII²), 132.
 'Al. b. Husayn b. Sahl "Tájt Duwayr", 73.
 'Al. b.-Kawwá (Khárijite leader, VII), 101.
 'Al. b. Maḥmúd b. Núh, Abu'l-Abbás — (governor of Ṭabaristán), 38.
 'Al. b. Málík (governor of Ṭabaristán, VIII²—IX¹), 143.
 'Al. b. Mubárik, the scribe (X¹), 209.
 'Al. b. M. b. Núh -Sámání, Abu'l-Abbás — (X¹), 195.
 'Al. b. M. -Kátib ("the Scribe"), 206.
 'Al. b. -Muqaffa^c. See *Ibn -Muqaffa^c*.
 'Al. b. Qaḥṭaba (VIII²—IX¹), 132.
 'Al. b. Qutayba. See *Ibn Qutayba*.
 'Al. b. Sa'íd (IX²), 162, 163.
 'Al. b. Sa'íd -Jaríshí (or -Jurayshi, IX¹), 141, 143, 147.

"Jaríshí should at least be Jurayshi, but Jurashí is the older and better form, and is the actual reading of Add. 7633." A. G. E. (See end of p. 276).
 'Abdu'lláh b. Salám (X¹), 213.
 'Al. b. Sayf (VIII²), 123.
 'Al. b. -Ṭabarí (IX²), 80.
 'Al. b. Ṭáhir (governor of Khurásán, IX), 152—157.
 'Al. b. 'Umar b. -Khaṭáb, 98.
 'Al. b. Wahb -Rásibí (Khárijite leader VII²), 102.
 'Al. b. Wandá-ummíd (IX²), 162.
 'Al. b. Yaḥyá b. Kháqán (minister of -Mutawakkil, IX²), 158.
 Abú 'Abdi'lláh, Shaykh — (Imámi divine, X²), 54.
 Abú 'Al. -Hasan b. 'Alí b. Hishám (contemporary of -Aṣma'i, VIII²—IX¹), 136.
 Abú 'Al. M. b. H. (of Amul, X¹), 212.
 Abú 'Al. M. -Riḍá b. Zayd b. M. b. Zayd (X¹), 194.
 Abú 'Al. M. -Utrush. See -Utrush.
 'Abdu'l-Malik [b.] Makán (X²), 229.
 'Abdu'l-Malik b. Marwán (Umayyad Caliph, VII²), 39, 105.
 'Abdu'l-Malik I b. Núh -Sámání (A. D. 954—961), 224.
 'Abdu'l-Malik b. Qurayb -Aṣma'i (IX¹), 9.
 'Abdu'l-Qádir (read -Qáhir) -Jurjání, Imám —, 78.
 'Abdu'r-Rahmán Khúrzád ("probably Ibn Khurdádhbih", A. G. E., IX¹), 32.
 'Abdu'r-Rahmán Ṭughá-Turk, Atábek — (son of Quṭbu'd-Dín M. Khwárazmsháh, XIII¹), 59.
 Abú Abdi'r-Rahmán M. b.-H.-Lamrásaki, Qádi —, 30.
 Abú 'Abdi'r-Rahmán Ziyád b. Anṣam -Ifríqí (contemporary of the Caliph-Mansúr, VIII), 10.
 'Abdu's-Salám (chamberlain of Qábus, X²—XI¹), 92.
 'Abd-Shams (ancestor of Umayyads), 48.
 'Abdu'l-Wahid b. Isma'il "Imám-i-shahid" (murdered by Assassins", XI), 75.
 *Abhar, 69, 178.

*Abkhama, 28.

Abu'l-Muluk, 147. See *Qárin b. Shahriyár b. Sharwín*.

Abyssinians, 20, 74.

*Adharbayján, 14, 61, 68, 96, 237, 252, 254.

Adhar-valásh (Sásánian governor of Tabaristán, VII¹), 97, 98.

‘Adí b. ‘Abdu’lláh, 79.

‘Adu’d-Dawla Fanákhusráw b. Ruknu’d-Dawla -Hásan b. Buwayh (A. D. 949—982), 87—91, 158, 210, 223, 225, 226. See also *Fanákhusráw*.

‘Adu’d-Dawla, Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn-Mu’ayyad bílláh — b. Hus. b. Hárún b. Hus. b. M. b.-Q. b. Hus. b. Zayd b. H. b. ‘A. b. Abí Tálib, 50, 51, 53, 54.

Afḍalú’d-Dín Máhabádí (XII²), 69.

Afrásiyáb, 18—20.

Afrásiyáb, Kiyá — of Chaláp (XIV¹), 268, 269.

Afrásiyáb (warden of Kúzá, XIII¹), 256.

Afshín (IX¹), 155, 156.

-Agháni, *Kitábú'l-* —, 103.

Aghúshí, the Turk (X¹), 215.

*Ahár, 14.

*Ahlam (on coast, N. of Amul; Mel. 151, 208), 22, 28, 34, 191.

Ahmad b. ‘Abdu'l-‘Azíz b. Abí Dulaf -‘Ijlí (governor of Iráq, IX²), 191.

Ahmad b. ‘Abdi'lláh-Khujistáni (governor of Nishápur, IX²), 185.

A. b. Hanbal (VIII²), 125.

A. b. Hásan (IX²), 170.

A. Abu'l-Husayn (son of Sayyid Násir-i-Kabír, *q. v.*), 49.

A. b. ‘Isá b. ‘Alí b. -Hásan (IX²), 178, 183, 184.

A. b. Isma‘íl -Sámání (X¹), 195—199, 201.

A. Jál, Kiyá Jamálu'd-Dín — (XIV¹), 265, 266.

A. b. M. b. Aws (governor of Jálús, IX¹), 157, 158, 168.

A. b. M. b. Ibr. -Qá‘im, “Sálibu'l-Jaysh”, Sayyid — (IX²), 187—189, 200—205.

Ahmad b. M. b. Maliksháh, Malik — (XI²), 244, 245.

A. b. M. -Sikní (IX²), 179—181.

A. b. M.-‘Umarí (X¹), 220.

A. b. Núh b. *Dhu'r-Riyásatayn* (X¹), 198, 199.

A. b. Q., Abu'd-Darghám (governor of Sári, X¹), 199.

A. b. Rasúl (X¹), 216.

A.-Sa‘dí (servant of Qábús, X²—XI¹), 92.

A. b. Sálár (agent of Washmgír, X¹), 218.

A. b. Şálih -Dimishqí (authority cited by -Aşma‘í), 159.

A.-Tawfí (X¹), 207.

Abú A. Zanrás (or *Zanráshán*) of Naşirábád (X¹), 198.

Abú A. (Qádí of Rúyán, put to death by Mázyár, IX¹), 151.

Ahnaf (contemporary of ‘Alí b. Abí Tálib, VI¹), 180.

“Ahúsh” = “Death”, 26.

*Ahwáz, 33.

*A’isha Kargílí Dízh (near Aram, on the top of Darband-i-Kúla), 121.

Ibn ‘A’isha, 108.

Akharyár, father of Isfáhí, *q. v.* (X¹), 221.

*Akhláṭ, 252.

Akwán Dív, 35.

*Alamút, 206, 216, 240 (derivation), 258, 259.

Alandáy-i- [Qárin-i-] Sukhrá, 43, 125.

-‘Alaqqí, Abu'l-‘Ab.-Faqíh — (X¹), 215.

*Aláraš (near shore of Caspian), 42.

‘Aláu’d-Dawla ‘A. Qárin b. Húsamu’d-Dawla Shahriyár b. Qárin (XI²—XII¹), 242—245.

‘Aláu’d-Dawla ‘A. b. Húsamu’d-Dawla Ardashír (XII²), 261, 268.

‘Aláu’d-Dawla Hásan b. Rustam b. ‘Alí (XII²), 67, 247.

‘Aláu’d-Dawla b. Sháh Gházi Rustam (XII¹), 249.

‘Aláu’d-Dín Muḥammad (*wazír* of Tugha-Tímúr (XIV¹), 264.

‘Alá b. Sa‘íd of Sind (IX¹), 4.

Abu'l-‘Alá-Mihrawáni (jurisconsult and poet), 79.

Abu'l-`Alá -Sarwí (or -Sarawí: see above, p. 284, under 'Abdu'lláh b. *Fadlawayh*: IX²), 50.

‘Alawí Mahdí (warden of Alamút, XI²), 240.

Alexander the Great, 35, 41.

*Alexandria, 252.

*`Alí-ábád (S. of road between Bársurúsh and Sári), 80, 215.

‘Alí ‘Alá'u'd-Dawla b. Ardashír (XII²), 261, 268.

‘Alí ‘Alá'u'd-Dawla b. Shahriyár (XI²—XII¹), 242—245.

‘A. b. Aws (IX²), 162, 163.

‘A. b. Buwayh (X¹), 210, 223. See ‘Imadu'd-Dawla.

‘A. b.-Faraj (IX²), 169.

‘A. Gilkhwárán Sábiqu'd-Dawla (VI), 65.

‘A. b. Ḥarb (IX), 167.

‘A. b. H. -Marwazí (IX²), 190.

‘A. Abu'l-Hasan of Ray (author of *Firdawsu'l-Hikmat*), 35.

‘A. Hawákhún (? Mawákhún: XIV¹), 264.

‘A. b. Hus. b. ‘A. b. Abí Tálib (the Fourth Imám of the Shi'ites, generally known as “Zaynu'l-`Abidín”, VIII¹), 11.

‘A. b. Ibr. -Jílí (IX²), 164.

‘A. b. ‘Isa (VIII²), 5, 138.

‘A. b. Ja'far -Rází (X¹), 206.

‘A. b. Justán (or *Justán*; VIII²), 123.

*`Alí Kaláwa (quarter of Amul), 77.

‘A. Káwán, Shaykh — (XIV¹), 264.

‘Alí b. Khurshíd (X¹), 209—212, 214.

‘A. Kiyá b. Afrásiyáb (XIV¹), 269.

‘A. -Maghribí (IX²), 167.

‘A. b.-Mahdí b.-Mansúr -‘Abbási, 51. See *Ibn Sukkara*.

‘A. b. Mansúr (IX²), 172.

‘A. b. Mardáwíj “Táju'l-Mulúk” (XII), 66.

‘A. b. Muḥammad -Hádí -‘Askarí, Imám — (IX), 158, 159.

‘A. b. M.-Kúfí, 159.

‘A. b. M.-Nadím (IX), 159.

‘A. b. Músá -Rídá, Imám — (poisoned by -Ma'mún, IX¹), 53, 55, 79, 144.

‘A. b. Naṣr (IX²), 163.

‘A. b. Níkáma (X), 222.

‘A. Píruza, Ustád — (Ṭabarí poet, X²), 87, 88.

‘A. Qumí Darzí b. Harúsandán (X¹), 207.

‘A. Rídá (chamberlain of the Ispahbad Rustam, XII), 65.

‘A. Sábiqu'd-Dawla, Amír — (XII), 247, 249.

‘A. Sháh (governor of Dámghán, XII²), 255, 256.

‘A. b. Sháh Ghází Rustam (XII), 250.

‘A. -Shá'ir b. -Sayyid -Násir -Kabír (IX), 49.

‘A. b. Surkháb (IX²), 188, 193.

‘A. -Ṭabarí, Ustád —, 90.

‘Alí b. Abí Tálib (VII), 12, 13, 36, 48, 50, 51, 52, 70, 100—103, 108, 109, 111, 112, 144, 158, 161, 175, 178, 180, 242.

‘A. b. Wahsúdán (X¹), 206.

‘A. b. Zarrín-Kamar (XII¹), 59.

‘A. b. Zayn (properly *Rabban*) -Kátib (IX¹), 35, 43, 80.

Abú ‘Alí b. Alḥmad b. M. -Mudhaffári (X¹), 218.

Abú ‘A. Fáris (philologist, X²), 90.

Abú ‘Alí Ḥamúla (X²), 229—230.

Abú ‘A. b. Ḥ. Simjúr (X¹), 208, 227, 234.

Abú ‘A. b. Isfahán (X¹), 210, 216, 219.

Abú ‘A. -Kátib (X¹), 220.

Abú ‘A. -Khalífa (X¹), 217.

Abú ‘A. M. b. A. b. Ḥ. (X¹), 209—211.

Abú ‘A. Muslim (X²), 224.

*Alísha-rúd, 261.

Alp Arslán (XI²), 236, 239.

Alptagín (X²), 227.

“Amatu'r-Rahmán” (daughter of the Ispahbad Khurshíd, married to ‘Abbás b. Muḥammad -Hashimí, who thus named her), 121.

Ibnu^{pl}-‘Amíd Abu^{pl}-Faḍl M. b. -Hus. -Qumí (X¹), 219, 222.
 -Amín b. Hárún -Rashíd (IX¹), 143.
 ‘Amir b. Adam (VIII²), 123.
 ‘Amir b. ‘Abd Qays, 10.
 Amír Mú’min (XIV¹), 262.
 “Amír-i-Zarrín” (“the Golden Amír”, the Ispahbad Bahá’u’d-Dín so named), 252.
 ‘Ammár b. Yásir (contemporary of ‘Alí b. Abí Tálib, VII¹), 12.
 Abu^{pl}-‘Ammár -‘Atíqí (VIII²), 122.
 ‘Amr (? ‘Umar) b. -‘Alá (VIII²), 120, 124, 125, 130, 131.
 ‘Amr b. Bahr -Jáhidh (IX), 6, 110.
 *‘Amr (? ‘Umar) -ábád and -kaláda, 125.
 ‘Amr b. Layth -Şaffáří (IX²), 189, 191—193, 238.
 Abú ‘Amr (“the poet of Tabaristán”, IX²), 41, 47.
 *Amul, 4, 19, 20, 25—29, 32—34, 37, 39, 40, 48, 49, 56, 70, 73, 75—77, 82, 83, 89, 95, 98, 99, 115, 120, 122—124, 128—130, 132, 141, 149—153, 164, 165, 167—171, 174, 176, 178, 179, 181—183, 187—190, 192, 194, 196—200, 202—219, 221—223, 228, 241—245, 247, 248, 251—253, 256—257, 262, 265, 266, 269.
 Amula (legendary queen from whom the town of Amul is supposed to derive its name), 25.
 *Amúriya, 156.
 ‘Anátúr b. Bakhtánsháh (IX²), 169, 172.
 *Anbár, 134, 135.
 Anbárak (grandfather of Abu^{pl}-Hasan b. Hárún -Faqíh, converted to Islám), 26.
 Abu^{pl}-‘Anbas -Dámírí (parodist, IX²), 160.
 Ansábu Ashráft^{pl}-Amsár (by Ibn Ṭabáṭabá al-‘Alawí), 47.
 *Anúshadádhán, 196.
 Anúshirwán (Khusraw or Kisrá — the Sásánian, vi). See Núshirwán.
 Anúshirwán Hazár-mardí (IX²), 169.

Anúshirwán b. Minúchihr b. Qábus b. Washmgír (XI¹), 236.
 Anwári (the poet, XII), 66.
 ‘Aqíl b. Abí Tálib, descendant of —, 215.
 ‘Aqíl b. Mabrúr (IX²), 163.
 -Aqíqí, Sayyid Hasan b. Ja‘far — (IX²—X¹), 174, 200.
 *Arabia, 66, 69, 79.
 Arabs, 5, 15, 27, 85, 93, 97, 98, 101, 104, 105, 106, 126, 155, 223, 226, 228, 237.
 ‘Arafa, Day of —, 53.
 *Aram (Dorn 1 in Index, p. 568), 59, 121, 128, 200, 241, 245.
 *Ararm, Arazm (probably scribe’s errors for Aram), 28.
 *Arbanú (village one day’s march from Ray), 142.
 *Ardabil, 33, 59.
 *Ardashír-ábád, 268.
 Ardashírak Bablúraj (cowherd, VIII), 127.
 Ardashír Bábakán (the founder of the Sásánian Dynasty, A. D. 226), 1, 4, 7.
 Ardashír Husámu’d-Dawla b. Hasan ‘Alá’u’d-Dawla b. ‘Alí, Ispahbad — (XII²), 3, 4, 17, 25, 55, 67—73, 115, 204, 246—251, 254, 255, 258.
 Ardashír b. Kínhwár b. Rustam b. Dára b. Shahriyár, Malik Husámu’d-Dawla — (XIII), 256, 257, 258, 268.
 Arghun Shah (XIV¹), 264.
 Arish (a legendary hero, celebrated for his skill in archery), 18—20.
 Arjásf (XII²), 251, 252.
 *Armenia, 97.
 *Arrán, 45, 244, 252, 254.
 Arslán, Amír — (XII²), 251.
 Arslán Bálú (X²), 227.
 Arslán Hindú-bacha (XI¹), 231.
 Arslán Jáhib (variants: Hajib and Hárib, XI¹), 234.
 *Artá (Mel. 294, l. 19, 300), 123.
 Asad b. Jandán (IX²), 157, 166, 167, 169.

As'adu'd-Dín Husayn, called *díwána*, "the madman" (XII²), 65.

Asatakín the Turk (governor of Ray, IX²), 189.

Ibn Abi'l-Asbagh (IX²), 192.

Asfár b. Kurdúya (X²), 229.

Asfár b. Shírúya (X¹), 209, 210, 212—216.

-Ash'arí, Abu'l-Hasan — (allusion to doctrines of — in an Arabic verse), 21.

Ash'ath b. Qays (VII), 102.

*Ashílá-Dasht (near Amul), 194.

Ashkálí (father of Zarhawájastán, X²—XI¹), 230.

*Ashtád (or Ushtád: see Mel. 201: name of a village near Amul, and of its founder), 20, 21, 24, 163.

*Asia Minor, 247. See also *Rúm*.

*Así Vísha (4 parasangs from Amul), 37.

*Ask (mountain village in district of Láriján: Mel. 24, 208), 36.

*Askar (place celebrated for locusts), 33.

-Askarí, Imám -Hasan b. 'Alí — (IX²), 50.

-Aşma'í (the philologist, IX¹), 136, 159.

*Asram, 122, 127, 128.

*Asrán, 242.

*Asrámíl, 122.

"Ass", "Year of the —", 110.

Assassins, 64, 66, 75, 76, 240, 241, 243, 245, 256, 258, 259.

*Astána-saráy (Amul), 25.

*Astarábád, 28, 56, 77, 84, 86, 95, 167, 169, 170, 172, 177, 181, 186, 201, 204, 207, 214, 219, 221, 222, 226, 228, 232, 238, 246, 265.

-Astarábádí (author of the *Manhaju'l-Maqál*), 11, 271.

Atábek Qarája (guardian of Seljúqsháh, XII¹), 245.

*Atash-Kúh, Castle of —, in Khurásán, 240.

Ibnu'l-Athír (XIII¹), 235, 240.

*Atrábin (Maydán of —, in Sári), 241, 249.

'Attáb b. Warqá -Shaybáni (IX), 157.

-'Attábí (poet, IX), 9.

'Attáf b. Abi'l-'Attáf of Syria (IX), 169.

Atsiz Khwárazmsháh (XII), 62.

Avicenna (Shaykh Abú 'Alí b. Síná, X²—XI¹), 86.

*'Awa, 244.

*'Awámma-kúy, 57, 81.

Awhadu'd-Dahr-Dánishí (astronomer), 87.

*'Awhar (Sári), 17.

Abú 'Awn b. 'Abdu'lláh (VIII), 120.

*'Awrárábád (above Parícha), 123.

*Awsarzín, 123.

*Aynu'd-Dawla Siyáh (XII), 251.

*'Aywa, 252.

Abú Ayyúb -Múriyáni (*wasír* of -Mánsúr, VIII²), 113.

Azáriqa, 104. See Khárijites.

Azarmí Dukht (Sásánian Queen, VI¹), 96.

Azarmí Dukht "Girán Gúshwár", daughter of the Ispah-bad Farrukhán, 116, 121.

Azbar b. Janáh (IX²), 172.

*'Azdara, 122.

Azhidaháka, 36. See Dahák (Dáhhák).

*'Aziz b. 'Abdu'lláh (IX), 169.

*'Aziz -Tughra'í (XI), 62.

Bábak (IX¹), 153, 155.

*Bábil, Khaṭíra-i- —, 156.

*Babul (or Báwul) River, 16.

*Badakhshán, 95.

*Badhandún, 152 *ad calc.*

*Baghdád, 3, 33, 49, 51, 71, 74, 75, 79, 87, 91, 117, 118, 122, 125, 126, 131, 133, 136, 138, 143, 147, 149, 150, 153, 156, 157, 161, 179, 194, 197, 206, 223, 224, 236, 243, 246, 259, 263.

*Bá-Hamrá, 53.

Bahá'u'd-Dawla, Amír Hassán — (XII), 245.

Bahá'u'd-Dín. See Hasan b. Mahdi -Mámtíri.

Bahá'u'd-Dín, Ispahbad — (XII), 252.

Bahistún (or Bísutún) b. Washmgír (X²), 225.

Bahrám Chúbín (VI²), 35, 96, 237.

*Bahrám Dih, 123.

Bahrám Gúr (V¹), 94.

Bahrám-i-Fírúz (VIII²), 131.

Bahrámsháh of Ghazna (XII²), 58.

Bahrír (servant of -Mutawakkil, IX), 159, 160.

Bahrú'l-Fawá'id, by 'Alí b. Zayn -Kárib (IX¹), 80.

*Bákharz, 264.

-Bákharzí, Abu'l-Hasan 'Alí b.-H. b. 'A. b. Abi't-Tayyib (author of the *Dumyatu'l-Qaṣr*; XI), 77, 78, 86.

Bakhtiyár Mu'izzu'd-Dawla (X²), 91.

*Bakr-ábád (in Gurgán), 186.

Bakr b. 'Abdu'l-Azíz -Ijlí (IX²), 48, 192.

Bakr b. Malik, Abu Sa'íd — (X²), 224.

Abú Bakr Dirázgúsh -Rázi (XII²), 253.

Abú Bakr b. Ilísá (X¹), 214, 217.

Abú Bakr -Khwárazmí (X²), 90.

Abú Bakr b. Muhammad "Jahán-Pahlawán" b. Ildigiz, Atábek — (XII²—XIII¹), 254.

Abú Bakr Zakariyyá (X¹), 215.

Abú Bakr -Zífrí (X¹), 207.

Baktakín (chamberlain of Majdu'd-Dawla, X²), 230.

-Baládhuri's *Futúhü'l-Buldán*, 27, 100.

*Bálá'ín, 168.

-Bal'amí, Abu'l-Faḍl M. b. 'Abdu'lláh — (IX²—X¹), 199, 200.

*Bálá-ráh, 123.

*Balásághún, 236.

Balásh-i-Pírúz (Sásánian King, v²), 94, 96, 99. See also *Valásh*.

Bálí b. Farrukh-Ádín, 37.

*Balíkání (near Amul), 164.

*Balkh, 21, 22, 25, 94, 138, 227.

*Balqa', 54.

Bámdádán (father of Mazdak, VI), 93.

*Banafsh (between Amul and Jálús), 188.

*Banafsha-Gún, 248.

*Bá-Naṣrán (in Tammísha), 16.

*Bá Naṣrí Mash-had (in Sári), 144.

*Báqilí-pazán, Maydán-i-Rúdbár — (Amul), 262.

*Baqfú'l-Gharqad (cemetery at al-Madína), 71.

*Baqrá-Kaláta, Ispahbad's palace (Amul), 247.

Baraka (brother of Șadaqa, Amír of Hilla and "king of the Arabs"; XII), 60.

Bárbad-i-Jarídí (Tabarí poet, XII), 65.

Barbier de Meynard, 4.

*Bárfurúsh, 28.

Bári'-i-Jurjáni, 79.

Bárkala (XII²), 252.

Barmak, Al-i—, or House of — ("Barmecides", VIII²—IX¹), 124, 133, 134, 140; *History of — (Ta'rikh-i-Barmaka)*, 39.

Barkiyáruq b. Maliksháh (Seljúq, XI²—XII¹), 240.

Bashár (mother of Adhar-valásh, VII), 98.

*Báshír (near Amul), 199.

*Baṣra, 33, 100, 111, 180.

Báti b. Sa'íd (X²—XI¹), 228, 230, 239.

Báw (or Báv), son of Shápur, son of Kayús, and contemporary of Khusraw Parwiz and Bahrám Chúbín (VI²), ancestor of the Báwands (Báwands) or "House of Báw", 17, 95, 96, 98, 99, 101, 236, 268.

Báwands, House of Báw, 5, 34, 58 *et seqq.*, 65, 91, 93, 95, 140, 145, 149, 225, 239, 255, 257, 263, 269—270.

*Báwandán, Palace of —, 17.

Báwand-náma, 3.
 *Báv-awíján, 17.
 *Báward, 123, 223.
 *Bayárú-Kamand, 264.
 Báyazíd -Bistámí (Şúfi saint, IX), 10.
 -Bayyá‘í, Abu‘l-Qásim — Qádí‘l-quḍáṭ, 77.
 Bazghash (one of Sanjar's *amirs*, XII¹), 246.
 Bekcheri (one of Sunqur's *amirs*, XII¹), 241.
 *Bíjúrí (var. Machúrí), 28.
 Abú Bilál, 103.
 Binán b.-Hasan (X), 220.
 Bindú‘e (uncle of Khusraw Parwíz, VI²), 35.
 -Bírúní, Abú Rayhán — (X²), 14.
 *Bísha-i-Nár (Tammísha), 16.
 Bísitún b. Tíjásaf (circ. A. D. 1000), 229, 231.
 Bistám (= Gustahm), uncle of Khusraw Parwíz (VI²), 35.
 *Bistám, 60, 66, 68, 81, 207, 208, 232, 255.
 “Bí-Tawba” (“the Unrepentant”, nickname of M. Abú Tawba, XII), 81.
 Bíwar-asp (title of Dahák or Dahhák, *q. v.*), 16, 36.
 *Biyár, 231.
 Bízhan, 39.
 Bizist b. Fírúzán (= Yahyá b.-Mansúr, IX), 87, 147, 148, 149.
 Brockelmann, 6.
 *Buḥayra, 134.
 -Buḥtúrí, Abú ‘Ubáda — (poet, IX), 159—160.
 Abú‘l-Buḥtúrí, Qádí — (IX¹), 141, 142.
 *Bukhárá, 82, 91, 193, 194, 197—201, 206, 207, 213, 215, 219, 221, 224, 227, 241.
 *Bulghár, 33.
 Bundár b. Múní (IX), 156.
 Búqá b. Seljúq (XI¹), 235.
 *Búrábád, 200.
 *Búrán (plain of —, near Amul), 265.

Burhán, Qádí — (XII²), 254.
 -Burqa‘í, Sayyid — (IX²), 180.
 Buwayh, House of —, or Buwayhids, 5, 19, 90, 99, 158, 208, 210, 217, 218, 220, 222, 223, 225, 235, 237, 238.
 Buzurjmihr (VI), 32, 85.
 Byzantines, or “Romans”, 145, 147, 150, 152, 156, 236.

 Cæsar, 7.
 Calf, Golden —, 9.
 Chagániyán. See *Sighániyán*.
 Chahár Maqála (of Nidhámí -‘Arúdí -Samarqandí, XII), 1, 185, 219, 238, 239.
 *Cháh-i-Víjan (“Bízhan's Well”, near Ummídwár-Kúh), 39.
 *Chaláp, 15, 268, 269. See also *Shaláb*.
 *Chamanú, 123. See *Famanú*, *infra*, and Mel. 57.
 *Chashma-Rúd (in Daylaman), 199.
 -Chashmí, 53 *ad calc.*
 *China, 16.
 Chingíz Khan (XIII¹), 258.
 Christ, 91. See *Masih*.
 Christians, 75, 91.
 Chúbán, Amír Tálísh — (XIV¹), 262.
 *Cilicia, 152.
 *Ctesiphon. See *Mada'in*.

 -Dabírí, M. b. — (X¹), 220.
 Dabuwan (old family of Tabaristán), 95.
 Dábuya-i-Gíl-i-Fírúz-i-Narsi-i-Jámásp (VII¹), 98, 99.
 *Dádaqán, Qaṣr-i- — (between Tammísha and Sáru), 114.
 Dádawayh, called al-Muqaffá (father of ‘Abdullah b. Muqaffá, VIII), 5.
 Dád-Ḥabashí b. Altúntásh, Amír — (XI²), 240.
 Dahák (= Dahhák or “Zohák”), 15, 16, 36, 94. See also *Azhidaháka* and *Bíwarasp*.

*Dahistán (Dihistán), 18.
 -Dá'i, Abu'l-Faḍl — (x¹), 203.
 -Dá'i ila'l-Haqq b. -Hádī, Kiyá Buzurg — (vi¹), 246, 251.
 -Dá'i. This title was borne by three of the four 'Alawí Sayyids who ruled over Tabaristán from A. D. 864—928. The first, Sayyid Ḥasan b. Zayd b. Isma'il 'Ja'libu'l-Hijára" b. -H. b. Zayd b. -H. b. 'Alí b. Abí Ṭalib (A. D. 864—883), seems to have been entitled simply *ad-Dá'i*. The second, M. b. Zayd, brother of him last mentioned, was entitled *ad-Dá'i ila'l-Haqq* (p. 195) or *ad-Dá'i'l-Kabir* (p. 187). He was followed by Sayyid Náṣir-i-Kabír, called *ath-Thá'ir* ("the Avenger", p. 195); and he in turn by Sayyid Abú M. -H. b. -Q. b. -H. b. 'A. b. 'Abdu'r-Rahmán ash-Shajará b. Q. b. H. b. Zayd b. -H. b. 'A. b. Abí Ṭalib, called also *ad-Dá'i ila'l-Haqq*, or *ad-Dá'i's-Saghír*. See under these names, and also pp. 47, 48, 158, 187—194, 195, 203, 204, 212—216, 237, 245, 252.

Dakiyya (the Daylamite, IX²), 183.

*Damáwand, Mount — 15, 16, 29, 35, 36, 104, 165, 167, 217, 218, 219, 222, 230, 240, 249.

*Dámghán, 14, 60, 66, 68, 189, 208, 219, 240, 243, 246, 255.

-Dámírí, Abu'l-Anbas — (parodist, IX), 160.

*Danakí (near Jamanú), 41.

-Dánishí, Awḥadu'd-Dahr. — (astronomer), 87.

Daqiqí (x; reference uncertain), 85.

Dárá (Darius, the last Achæmenian king), 35.

Dára b. Rahman, Ispahbad Naṣíru'd-Dawla — (xii), 249.

*Dárá, Castle of — (*Dízh-i-Dárá*), 255.

Dárá, Ispahbad Majdu'd-Dín — (xii²), 249.

Dárá b. Qábús b. Washmgír (x²—xi¹), 227, 234, 235.

Dárá b. Shahriyár b. Sharwín (x²), 239.

*Dárán, 101.

"Dáránjan kardan" (?) to strew the ground with "crows' feet" to check the advance of cavalry), 107, 221.

*Darband, 97, 221.

*Darband-i-Shínúh, 247.

Abu'ḍ-Ḍárghám Ahmád b. Qásim (governor of Sári, x¹), 199. Dárgil (xii¹), 247.

*Dar-i-Júr (one of the gates of Amul), 213.

*Dárim, 35.

-Dárír, Abú Muqátil — (poet, IX²), 175, 176.

-Darís (viii), 106.

Dáristán, Ispíd —, 67.

Darkala, Atábek —, 252.

*Darlabash, Quarter of —, 80.

Darmesteter, Professor James — 1, 6, 7, 14.

Ibn Darrám (? Warrám), Amir —, 79.

Darzí Qumí, or 'Alí Qumí Darzí (x¹), 207, 208.

Dá'úd b. Q.-Ja'sarí, Sayyid Abú Háshim — (ix), 161.

Dá'úd -Yazdí (ix¹), 4.

Abú Dá'úd (x¹), 217, 218.

*Dawlatábád (palace near Sári), 69, 254.

Dawlatsháh (xv), 79.

*Dawmatu'l-Jandal, 101.

*Daylam, 20, 23, 49, 50, 53, 54, 61, 97, 100, 106, 121, 164, 168, 169, 188, 190, 194—196, 199, 201, 209, 214—216, 218, 221, 223, 226, 228, 229, 232, 238, 244, 248, 251, 252.

*Daylamán, 49, 50, 53, 54, 61, 106, 164, 168, 169, 190, 194, 195, 199, 201, 215, 216, 218, 221, 223, 226, 244, 248, 251, 252.

Daylamites, 99, 107, 132, 149, 164, 166, 167, 169, 171, 172, 173, 177, 179, 181—185, 187, 188, 190, 196, 200, 205, 207, 213, 219, 223, 226, 228—230, 232, 233, 238, 244, 246. See also *Buwayh*, *House of* —.

Daylamí the son of Farrukhán (ix²), 164.

Dázamíhr, Ispahbad — (VIII), 46, 109, 169.
 Dervish Orders, First appearance of — in Mázandarán, 267.
Dhahíru'd-Dín ("Sehir-ed-Din" of Dorn, XV²), I, 14—21, 23—26, 28, 43, 44, 47.
Dhahíru'd-Dín Fáryábi (poet, XII), 71—73, 263.
Dhahíru'd-Dín Nassába, Sayyid — of Gurgán, 57.
Dhakhira-i-Khwárazmsháhi, 86.
Dhaylu'l-Mudhayyal (of -Tabarí), 74.
Dhu'l-Manáqib (= Farrukhán-i-Buzurg, *q. v.*), 99.
Dhu'r-Riyásatayn (IX), 198, 213, 214.
*Dih-i-Fulúl (in Láriján), 67, 68.
*Dihistán, 18, 181, 182, 193.
Díkú, daughter of Isfahán, 210, 216.
*Dilam (near Kalár), 39.
*Dínár-jarí, Dínár-jay, Dínár-zári, 14, 28, 57.
*Dínár-Kafshín, 17.
Dirázgúsh, Abú Bakr — 253.
Díwán-i-Waṣl, 69.
Díwarwaz Mastamard (Tabarí poet, X), 87—89.
*Diz (or Dizh)-i-Dárá, 35.
*Diz-(or Dizh)-Kúh (near Isfahán), 241, *ad calc.*
*Diz-(or Dizh)-i-Rashkán (near Ray), 19.
*Dizwán (in Panjáh-hazár), 122.
*“Dome of the Cross-roads” (*Gunbudh-i-Char-sú*), 77.
Dorn, I, 14, 17, 18. See also Dhahíru'd-Dín.
Dragon, Contest between Sám-i-Naríman and —, 41.
*Dú-áb, 122, 172.
*Dúdán (between Sári and Tarchí or Taricha), 166.
-Duhálí, Ḥammál b. 'Umar — (VIII), 126.
*Dúláb, 166.
*Dúládár, 221.
*Dumyatu'l-Qaṣr (of -Bákhárzí, *q. v.*), 78, 86.
*Dunbáwand, 29. See *Damáwand*.
Ibn Durayd (X¹), 110.

*Egypt, 33, 69, 91, 247.
 Ethé, Dr. Hermann — I, 238.
 Ethiopian (Zanj), 180.
*Euphrates, 236.
Ezra, 110.
*Fadak (estate of Faṭíma), 108.
Faḍl b. Ja'far (IX²), 192.
Faḍl b. Marzubán (IX²), 179.
Faḍl b. Rabí' (IX), 9, 136, 139.
Faḍl-i-Rafiqí (IX²), 164, 173.
Faḍl b. Yahyá -Barmaki (IX), 133, 135.
Abu'l-Faḍl b. 'Amíd, 90.
Abu'l-Faḍl-Dá'i, 203.
Abu'l-Faḍl Isma'il b. [-Ḥasan b. Ahmad b.] Muḥammad -Músawi -Jurjání (XII¹), 86.
Abu'l-Faḍl, Ispahbad — (X²), 228.
Abu'l-Faḍl M. b. 'Al.-Bal'amí (*q. v.*), 199.
Abu'l-Faḍl M. b. Hus., known as Ibnu'l-'Amid (*q. v.*), 90.
Abu'l-Faḍl -Ráwandi (XII²), 69.
Abu'l-Faḍl Shágird (X¹), 217.
Abu'l-Faḍl -Tha'ir -'Alawí, 222, 223.
Fahrán (VIII), 115.
Fá'iq, 226, 227.
*Fajam, 200.
*-Fakhkh, 53, 124.
Fakhr b. 'Abdu'lláh -Khuza'i (VIII²), 122.
-Fakhri, 108, 109.
Fakhru'd-Dawla, the Buwayhid (X²), 19, 225, 226, 237.
Fakhru'd-Dawla Garshásf (XII¹), 246, 247.
Fakhru'd-Dawla II. b. Shah Kay-Khusraw (XIV¹), 263—269.
Fakhru'l-Islám. See 'Abdu'l-Wáhid b. Isma'il.
Fakhru'l-Mulük (or -Mulk) Rustam b. Shahriyár b. Qárin (XI²), 241.

Falaku'l-Ma'álí (IX¹). See *Minúchihr b. Qábús*.

*Falás, 195.

Fálízbán (IX²), 164.

Fanákhusráw (‘Aqdu'd-Dawla) b. Ruknu'd-Dawla Ḥasan b. Buwayh (X), 90, 158, 210, 223, 225. See also ‘Aqdu'd-Dawla and *Buwayh, House of* —.

Fana-i-Wandá-ummíd (IX), 165, 168—170.

Fannáq (or Fayyáq), ‘Umar — (VII²—VIII¹), 101.

Faqíh-i-Āl-i-Muhammad (XII²), 69, 79.

Abu'l-Faraj ‘Alí b. Ḥusayn b. Hindú (scholar and poet, XI¹), 54, 77, 78, 110.

Abu'l-Faraj Mudhaffar b. Isma'íl (jurisconsult and scholar), 79.

Abu'l-Faraj Rashíd b. ‘Abdu'llah -Astarabádí (physician, X²—XI¹), 86.

Farámarz, Qiwám — (XII²), 65.

Faréán, Farghán, or Farghána, Devil of — (Sálím, officer of al-Mahdí, slain by Wandád Hurmazd, VIII²), 43, 126.

Fárasha (or Firásha, but the first form is supported by Ṭabarí, III, 521, l. 10: officer or client of al-Mahdí, nicknamed as above, VIII²), 43, 44, 128, 129.

Faríburz (contemporary of the legendary king Kay-Khusraw), 17.

*Farím (or Parím, *q. v.*, or Firím in Mel., p. 59), 29, 95, 123, 126, 148, 170, 237, 242, 243.

Fáris (governor of Gurgán, X¹), 197, 198.

Farrukh Adín, 37.

Farrukhán-i-Buzurg (“the Great Farrukhán”, VII²—VIII¹), 17, 27, 30, 45, 99, 100, 101, 104, 106, 109.

Farrukhán-i-Gushnasp-i-Sárúya.

*Farrukhán-Fírúz, Mountain of —, 114.

*Fárs. See *Párs*.

*Farshwádgar (Patashkhwár), 14, 35, 91, 97, 149, 161.

Farshwád-Marzubán, Khurshíd — (VIII), 113.

“Farshwádgar-Sháh”, Gíl-Gílan — (VII¹), 97.

Fáryábí, Dhahíru'd-Dín — (poem by, XII), 71—73.

*Fath فصل, 123.

Abu'l-Fath b. Abi'l-Faḍl (scholar), 90.

Fátima (daughter of the Prophet, VII¹), 108.

Fátima (daughter of Ahmad, wife of Isma'íl (-A.) -Alawí, X¹), 216.

Abu'l-Fawáris b. ‘Aqdu'd-Dawla the Buwayhid (XI¹), 234—235.

Fayyáq (or Fannáq), ‘Umar — (VII²), 101, 104.

Ferídún, 15—18, 34, 60, 94.

Fihrist of -Túsí, 11, 12.

Fihrist of Ibnu'l-Warráq, 26.

*Fímat, 263.

Abú Firás, Amír — (X, verses cited), 111.

*Firásha. See *Farásha*.

Firdawsí (XI¹), 1, 16, 18, 85, 238.

Firdawsu'l-Hikmat (by ‘Alí b. Rabban al-Kátib), 35, 80.

Fírúz. See *Pírúz*.

Fírúz (chamberlain of the Ispahbad Khurshíd, VIII²), 118.

Fírúz (King of Balkh), 21, 27, 32.

*Fírúz-ábád, 27; Castle of —, 99.

Fírúzán (father of Ḥasan and grandfather of him next mentioned, X¹), 196.

Fírúzán b. Ḥasan b. Fírúzán (X²), 228, 229, 239.

*Fírúz-Kanda, 27.

*Fírúz-Khusra, Castle of — (afterwards Fírúz-ábád), 99.

*Fírúz-Kúh (dyke), 40, 165, 255.

Fírúz-i-Narsí (VII), 97.

Forbes' *Persian Grammar*, 76.

*Fulúl, Dih-i— (in Láriján), 67, 68.

Ibn Fúrak (preacher, of Amul, X²), 76, 77.

-Furhúdí, Khalíl b. Ahmad — (VIII), 5.

-Futúh, Kitábu'l—, of -Baládhuri, 27, 100.

Gabr, 107, 142, 186. See *Magian, Zoroastrian*.

Gabriel, Archangel —, 7, 52.

*Gandum-Kúb" ("the Corn-crusher", nickname of Sultan Mahmud the Seljúq, XII¹), 62.

*Ganjáwarúz, 263.

*Ganjína, Plain of —, 67.

Garshah, or Jarsháh ("king of the Mountains"), 14, 126.

Garshásf, Fakhru'd-Dawla — (XII¹), 246, 248.

Gátás (the five additional days of the old Persian year which are not included in the 12 months of thirty days each), 167.

*Gawázúnú, 128.

Gáwbára, 3, 96, 97, 99, 126, 237. See *Gil-gilan Farshwádgar-sháh*.

Gáw-Kaláda, 42.

Gayòmarth (the Persian Adam), 14.

*Gázar-gáh (near Amul), 209.

-Ghánimí, Abu'l-Abbás — (minister of Qábus, X¹—XI¹), 92.

*Ghars, 234.

-Ghazáli, Muhammad — (XI), 75.

Gházán Khán (XIII²—XIV¹), 263.

Gházi, Rustam Sháh-i— (XII), 59, 90, 245, 246, 249, 250.

*Ghazna, and Sultáns of —, 5, 58, 59, 93, 227, 231, 233, 234, 235.

Ghuraru'd-Durar (of Sayyid Murtadá), 103.

*Gíl, 50, 58, 97, 196, 200, 209, 214, 218, 219, 223, 240, 244, 247. See also *Gilán*.

*Gílán, 14, 25, 49, 58, 61, 67, 97, 98, 106, 115, 168, 191, 193, 195, 197, 199, 200—208, 217, 222, 223, 231, 236, 247, 252, 268.

Gílánsháh, 97, 122, 236.

Gíl-gílán Farshwádgar-sháh, 97. See also *Gawbara* above.

Gílá-gúr (X¹), 218.

*Gíláná-júy (canal), 115.

"Girán-Gúshwár" ("She of the heavy ear-rings", Azarmí Dukht, daughter of Farrukhán, so called), 166.

*Girda-zamín (four parasangs from Sári), 177.

*Gird-i-Kúh (Assassin stronghold), 240, 258, 259.

Gir-sháh (or Gar-shah, *q. v.*), 14 *ad calc.*

de Goeje, 26, 27, 32, 74, 100.

*"Golden Amír" (Amír-i-Zarrín, *i. e.* the Ispahbad Bahá'u'd-Dín, XII²), 252.

Greece, Greeks, 40, 95.

*Gulpáyagán, 66, 244, 247.

Gunduya-Zúma (aphrodisiac herb), 40.

Gurdiya (sister of Bahrám Chúbín, *q. v.*), 35.

*Gurgán, 14, 25—28, 54, 57, 60, 62, 89, 97, 105—108, 115, 120, 121, 131, 140, 177—184, 186—194, 197, 200, 205—208, 210—214, 216—218, 220—223, 225—229, 231—234, 237, 241, 244, 245, 254, 263, 264.

Gurgín-i-Mílád (legendary hero), 28.

*Gúr-i-Dá'i ("The Tomb of the Dá'i", *i. e.* Sayyid Muhammad b. Zayd), 193.

Gúrígir (X), 220.

*Gurishbard, 163.

*Gurivun" (Tabarí equivalent of *guribán* = Ar. *jayb*), 34.

*Gúr-shir, 200.

*Gúrshírad, 248. (This undoubtedly represents the same name as Gurishbard above, and probably as Gúrshír and Qúrshírad, but I cannot identify the place, and have no means of deciding which form is correct).

Gúr-tír (herb), 40.

Gushnasp b. Más (IX²), 169, 172.

Gushnasp-sháh. See *Jashnasp*.

Gúshyár (IX²—X¹), 217.

Gúshyár b. Lisán -Jílí (astronomer), 87.

Gustahm, Malik-i-Mu'adhdham Sharafu'd-Dawla — (XIV), 265.

-Hádí (Caliph, VIII²) 53, 131, 132.
 Hádí b. Hání (governor of Ṭabaristán, VIII³), 132.
 Hájib b. Zurára -Tamímí (VI), 130.
 -Hajjáj b. Yúsuf (VII²), 13, 101, 104, 105.
 Abu^l-Hajjáj. See *Mardáwij b. Ziyád*.
 Hájji Khalífa, 35.
 *Halawán, 123.
 *Hamadán, 87, 225, 252, 254.
 -Hamása (of Abú Tamám), 103.
 Haml ^cA'isha (child of Ja'far the Barmecide and ^cAbbása, VIII²), 134.
 Hammád (VIII²), 128.
 Hammál b. ^cAbdu^l-Azíz (VIII²), 132.
 Hammál b. ^cUmar -Duháli (VIII²), 126.
 Hamúla, Abú 'Alí — (X²—XI¹), 229, 230.
 Abú Ḥamza (VIII), 12.
 Ibn Hanbal, Ahmad — (VIII²), 125.
 Abú Ḥanífa M. b. M. -Astarábádí, 79.
 Ibnu^l-Hanífiyya (VII²), 80.
 Abú Ḥarb b. Minúchihr (XII²), 247, 248, 249.
 *Harsa-mál (3 parasangs from Amul), 128.
 Harthama b. A'yan (IX¹), 142, 143.
 Hárún b. ^cAlí Amulí, Abú Ṣádiq — (X¹), 74.
 Hárún b. Gharíb (cousin of the Caliph al-Muqtadir, X¹), 215.
 Hárún Isfahdúst, Abú Músá — (X¹), 206.
 Hárún b. Muḥammad, Abú^l-Qásim — (IX¹), 153.
 Hárúnu^r-Rashíd (VIII²—IX¹), 17, 26, 43, 44, 45, 53, 132—137, 142—144, 237.
 Hárúnu^l-Wáthiq (IX¹), 155.
 *Harúra, 102.
 Ḥarúriyya sect (= Khawárij, or Khárijites), 102.
 Harúsandán-i-Tída (X¹), 202, 205, 207.
 Harúya, Ramja — (VIII²), 113—115.
 -Hasan b. ^cA. -^cAskarí (eleventh Imám, IX²), 50.

H. b. ^cA. b. H. b. ^cA. b. ^cAmr b. ^cA. Zaynu^l-^cAbidín.
 See *Násir-i-Kabir*.
 -H. b. ^cA. b. Abí Tálib (VII), 27, 48, 70, 98, 108.
 -H. b. ^cA., Sayyid Abú M. — See *Násir-i-Kabir*.
 -H., Amír — (servant of Najmu^d-Dawla, XII¹), 244.
 H. b. Bahrám, Caravansaray of — (at Sári), 212.
 H.-Başrí (VIII), 13.
 H. b. Buwayh, Ruknu^d-Dawla — (X), 218, 220, 222, 223.
 See *Ruknu^d-Dawla*.
 H. b. Firúzán (X¹), 196, 210, 214, 216, 219—222, 224, 225.
 H. b. Ḥamza (X), 12 *ad calc.*
 H. b. Ḥamza, Sayyid Abu^l-Q. —, 55—57.
 H. b. Ḥus. (brother of -Táhir, IX¹), 154, 156, 157.
 H. b. Isháq. See *Nidhámu^l-Mulk*.
 H. b. Isma'íl (officer of M. b. ^cAl. b. Táhir, IX), 161.
 H. b. Ja'far -^cAqíqí, Sayyid — (IX²), 174.
 H.-Júri, Shaykh — (spiritual director of Amír Mas'ud, XIV¹), 264.
 H. b. Mahdí -Mámírí, Sayyid — (XII), 55, 68.
 H. b. M.-^cAqíqí (IX²), 174, 176, 177, 179, 181, 186. See also *Ṣáḥibu^l-Jaysh*.
 H. —, Sayyid Abú M. —, 49. See *Násir-i-Kabir*.
 H. Qaḍí Kal (XIII²), 261.
 H. b. Q. (X¹), 200, 202—204, 206—209, 213. See *ad-Da'i ilá'l-Haqq*.
 H. b. Rustam b. ^cA., Ispahbad ^cAlá'u^d-Dawla — (XII²), 67.
 H. b. Rustam, Sharafu^l-Mulük — (XII²), 249.
 H. b. Sabbáh (the "Old Man of the Mountain", or founder of the Assassins, XI²), 240.
 H. b. Yahyá -^cAlawí, called *Kúchak*, 19.
 H. b. Zayd b. Isma'íl "Jálibu^l-Hijara" (IX²), 47, 161—187, 189, 200, 205.
 H. b. Zayd b. M. b. Zayd, Sayyid —, called *ad-Da'i ilá'l-Haqq* (X¹), 194.

Abu'l-H. (brother of -Náṣir, x¹), 223.
 Abu'l-H. 'Alí b. Músá, Imám — (IX¹), 70.
 Abu'l-H. 'A. (of Ray), 35 *ad calc.*
 Abu'l-H. b. Hárún -Faqíh (his grandfather converted to Islam, VIII²), 26.
 Abu'l-H. -Mámtírí (x¹), 220.
 Abu'l-H. M. See *Yazdádi*.
 Abu'l-H. Qábús, See *Qábús b. Wáshmír*.
 Abu'l-H. b. Abí Yúsuf (x¹), 212.
 Háshim, House of —, 49, 178. See also 'Alí b. Abi Tálib, *Sayyids* etc.
 Háshim -'Alawí, Sayyid — (XII²), 249.
 Háshim (gaoler of Yúsuf [b.] 'Umar ath-Thaqafí, VIII¹), 6.
 Abú Háshim Dá'ud b. Qásim -Ja'farí, Sayyid — (IX), 161.
 Abú Háshim Masrúr. See *Masrúr*.
 Hassán Bahá'u'd-Dawla, Amír — (governor of Amul, XII¹), 245.
 Hátim -Aşamm (Şúfi saint), 10.
 Hawákhún (? Mawákhún), Amír 'Alí (XIV¹), 265.
 Hayátila (Huns), 94.
 Haydar b. Ká'ús (fellow-conspirator with Afshín and Bábak IX¹), 155.
 Haydar b. Sálár (Daylamite chief, X²), 230.
 Hayyán -Nabaṭí, Abú Ya'mar — (VIII¹), 107.
 Hazárasp, Ustundár — (XII²), 251—253.
 *Hazár-garí, Hazár-jaríb (Mel., p. 175, etc.), 23, 29, 178, 185, 238.
 "Hazár-mard" (title), 128 *ad calc.*, 169.
 *Házima-Kúy (parish in Amul), 34.
 *Herát, 226, 227, 264.
 *Hí-Hí-Kayán, 128.
 *-Hijáz, 58, 91, 124, 178, 223.
 Ibn Hilál -Şábí, Abú Isḥaq Ibráhím — (X²), 90, 223.
 *Hilla, 60, 79.

*Hirhiz (river), 25, 194, l. 5, 247, 257, 266. (In the last three places the text has "Hurmuz", but I have no doubt that حرمي is a mistake for هریز. This river runs by the E. side of Amul. See Mel., 200, etc., and *s. v.* "Heras" in his Index).
 Hishám, Qádí — (author of macaronic verse), 81.
 Híttán, 'Imrán b. — (Khárijite poet, see *Tabari*, series I, p. 3064), 103.
 Hizíbrú'd-Dín Khurshíd (cousin of Sháh Ardashír, XII²), 252, 253.
 Hudhayfa of Yaman (VII), 98.
 Ibn Hújr, 78, l. 4.
 Húlágú (XIII¹), 258, 259, 263.
 *Hulwán, 38.
 Huns (Hayátila), 94.
 *Húr (?), 29.
 Hurmazd (? iv, Son of Anúshirwán, Sasanian king, VI²), 36, 95.
 *Hurmazd-ábád, 127, 149, 152.
 Hurmazd-Káma-i-Yazdánkard (IX²), 174, 198, 201.
 *Hurmazd-Kúh, 224.
 Hurmuz-i-Khurshid, 116, 118.
 *Hurmuz (river), 194, l. 5, 247, 257, 266. See *Hirhiz*, for which in all these passages I now believe Hurmuz to be a scribe's error.
 Husámu'd-Dawla. See *Ardashír b. Hasan*.
 Husámu'd-Dawla Ardashír b. Kínhwár (or Kíkhwáz) b. Husámu'd-Dawla Shahriyár (XIII¹), 256, 257.
 Rustam b. Dárá b. Shahriyár (XIII¹), 256, 257.
 Husámu'd-Dawla Shahriyár b. Qárin (XI), 239—245. See also *Shahriyár b. Qárin*.
 Husámu'd-Dín. See *Nusratu'd-Dín Rustam b. 'Alá'u'd-Dawla 'Alí b. Shahriyár b. Qárin* (XII), 62.
 *Húsam (حسام), 14, 244.
 Husayn b. Ahmad, Sayyid — (IX), 164.

Husayn b. 'A. b. Abí Tálib (the Third Imám, VII), 48, 70, 108, 111, 158.
 Hus. b. 'Alí -Fáqih (X), 212.
 Hus. b. 'Alí, Sayyid — "Şáhibul-Fakhkh" (VIII²), 124.
 Hus. b. 'Alí of Sarakhs (IX), 167.
 Hus. b. Dínár (X¹), 206.
 Hus. b. Hamza -Laythí, 12 and *ad calc.*
 Hus. b. Hárún, Sayyid —, 50.
 Hus. Kart, Malik Mu'ínud-Dín — (XIV¹), 263.
 Hus. b. M. -Hanafí (IX²), 163.
 Hus. b. M. "Kala" (X¹), 219.
 Hus. b. M. -Alawí -Mámtírí, Abú Riðá — (XIII¹), 257.
 Husayn b. Mundhir -Raqqáshí, 32.
 Hus. "the Poet", 58.
 Hus. Shírzíl (XII¹), 245.
 Hus. b. Zayd, 167.
 Abu'l-Hus. -Mu'ayyad Bîllâh 'Aqdudud-Dawla, Sayyid — (X²—XI¹), 50—54.
 Abu'l-Hus. A. b. M. b. Ibr. called "al-Qâ'im" (IX²), 187—189.
 Abu'l-Hus. b. M. b. Zayd, Sayyid — (IX²), 193.
 Abu'l-Hus. A. b. Abí M. H. b. 'Alí, Sayyid — (X¹), 200—209.
 Abu'l-Hus. 'A. b. 'Al. b. 'Abbás (VIII²), 112.
 Abu'l-Hus. b. Káki (brother of Mákán, X¹), 210.
 Abu'l-Hus. -Shajarí (X¹), 215.
 Húshang (brother of Kayús, VI¹), 92.
 Ibráhím b. Abla (IX), 149.
 Ibr. b. Gúshyár (X¹), 217.
 Ibr. b. Hilál -Şábí, Abú Isháq — (X²), 90, 223.
 Ibr. b. Isháq -Faqíh (X¹), 195.
 Ibr. b. Isháq -Shámí (VIII²), 122.
 Ibr. b. Khalil (IX²), 164, 165, 170, 195.
 Ibr. b. Mihrán (X¹), 195.
 Ibr. b. Mu'ádh (IX²), 174.

Ibráhím b. M. Nášíhí (teacher of M. b. H. b. Isfâzîjîr, author of this book, XII²), 76.
 Ibr. Mu'íní (Tabarí poet), 86.
 Ibr. -Muntaşir -Sámâni (X²), 227.
 Ibr. -Mu'tâsim. See -Mu'tâsim.
 Ibr. b. 'Uthmán b. Nahík (VIII²), 26.
 -İdâk -Aqdûdî (of 'Abdu'l-Qâdir -Jurjâni, *q. v.*), 78, 90.
 -'Ijlî, 'Abdu'l-'Azîz — (IX¹), 47, 48. See also *Abu'l-'Abbâs Ahmad*, and *Bakr b. 'Abdu'l-'Azîz*.
 İlak Khán (X²—XI¹), 227.
 İl-Arslân Khwârazmshâh (XII), 67.
 İlduguz, Atâbek — (XII), 67, 72, 252.
 İl-Tughdî (X¹), 214.
 İlyás b. İlîsa -Sughdî (X¹), 201.
 İmâd Kujâj (XII²—XIII¹), 79. See also *Faqîhu Ali Muhammad*.
 İmâdî (the poet, XII¹), 59.
 İmâdu'd-Dawla 'Ali b. Buwayh (X¹), 208, 210.
 Imâmî sect, 49, 54, 58, 68, 202.
 Imâm-i-shahîd ("the martyred Imâm"), 75. See also 'Abdu'l-Wâhid b. Ismâ'il.
 Imâms, Tombs of — destroyed by -Mutawakkil (IX²), 48.
 İmrân -İlîtân (Khârijite, VII), 103, 104.
 İnânj, Amîr — (XII²), 250.
 *India, 33, 35, 40, 68, 93, 156, 246.
 Indian servants, 156.
 *Injîr, 198.
 İraj (son of the legendary Feridûn), 17, 18, 19.
 İráq, 3, 14, 16, 33, 49, 59, 61, 62, 63, 66, 67, 68, 91, 96, 104, 107, 127, 131, 141, 147, 154, 161, 174, 178, 179, 196, 198, 213, 217, 218, 219, 220, 222, 223, 226, 236, 244, 245, 249.
 'Isâ b. 'Abdu'l-Hamid, 170.
 'Isâ b. Mâhân (VIII²), 131.

Husayn b. 'A. b. Abí Tálib (the Third Imám, VII), 48, 70, 108, 111, 158.

Hus. b. 'Alí -Fáqih (X), 212.

Hus. b. 'Alí, Sayyid — "Şálíbü'l-Fakíkh" (VIII²), 124.

Hus. b. 'Alí of Sarakhs (IX), 167.

Hus. b. Dínár (X¹), 206.

Hus. b. Ḥamza -Laythí, 12 and *ad calc.*

Hus. b. Hárún, Sayyid —, 50.

Hus. Kart, Malik Mu'ínud-Dín — (XIV¹), 263.

Hus. b. M. -Ḥanafí (IX²), 163.

Hus. b. M. "Kala" (X¹), 219.

Hus. b. M. -'Alawí -Mámírí, Abu Ríḍa — (XIII¹), 257.

Huṣayn b. Mundhir -Raqqáshí, 32.

Hus. "the Poet", 58.

Hus. Shírzíl (XII¹), 245.

Hus. b. Zayd, 167.

Abu'l-Hus. -Mu'ayyad Bi'lláh 'Adudu'd-Dawla, Sayyid — (X²—XI¹), 50—54.

Abu'l-Hus. A. b. M. b. Ibr. called "al-Qá'im" (IX²), 187—189.

Abu'l-Hus. b. M. b. Zayd, Sayyid — (IX²), 193.

Abu'l-Hus. A. b. Abí M. H. b. 'Alí, Sayyid — (X¹), 200—209.

Abu'l-Hus. 'A. b. 'Alí b. 'Abbás (VIII²), 112.

Abu'l-Hus. b. Kákí (brother of Mákán, X¹), 210.

Abu'l-Hus. -Shajarí (X¹), 215.

Húshang (brother of Kayús, VI¹), 92.

Ibráhím b. Abla (IX), 149.

Ibr. b. Gúshyár (X¹), 217.

Ibr. b. Hilál -Şábí, Abú Isháq — (X²), 90, 223.

Ibr. b. Isháq -Faqíh (X¹), 195.

Ibr. b. Isháq -Shámí (VIII²), 122.

Ibr. b. Khalil (IX²), 164, 165, 170, 195.

Ibr. b. Mihrán (X¹), 195.

Ibr. b. Mu'ádh (IX²), 174.

Ibráhím b. M. Náṣíhí (teacher of M. b. H. b. Isfandiyár, author of this book, XII²), 76.

Ibr. Mu'íní (Ṭabári poet), 86.

Ibr. -Muntaşir -Sámáni (X²), 227.

Ibr. -Mu'taşim. See -Mu'taşim.

Ibr. b. 'Uthmán b. Nahík (VIII²), 26.

-'Idáh -'Adudi (of 'Abdu'l-Qádir -Jurjáni, *q. v.*), 78, 90.

-'Ijlí, 'Abdu'l-'Azíz — (IX¹), 47, 48. See also *Abu'l-'Abbas Ahmad*, and *Bakr b. 'Abdu'l-'Azíz*.

Ilak Khán (X²—XI¹), 227.

Il-Arslán Khwárazmsháh (XII), 67.

İlduguz, Atábek — (XII), 67, 72, 252.

Il-Tughdí (X¹), 214.

Ilyás b. Ilísa -Sughdí (X¹), 201.

İmád Kujaj (XII²—XIII¹), 79. See also *Faqihu Ali Muhammad*.

İmádí (the poet, XII¹), 59.

İmádu'd-Dawla 'Alí b. Buwayh (X¹), 208, 210.

İmámí sect, 49, 54, 58, 68, 202.

İmám-i-shahid ("the martyred Imám"), 75. See also 'Abdu'l-Wáhid b. Isma'il.

İmáms, Tombs of — destroyed by -Mutawakkil (IX²), 48.

İmrán -Hijtán (Khárijite, VII), 103, 104.

İnánj, Amir — (XII²), 250.

*India, 33, 35, 40, 68, 93, 156, 246.

Indian servants, 156.

*Injír, 198.

İraj (son of the legendary Feridún), 17, 18, 19.

İráq, 3, 14, 16, 33, 49, 59, 61, 62, 63, 66, 67, 68, 91, 96, 104, 107, 127, 131, 141, 147, 154, 161, 174, 178, 179, 196, 198, 213, 217, 218, 219, 220, 222, 223, 226, 236, 244, 245, 249.

*Isá b. 'Abdu'l-Ḥamíd, 170.

*Isá b. Máhán (VIII²), 131.

*İsfahán, 16, 69, 217, 218, 241, 243.
 Isfáh-dúst, Abú Músá Hárún — (X¹), 206.
 Isfáhí b. Akharyár (X), 221.
 Isfáhí b. Urmazdyár (X¹), 217, 218, 220, 221.
 Isfandári, Jíl-i—, 228.
 *İsfandiyár, 123.
 Ibn Isfandiyár (Muhammad b. -Hasan, author of this work, XII¹), 3—4, 258.
 *İsfará'in, 57, 76, 183, 207.
 Isháq (of Gurgán, IX²), 183, 184.
 Isháq b. Shaykhí (IX²), 167.
 Abú Isháq Ibráhím b. Hilál -Şábi (author of *al-Kitabu't-Taji*, X²), 90, 92, 223.
 Abú Isháq Ibráhím b. Marzubán, 73.
 Abú Isháq -İsfará'iní (philosopher, X²), 76.
 *Isháq-ábád, 219.
 -İskáfi (scribe, X¹), 219 *ad calc.*
 Iskandar, Malik Ja'lálu'd-Dawla — Ustundár (XIV¹), 265—269.
 Isma'il b. 'Abbád, the Şáhib — (X), 19, 76, 78, 90—92.
 Isma'il b. Ahmád -Sámáni (IX²—X¹), 193—197.
 Isma'il b. Mardúchín (X²), 220.
 Isma'il b. Núh -Sámáni (IX²—X¹), 190. (I think, however, that the passage should read "Naşr and Isma'il, the sons of Ahmád", whose brother Núh was their uncle.)
 Isma'il b. Sayyid Abu'l-Qásim (X¹), 210, 216.
 Isma'il b. Zayd, Abú 'Alí — (X), 194.
 Isma'ilí sect. See *Assassins*.
 *Ispahbadán, 116.
 *Ispíd Dáristán, 67.
 *Ispíd-júy, 172.
 Israel, Children of —, 13. See *Jews*.
 *İştakhr, 18, 96, 237.
 *İwájan (in Kalá Rustáq), 261.
 *İzzu'd-Dín, Atábek — (XII²), 252.

*İzzu'd-Dín Yaḥyá (XII²), 68, 69.
 *Jábarán, 123.
 Jábır b. 'Abdu'lláh -Anṣári (VII¹), 7.
 -Ja'dí, Abu'l-Qásim — (XI¹), 234.
 Ja'far b. Alanbán (X¹), 221.
 Ja'far b. Hárún (IX¹), 141.
 Ja'far b. İHASAN b. 'Alí -Naşir, Abu'l-Qasim — (X¹), 49, 201, 204—206, 218.
 Ja'far b. Muḥammad (IX²), 176.
 Ja'far -Mutawakkil. See -*Mutawakkil*.
 Ja'far b. Rustam (governor of Kalár, IX²), 165, 171.
 Ja'far b. Shahriyár b. Qárin (IX²), 163, 169, 237.
 Ja'far b. Yaḥyá -Barmakí (X¹), 133—140.
 Abú Ja'far -Báwandí (killed by Assassins, XII¹), 245.
 Abú Ja'far -Hanáti, 80.
 Abú Ja'far Kúrankíj (X¹), 211.
 Abú Ja'far (brother of Makán, X¹), 222.
 Abú Ja'far Mánkdím, Sayyid — (X¹), 212—216.
 Abú Ja'far -Mansúr. See -*Mansúr*.
 Abú Ja'far M. b. 'A. of Amul (X¹), 212, 218.
 Abú Ja'far M. -Báqır, İmám — (VIII), 12. See also *Muham-*
mad -Baqır.
 Jaghří Beg Dá'ud, Abú Sulaymán — -Seljúqi (XI¹), 235.
 Jahdám b. Khabab (governor of Ṭabaristán IX¹), 140.
 -Jahidh (IX), 6 *ad calc.*, 110.
 *Jahína (Castle of —, more correctly *Juhna* or *Juhna*, q. v.), 66, 220, 247, 248.
 Abú'l-Jahm -Kalbi (VIII), 106.
 *Jahrum, 33, l. 23.
 Ját (or Jálí)-i-Lashkar-sítán (IX²), 168, 174.
 *Jájarm, 14, 60, 66, 193, 207, 210.
 Jakáw (the *sipahsalar*, X¹), 208.
 Jál, Kiyá Jamálu'd-Dín Ahmád — (XIV¹), 265, 266.

Jalál, Kiyá — (nephew of above), 265.
 *Jalál, Kiyás of —, 269.
 Jalálu³d-Dawla Iskandar (Ustundár, XIV¹), 265—267, 269.
 Jalálu³d-Dín Ḥasan b. 'Alá'u³d-Dín Muḥammad Khwárazmsháh (XIII¹), 256—258.
 *Jaláyin, 208.
 Jálibu'l-Hijára (IX²), 47, 162. See Ḥasan b. Zayd b. Isma'īl, *Sayyid* —.
 *Jálús (Mel., 47, where it is called *Shálus* or *Chálus*), 28, 29, 40, 132, 149, 151, 157, 163, 165, 168, 169, 172, 179, 181, 188, 190—192, 200, 218, 221—223, 232.
 Jalwánán (foster-brother of the Ispahbad Khurshíd), 114.
 Jalwánán (son of Wandá-ummíd, IX²), 171.
 Jalwánán (of Tarícha, *circ* A. D. 900), 195.
 *Jám, 264.
 Jamál Bázargha, 77 (last two lines).
 *Jámanú, 41, 123, 165, 167, 169—172.
 Jámásp-i-Pírúz (Sásánian, V²—VI¹), 94—97.
 Jamshíd, 15.
 Jamshíd, Ispahbad —, 29.
 *Janáshk, castle of —, 232.
 Jarsháh. See *Garsháh*.
 *Jáshk, 33.
 Jasnasf-sháh (King of Ṭabaristán, III¹), 1, 4, 6, 7, 92.
 Jastán, 123, 195. See *Justán*.
 Jataz (Turkish tribe), 264.
 Jathím. See *Jaysham*.
 Jáwalí, Amír — (XII¹), 245, 246.
 *Jawn, 194, l. 5.
 *Jayhún, river. See *Oxus*.
 Abú Jaysh—Hilálí (VIII²), 129.
 -Jaysham, Ḥakím —, 53.
 -Jaytham. See above, -*Jaysham*.
 Jews, 37, 75, 158.

Jibríl, Jibrá'íl. See *Gabriel*.
 *Jíláb, 15. See *Chaláb*, for which it appears to be a scribe's error.
 *Jílán, 58. See *Gilán*.
 *Jílánábád, 123.
 Jílánsháh, See *Gilánsháh*.
 Jílā'u'l-Abṣár, 53, and note *ad calc.*
 Jíl-i-Isfandári, 228.
 Jíl b. Sa'íd -Marwázi (VIII²), 122.
 Joseph, 97.
 -Joshemí, 53.
 -Ju'fí, M. b. Abí Surra (VIII¹), 106.
 *Júhína, 186, 190, 248. See *Fahína*, above.
 *Júlka-Kúy, 77, l. 2 *a. f.*
 *Júmand, Castle of —, 230, 231.
 Jumhur b. Marár (VIII²), 117, 118.
 *Júparm, 123.
 *Júrishjírd (Sa'íd-ábád), 123.
 *Jurján, 25, 57. See *Gurgán*.
 *Jurjunbání, or Jurkhiyání, 117.
 Ibn Jurmúz, 'Umar — (IX²), 48.
 Jusnas b. Sáruya b. Farrukhán (VIII²), 115. See also *Gush-nasp*, *Fasnasf*.
 Justán-i-Wahsúdán (IX²), 178, 179, 190, 191, 196, 203.
 Justi, 14.
 Juthaym. See *Jaysham*.
 *Juwayn, 75.
 Ká, Amír — (X²—XI), 36, 95, 210, 211, 273.
 Ka'b b. Zuhayr (VII), 110.
 Kabúd-jáma, 95.
 *Kábul, 40.
 *Kachín, Castle of —, 222.
 *Kajín, Castle of —, 204.

*Kajú, 100, 132, 181, 190, 198, 248, 251.

*Kajúr (Mel., 47), 163, 248.

*Kajúya, 28.

*Kajwúhí (Qaṣabatu'r-Rúyán), 123.

Kákí, the father of Mákán. See *Mákán*.

“Kala”, Ḥusayn b. Muḥammad (X¹), 219.

Kaláband (head-dress worn by Ṭabarís), 268.

Kalálak (long locks of hair worn by Ṭabarís), 268.

Kálanjár, Abū'l-‘Abbás b. — (X¹), 216.

Abú Kálanjár b. Minúchihr b. Qábus (X¹), 235.

*Kalár (Mel., 56, 213), 28, 39, 123, 132, 157, 163—165, 168, 171, 181, 182, 195, 200, 248, 251.

*Kala-Rustáq (Mel., 213, “Kelárestak”), 262.

*Kaláta (near Bisṭám; Mel., “Kelate” and “Kelati”), 89, 138, 139, 148), 208.

*Kálbadraja, 149.

Kalíj (a herb used medicinally), 20.

*Kálíjar, 266.

Kalila and Dimna, Book of —, 86.

-*Kalimatu'r-Ruhániyya fi ḥikamí'l-Yúnániyya* (by Abū'l-Faraj ‘Alí b. -Ḥusayn b. Hindú), 77.

Kamálu'l-Balágha (by Abū'l-Ḥ. 'A. b. M. -Yazdádi), 92.

Kámil (of -Mubarrad), 103.

Kámilu's-Ṣaná'at (by Abú 'A. Fáris; cf. my translation of the *Chahár Maqála*, p. 124), 90.

*Kamímnám, 128.

*Kandasán, 100, 182.

*Kandí-Ab, 149.

*Kanz-girdáb (near Jamanú), 41.

*Karkam, 247.

Karshásf (legendary hero of Persia), 16.

Kart (Dynasty), 264.

*Kaskarúd, 123.

*Káshán, 33, 68.

Kat Búqá, Amír (XIII¹), 258.

Ká'ús, Malik — b. Fakhru'd-Dín (XIV¹), 269.

Káwa (the blacksmith), 19, 94.

Kawádh (Sásánian king, V²—VI¹), 7. See also *Qubád-i-Pirúz*.

Káwán, Shaykh 'Alí — (XIV¹), 264.

*Kawíj, 205.

Kawkabán (IX²—X¹), 181, 196.

Kawwá, 'Abdu'lláh b. — (Khárijite leader, VII²), 101.

Kayán Búj (X¹), 211.

Kay-Ká'ús b. Iskandar b. Qábús (XI²), 236.

Kay-Ká'ús (Ustundár, XII¹), 54, 60, 246—248, 250.

Kay-Khusraw (legendary king of Persia), 17.

Kay-Khusraw b. Táju'd-Dawla Yazdigird (XIV¹), 262, 268.

Kay-Khusraw, Ustundár Sháh — (XIV¹), 262, 263.

Kayús (V²—VI¹), 7, 92, 93, 95, 98.

*Kázar, Plain of —, 196.

*Kerbelá, 70, 158.

Khadija (mother of Abú Ja'far Mánk-dím, X¹), 216.

Khalaf b. 'Abdu'llah (VIII²), 122.

Khalid b. Barmak (VIII²), 124, 126, 128, 130.

Abu Khálid (VII²), 103.

*Khalida-Saráy, 124.

Khalifa, Abú 'Alí — (X¹), 217.

Khalifa b. Bahrám (VIII²), 123, 129?

Khalifa b. Ḥilya (VIII²), 123.

Khalifa b. Mihrán (X¹), 129, 195.

Khalifa b. Núh, Abú'l-Wafá — (X), 200.

Khalifa b. Sa'íd (? Sa'íd) b. Harun -Jawhari (VIII²—IX¹), 140.

Khalil b. Alḥmad. See *Furhád*.

Khalil b. Kájí (X¹), 209.

Khalil b. Wandásafan (IX¹), 150, 151.

Ibn Khallikán (XIII), 5, 6, 51, 106.

Khágán, the — of the Turks, 93, 94, 138.

Ibn Khágán, 'Abdu'llah b. Yahya — (IX), 158.

*Kajú, 100, 132, 181, 190, 198, 248, 251.

*Kajúr (Mel., 47), 163, 248.

*Kajúya, 28.

*Kajwúhí (Qaṣabatu'r-Rúyán), 123.

Káki, the father of Mákán. See *Mákán*.

"Kala", Ḥusayn b. Muḥammad (X¹), 219.

Kaláband (head-dress worn by Ṭabarís), 268.

Kalálak (long locks of hair worn by Ṭabarís), 268.

Kálanjár, Abu'l-Abbás b. — (X¹), 216.

Abú Kálanjár b. Minúchihr b. Qábús (XI¹), 235.

*Kalár (Mel., 56, 213), 28, 39, 123, 132, 157, 163—165, 168, 171, 181, 182, 195, 200, 248, 251.

*Kalá-Rustáq (Mel., 213, "Kelárestak"), 262.

*Kaláta (near Bistám; Mel., "Keláte" and "Kelati"), 89, 138, 139, 148), 208.

*Kálbadraja, 149.

Kalíj (a herb used medicinally), 20.

*Kálíjar, 266.

Kalila and Dimna, Book of —, 86.

-*Kalimatu'r-Rúhániyya fi ḥikamí'l-Yúnániyya* (by Abu'l-Faraj 'Alí b. -Ḥusayn b. Hindú), 77.

Kamálu'l-Balágha (by Abu'l-Ḥ. 'A. b. M. -Yazdádí), 92.

Kámil (of -Mubarrad), 103.

Kámilu's-Ṣaná'at (by Abú 'A. Fáris; cf. my translation of the *Chahár Maqála*, p. 124), 90.

*Kamímnám, 128.

*Kandasán, 100, 182.

*Kandí-Ab, 149.

*Kanz-girdáb (near Jamanú), 41.

*Karkam, 247.

Karshásf (legendary hero of Persia), 16.

Kart (Dynasty), 264.

*Kaskarúd, 123.

*Káshán, 33, 68.

Kat Búqá, Amír (XIII¹), 258.

Ká'ús, Malik — b. Fakhru'd-Dín (XIV¹), 269.

Káwa (the blacksmith), 19, 94.

Kawádh (Sásánian king, V²—VI¹), 7. See also *Qubád-i-Pírúz*.

Káwán, Shaykh 'Alí — (XIV¹), 264.

*Kawfíj, 205.

Kawkabán (IX²—X¹), 181, 196.

Kawwa, 'Abdu'lláh b. — (Khárijite leader, VII²), 101.

Kayán Búj (X¹), 211.

Kay-Ká'ús b. Iskandar b. Qábús (XI²), 236.

Kay-Ká'ús (Ustundár, XII¹), 54, 60, 246—248, 250.

Kay-Khusraw (legendary king of Persia), 17.

Kay-Khusraw b. Táju'd-Dawla Yazdigird (XIV¹), 262, 268.

Kay-Khusraw, Ustundár Sháh — (XIV¹), 262, 263.

Kayús (V²—VI¹), 7, 92, 93, 95, 98.

*Kázar, Plain of —, 196.

*Kerbelá, 70, 158.

Khadija (mother of Abú Ja'far Mánk-dím, X¹), 216.

Khalaf b. 'Abdu'lláh (VIII²), 122.

Khálid b. Barmak (VIII²), 124, 126, 128, 130.

Abú Khálid (VII²), 103.

*Khálida-Saráy, 124.

Khalifa, Abú 'Alí — (X¹), 217.

Khalifa b. Bahram (VIII²), 123, 129?

Khalifa b. Ḥilya (VIII²), 123.

Khalifa b. Mihrán (X¹), 129, 195.

Khalifa b. Núḥ, Abu'l-Wafá — (X), 200.

Khalifa b. Sa'íd (? Sa'íd) b. Harún -Jawhári (VIII²—IX¹), 140.

Khalil b. Ahmád. See *Furhádi*.

Khalil b. Kájí (X¹), 209.

Khalil b. Wandásafan (IX¹), 150, 151.

Ibn Khallikán (XIII), 5, 6, 51, 106.

Kháqán, the — of the Turks, 93, 94, 138.

Ibn Kháqán, 'Abdu'llah b. Yahya — (IX), 158.

Khargásh, Sálár — (X²), 228, 234.
 Khárijites, 101—104.
 *Kharaqán, 69.
 *Kharmazar (near Amul), 222.
 Khatíb, Sayyid Imám —, 58.
 *Khaṭíra of Bábil, 156.
 Ibnu'l-Khayr, the Náṣibí (IX), 52.
 Khazars, 97, 199.
 Khidásh b. Mughíra b. -Muhallab b. Abí Sufra (VIII¹), 106.
 Khiyán (or? Khayán: IX²), 164, 170, 171, 195. See Muḥammad b. Rustam b. Wádá-ummid.
 Khudá-banda, Sultán Muḥammad — (XIV), 262, 263.
 “Khudáwand-i-Kalála” (= Wádá-ummid b. Wádád Hurmasd, *q. v.*: VIII²), 127.
 Abu'l-Khuḍayb Marzúq -Sa'dí (VIII²), 120, 122.
 Khujand (XII²), 68.
 -Khujistáni, A. b. 'Al. — (IX²), 185, 186.
 *Khurásán, 7, 33, 35, 46, 62, 65, 66, 93, 94, 96, 99, 105, 107, 112, 118, 121, 122, 123, 138, 139, 143, 152, 154, 157, 167, 168, 177, 180, 181, 183, 184, 188, 190, 194, 201, 205, 207, 208, 210, 213, 214, 216, 218, 224, 227, 232, 234, 238, 239, 240, 254, 258, 262, 264, 268.
 Ibn Khurdádhbih, 32 *ad calc.*, 272.
 *Khurramábád, 123.
 Khúrsháh, Ruknu'd-Dín — (XIV), 259.
 Khurshíd b. Dázamíhr (VIII²), 46.
 Khurshíd Gávbán, 17, 101.
 Khurshíd-i-Gushnasp-i-Nídrand (IX²), 164, 168, 170, 171, 172.
 Khurshíd, Hizíbru'd-Dín — (XI), 252, 253.
 Khurshíd, Ispahbad — (VIII²), 113—117, 121, 122.
 Khurshíd b. Abu'l-Qásim -Mámtírí (IX), 60.
 Khurzád, 'Abdu'r-Rahmán — (? Ibn Khurdádhbih, *q. v.*), 32.
 *Khurzád, 237.

Khushk Khayán, 195.
 *Khushrúd, 194.
 Khushnawáz (V), 94.
 *Khusraw-ábád (near Amul), 19.
 Khusraw-Fírúz-i-Justán (X¹), 202—203, 206.
 Khusraw-i-Fírúz (king of Balkh), 25.
 Khusraw-isfáhí (IX¹), 237.
 Khusraw Parwíz (Sásánian king, VII¹), 35, 36, 60, 95, 236.
 Khusraw Sháh (Magian astrologer of Sháh Gházi Rustam, XII), 90.
 Abú Khuzayma (VIII²), 122, 123.
 *Khwáják, 168, 170, 188, 251.
 *Khwár, 189, 244.
 *Khwárazm, 4, 13, 67, 93, 96, 109, 190, 193, 235, 254, 255.
 -Khwárazmí, Abú Bakr — (X), 90.
 Khwárazmsháhs, 59, 62, 67, 204, 255, 256, 257, 258.
 Kíkhwáz (or Kíkhwár, XIII¹), 258.
 *Kílankúr, 37.
 *Kílárján, 193.
 *Kílis, Darband-i—, 59.
 *Kímnán, 169.
 Kinár b. Fírúzán (X²), 229.
 “King of the Mountains”, Sharwín b. Surkháb first so entitled (IX²), 237.
 Kíkhwár (or Kíkhwáz, XIII¹), 258.
 Kíkhwár b. Shahriyár b. Kíkhwár (XIII¹), 256.
 *Kírmán, 217, 218, 235.
 Kírmán -Bukhári (VIII²), 122.
 *Kísa, 115.
 Kisrá, 7, 20, 130, 155, 258. See Anúshirwán, Núshirwán, Khusraw, Sásánians.
 Kitáb -Aghrád (by Sayyid Abu'l-Faḍl Isma'il -Musawi -Jurjáni), 86.

K. *Amthál -Muwallada* (by Abu'l-Faraj 'A. b. Hus. b. Hindú), 77.

K. *-Ansáb*, 204.

K. *-Bayán wa -Tabyin* (by -Jáhidh), 6, 110.

K. *Bulgha* (by Sayyid Abu'l-Hus. -Mu'ayyad Bihári 'Adu'd-Dawla), 50.

K. *Bulgha* (by Abu'l-Faraj 'A. b. -Hus. b. Hindu), 77.

K. *-Dimá'a* (by Sayyid Abú Tálib Yahyá), 55.

K. *-Faraj ba'd -Shidda* (by Abu'l-Q. 'A. b. M. -Tanukh), 52.

K. *Humayra* (by Ibn Durayd), 110.

K. *-Ídáh -Adudi* (by Abú 'Alí Fáris), 90.

K. *-Ídáh -Adudi*, Comm. on — (by Abdu'l-Qádir -Jurjáni), 78.
[This name, as Mr. Ellis has pointed out to me, should be 'Abdu'l-Qáhir, the author of the well-known *Mi'at 'amil*, who died in A. D. 1078. See Brockelmann's *Gesch. d. arab. Litt.*, Vol. I, pp. 287—288].

K. *-Ifáda* (by Sayyid Abu'l-Hus. -Mu'ayyad Bihári), 50.

K. *-Jumal* (by 'Abdu'l-Qáhir -Jurjáni), 78. See above.

K. *"Khudhún-ná'ír"* (by M. b. Jarír b. Rustam -Sarawí), 79.

K. *-Masáha* (by Abu'l-Faraj 'A. b. -Hus. b. Hindu), 77.

K. *-Masálik* (by 'Abdu'r-Rahmán Khúrzád), 32, and *ibid.* *ad calc.*

K. *Miftáh -Tibb* (by Abu'l-Faraj 'A. b. Hus. b. Hindú), 77.

K. *-Mudhakkar wa -Mu'annath* (by the above Abu'l-Faraj), 77.

K. *-Mujzi* (by Sayyid Abú Tálib Yahyá), 55.

K. *-Mustarshid* (by M. b. Jarír b. Rustam -Sarawí), 79.

K. *-Nawádir* (by -Aṣmá'i), 136, 159.

K. *-Nuzha* (by the above Abu'l-Faraj), 77.

K. *-Tabṣira* (by Sayyid Abu'l-Hus. -Mu'ayyad Bihári), 50.

K. *-Tahrír* (by Sayyid Abú Tálib Yahyá), 55.

K. *-Táj* (by Abú Ishaq Ibr. b. Hilál -Sábí), 90, 223.

K. *-Tajríd* (by the above Sayyid Abu'l-Hus.), 50.

K. *-Tanjih wa -Ishráf* (by -Masúdí), 26.

K. *-Tibb -'Alá'i* (by Sayyid Au'l-Faḍl Ismá'il), 86.

K. *-Wasáṭa bayn -Ziná wa -Liwáṭa* (by the above Abu'l-Faraj), 77.

K. *Yádgár* (by Sayyid Abu'l-Faḍl Ismá'il).

"Kiya" (= "House"), 35.

Kiyá Afrásiyáb (XIV¹), 268, 269.

Kiyá Buzurg -Dá'i ila'l-Haqq -Ridá b. Hádi (XII¹), 246, 252.

Kiyá Jalál, nephew of Jamálu'd-Dín Ahmad Jál (XIV¹), 265, 268.

Kiyá Jamálu'd-Dín Ahmad Jál (XIV¹), 265.

Kiyá M. b. H. (Grand Master of Alamút, XIII), 259.

*Kiyá Salyán, 35.

Kiyá Táju'd-Dín (nephew of Jamálu'd-Dín Ahmad Jál: XIV¹), 265.

Kiyás of Chaláp, 268, 269.

Kiyás of Jalál, 269.

"Kúcha-i-Gázarán ("Street of the Washerman" or "Washers" in Amul), 25.

*Kúfa, 79, 100, 161.

*Kúh-i-Qárin, 16, 95.

*Kúh-páya, 182, 191.

*Kuhrúd, Castle of —, 221, 247, 250. See also *Kuhrúd*.

Kujaj, Imám 'Imád —, called *Fá'íl* (XII²—XIII¹), 79.

Kúkbán-i-Bakhmí (IX²), 160.

*Kúla, 99, 121, 123, 128, 200, 237.

Kúla Khúrzád Khusraw Ispahí (XII²—XIII¹).

*Kulahwár (River), 191.

Kúlájj, 95.

Kúrankíj, or Kúrankíz, Abu Ja'far Ismá'il (XII²—XIII¹), 211, 230.

*Kurd-ábád, 182.

Kurds, 226, 228.

Kurdí-zád, brother of Padhusbán (XII²—XIII¹).

Kurdzáf, father of Padhusbán, 104.

- *Kúsán, 61, 98, 122.
- *Kúshk-i-Jáwalí, Palace of —, 245.
- Kustaj (old Persian script), 26.
- *Kúz, Castle of —, 99.
- *Kúzá, Castle of —, 142, 244, 246, 252, 256.
- *Lafúr (or Lapúr, S. of Bársurúsh, on the river Bábúl; Mel. 47, 151, 195), 15, 17, 27, 29, 95, 123, 142, 153, 164, 167, 241, 244, 252.
- “Lafúraj” (a kind of gold-embroidered garment), 118.
- *Lák-Abandán, 245.
- *Lamrásk, 28(?), 30, 207, 211.
- Lane-Poole, S. —, 58, 255.
- Langarcha-Pír (x¹), 217.
- *Lanká, 54.
- *Lankúr-khán, 173.
- *Lápích (River), 169.
- *Lár, 14, 68, 264.
- *Láriján, 15, 19, 29, 67, 74, 95, 121, 167, 183, 184, 190, 196, 203, 217, 222, 241, 244, 249, 250, 255.
- Lashkarí (x¹), 217.
- Lashkarsítán (IX¹), 164, 168, 174, 177, 207.
- *Latrá, 162.
- *Láwích (Mel. 208, 210, 211), 266.
- *Lawrá, 82, l. 8?
- Laylá b. Nuémán (x¹), 203, 205, 207.
- Layth-i-Fana (IX²), 170, 171, 176, 177, 181, 183, 184.
- Laythám b. Wardán of Daylam, 188, 189, 203.
- *Laythám, Bridge of —, 192.
- *Lícham, 168.
- *Líkání (Plain of —, near Amul), 194.
- *Líkash, 35, 61.
- *Lít-Kúh, 262.
- *Lúman Dun, 17.

- “Lunbur” (Tabarí word for “skirt”), 34.
- Lurs (tribesmen), 226.
- Abu'l-Ma'álí of Juwayn, 75.
- *Machúrí (or Bíjúrí), 28.
- “Macaronic verse”, 81 *et seqq.*
- *-Madá'in, 70, 93—96.
- Ma'dan -Ayádí (Khárijite leader, VII), 101.
- *-Madína, 11, 12, 71, 96, 111, 124, 144.
- *Madú, 29.
- Magians, 5, 150, 152, 153, 157, 158. See also *Gabrs, Zoroastrianism*.
- Máhabádí, Afḍalu'd-Dín — (xii²), 69.
- Maharája (xii²), 68.
- *Mahastiya (or Quhsibah), 28.
- Mahdí (Caliph, VIII²), 118—120, 124—126, 129, 131.
- Mahdí of Lafúr, Amir — (xi²), 241, 244.
- Mahdí b. Mukhayyas (ix²), 188, 192.
- Ibn -Mahdí -Mámtírí (ix), 50, 76.
- Máhiya-sar (legendary king), 37—39.
- *Máhiya-sarí Dízh, 38.
- Mahmúd b. Subuktigín (see p. 279: x²—xi¹), 227, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 238.
- Mahmúd (Seljúq, XII¹), 59, 61, 62.
- Máhú'i-i-Súrí (murderer of Yazdigird III; VII¹), 98.
- Majáni'l-Adab*, 7 *ad calc.*
- Majdu'd-Dawla Abú Tálib Rustam b. Fakhru'd-Dawla (x²), 227—230.
- Majdu'd-Dín Dárá, Ispahbad — (xii²), 249.
- Abu'l-Majd b. Mudhaffar b. Ibráhím, 79.
- Mákán b. Kákí (x¹), 41, 196, 208—219, 222, 225, 238.
- Maláhida. See *Assassins*.
- Maláhim* (apocalyptic writings), 180.
- *Malát (between Dínár-jári and Húsam), 14, 28.
- Málik b. Ashtar -Nakha'i (VII¹), 27, 98.

*Málika-Dasht (near Amul), 98, 200.

Málik Dínár (Súfí saint), 10.

Malik Muṣadhdham Sharafuḍ-Dawla Gustahm (XIV), 266.

Maliksháh (Seljúq, XI²), 240, 256.

“Malikuḍ-Jibál” (“King of the Mountains”), Title of —, 237.

*Mámtír (= the modern Bárfurúsh: see Mel. 30, 47, 57, etc.), 27—28 (etymology), 29, 56, 76, 123, 165, 167, 171, 172, 196, 210, 221.

*Mámwand, 29.

-Maḍmún (Caliph, IX¹), 36, 43, 53, 74, 87, 132, 136, 142—145, 147—152.

*Mánahar (in Rúyán), 19.

*Mandúr (near Nátíl), 40.

Mangú Qáán (XIII²), 258, 259.

Manhájuḍ-Maqál (by -Astarábádí), 11, 12 *ad calc.*, 271, 273.

Máníwand, Zar-míwand —, son of the Ustundár Hazárasp, 251 (XII²).

Mánk-dím, Sayyid Abú Jaṣar — (X¹), 212, 215. See also *Abú Jaṣar, Sayyid* —.

Mankli-Tukuz (Atábek; XII²), 253—254.

*Mankúl, 255.

-Manṣúr (Caliph, VIII²), 10, 53, 111, 112, 117—119, 124.

*Manṣúr-kúh, Castle of —, 243.

Manṣúr [b.] -Mahdí (VIII²), 109.

Manṣúr I b. Núh -Sámáni (X²), 224.

Manṣúr b. Qábús (= Minúchihr b. Qábús, *q. v.*), 229, n. 2 *ad calc.*

Manṣúr Qarátakín (governor of Merv for Sámánids; X¹), 223. See *Qarátakin*.

Manṣúr of Tarícha (X¹), 195.

Manṣúr b. Yaḥyá (minister of Sulaymán b. ‘Abdulláh, IX²), 157.

Abú Manṣúr Mahdí b. Mukhayyas (IX²), 188, 192.

Abú Manṣúr. See *-Thaṣálibi*.

*Manṣúr-kúh, 64.

*Maqṣúra, 59.

*Marágha, 252.

*Marán-Dih (near Amul), 269.

*Maraz, 200.

“Mardán-kuláh” (= M. b. Tamím, IX²), 182.

Mardáwij b. Ziyár, Abuḍ-Hajjáj — (X¹), 214, 216, 217.

Mardáwij, Tájúḍ-Mulúk — (XII¹), 246.

Máriqiyya (a name of the Khárijite sect), 102.

Mars, Planet — propitious to Turks, 226.

Marwán, House of —, 254, l. 3. See *Umayyads*.

Marwán II, called “the Ass” (VIII¹), 110, 111.

Marwán b. Abí Hafṣa (IX²), 159, l. 5.

Marzubán, Farshwád — Khurshíd (VIII²), 113, 149.

Marzubán, House of —, 95.

Marzubán b. Rustam b. Sharwín Parím (author of *Marzubán-náme*), 86.

*Mashhad, 55.

*Mashhad ‘Alí (Tomb of ‘Alí at Kúfa), 158.

*Mashhad-i-Sar, 58.

Masíh (Christ), 85, l. 6, 91, l. 16.

*Masjid-i-Sálár (Amul), 76, 77.

*Masla Zarrín Kúl, 123.

Mas-mughán Walásh (VII²), 101, 126.

Mas-mughán-i-Wandá-ummíd (IX²), 164, 165, 168, 170—174, 176, 178, 184.

Masqala b. Hubayra -Shaybání (VII²), 100, 107.

Masrúr (executioner of Hárún -Rashíd, VIII²), 135.

Mastamard, Díwarwaz — (X²), 87—89.

Masṣúd, Amir — Sarbadál (XIV¹), 264—267.

Masṣúd b. Maḥmúd b. Subuktigín (XI¹), 235.

Masṣúd b. Muḥammad (Seljúq; XII¹), 59, 66, 246.

-Masṣúdí (the historian, X¹), 26 *ad calc.*

-Masṣúdí (postal officer in reign of Harún -Rashíd; VIII²), 138.

*Máta (in Amul), 25.

Mawákhún (or Hawákhún, *q. v.*), Amír 'Alí — (XIV¹), 265.

*Má wará'u'n-Nahr (Transoxiana), 105.

*Máwjakúh, 15.

"Mawlá Amír'l-Mú'minín" (title of — offered to Qárin b. Wandád Hurmazd, *q. v.*; IX¹), 146.

*Mayándarúd (Mel., 238), 101, 116, 126.

*Maydán-i-Rúdbár (Amul), 262.

*Maydán-i-Tápán, 61.

*Mázandarán, 1, 4, 14, 65, 70, 104, 238, 241, 248, 249, 253, 256, 259, 261—263, 265, 266, 268, 269.

Mazdak (VI¹), 93.

Mázyár-i-Justán (X¹), 221.

Mázyár-i-Qárin (IX¹), 17, 26, 28, 29, 42, 43, 80, 132, 146—157.

Mázyár-i-Qárin-i-Shahriyár (IX²), 173, 174, 178, 237.

*Mecca, 34, 41, 58, 70, 71, 73, 74, 111.

Melgunof, 33, 43, 46.

*Merv, 20, 66, 81, 110, 157, 223, 235.

Mihr-Fírúz, 22—24.

Mihraján, Festival of —, 176.

*Mihrawán, 28, 56, 61, 122, 167, 172, 174, 191.

*Mihríñ, Castle of —, 64.

Mihr-mardán b. Suhráb (IX²), 237.

Mihrúya, (VIII²), 124, 140—141.

Mikhráq, Şálih [b.] — (Khárijite leader, VII²), 101.

Mílád (legendary hero), 28.

Minúchihr (legendary king of Persia), 14, 17, 18—20, 34, 60.

Minúchihr (vassal of the Ispahbad Sháh Ghází Rustam; XII¹), 247.

Minúchihr b. Qábús b. Washmgír, Falaku'l-Ma'álí — (XI¹), 227, 230—235.

Abú Miráh (= Muhammad b. Khálid; IX²), 171.

Mirdás (Khárijite, VII²), 104.

*Mírwand-ábád, 244.

*Mishkawá, 209.

Miskín b. Ghazál -Shámi (VIII²), 123.

Mongols, 257, 258, 261—263, 268.

Mu'áwiya (Umayyad Caliph, VII²), 48, 100, 110.

-Mu'ayyad bi'lláh b. -Mutawakkil (IX²), 80.

-Mu'ayyad bi'lláh, Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn — (X²), 50, 54.

Mu'ayyid-Áyi Ába (XI²), 61.

Mu'ayyidi, Sháhnáma of —, 18.

Mu'ayyidu'd-Dawla (Buwayhid, X²), 225, 226.

Mubárák (Arabicized form of Anbárák, VIII²), 26.

-Mubarrad, -Kámil of —, 103.

Mudhaffar b. Ibráhím, Abú Sa'íd — (X²), 78.

Mudhaffar b. Isma'il, Abu'l-Faraj — (X²), 79.

[As these two are described as brothers, it is evident that we must either read Ibráhím or Isma'il in both cases].

Mudhaffar, Ra'ís — (IX²), 240.

Abu'l-Mudhaffar (X¹), 217.

Mudhaffarí, Abú 'Alí b. Aḥmad b. Muhammad — (X¹), 218.

Mudhaffarí -Khurásáni (poet; XII), 65.

-Mufid, Imám — Abú Ṭalib (IX²), 47.

Muflíh (IX²), 179—180.

Muhallab b. Abí Şufra (VIII¹), 104.

-Muḥázim.

Muhammad (the Prophet), 7, 47, 52, 53, 75, 96, 109, 110, 137, 144, 159, 175, 242.

M. b. 'Abbás (IX²), 163, 165, 172.

M. b. 'Abbás -Salmí (VIII²), 123.

M. b. 'Abd -'Azíz (governor of Rúyán; IX²), 165, 201.

M. b. 'Abd -Karím (IX²), 162, 163.

M. b. 'Abdu'lláh (governor of Jábáráñ; VIII²), 123.

M. b. 'Al. (ambassador of -Mu'tásim to Mázyár; IX¹), 152.

M. b. 'Al., Qádí — (IX²), 172.

*Máta (in Amul), 25.

Mawákhún (or Hawákhún, *q. v.*), Amír 'Alí — (XIV¹), 265.

*Má wará'u'n-Nahr (Transoxiana), 105.

*Máwjakúh, 15.

"Mawlá Amírl-Mú'minín" (title of — offered to Qárin b. Wandád Hurmazd, *q. v.*; IX¹), 146.

*Mayándarúd (Mel., 238), 101, 116, 126.

*Maydán-i-Rúdbár (Amul), 262.

*Maydán-i-Tápán, 61.

*Mázandarán, 1, 4, 14, 65, 70, 104, 238, 241, 248, 249, 253, 256, 259, 261—263, 265, 266, 268, 269.

Mazdak (VI¹), 93.

Mázyár-i-Justán (X¹), 221.

Mázyár-i-Qárin (IX¹), 17, 26, 28, 29, 42, 43, 80, 132, 146—157.

Mázyár-i-Qárin-i-Shahriyár (IX²), 173, 174, 178, 237.

*Mecca, 34, 41, 58, 70, 71, 73, 74, 111.

Melgunof, 33, 43, 46.

*Merv, 20, 66, 81, 110, 157, 223, 235.

Mihr-Fírúz, 22—24.

Mihraján, Festival of —, 176.

*Mihrawán, 28, 56, 61, 122, 167, 172, 174, 191.

*Míhrín, Castle of —, 64.

Mihr-mardán b. Suhráb (IX²), 237.

Mihrúya, (VIII²), 124, 140—141.

Mikhráq, Sálih [b.] — (Khárijite leader, VII²), 101.

Mílád (legendary hero), 28.

Minúchihr (legendary king of Persia), 14, 17, 18—20, 34, 60.

Minúchihr (vassal of the Ispahbad Sháh Ghází Rustam; XII¹), 247.

Minúchihr b. Qábús b. Washmgír, Falaku'l-Ma'álí — (XI¹), 227, 230—235.

Abú Miráh (= Muhammad b. Khálid; IX²), 171.

Mirdás (Khárijite, VII²), 104.

*Mírwand-ábád, 244.

*Mishkawá, 209.

Miskín b. Ghazál -Shámí (VIII²), 123.

Mongols, 257, 258, 261—263, 268.

Mu'áwiya (Umayyad Caliph, VII²), 48, 100, 110.

-Mu'ayyad bílláh b. -Mutawakkil (IX²), 80.

-Mu'ayyad bílláh, Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn — (X²), 50, 54.

Mu'ayyid-Ayi Ába (XI²), 61.

Mu'ayyidí, Sháhnáma of —, 18.

Mu'ayyidu'd-Dawla (Buwayhid, X²), 225, 226.

Mubárik (Arabicized form of Anbárak, VIII²), 26.

-Mubarrad, -Kámil of —, 103.

Mudhaffar b. Ibráhím, Abú Sa'íd — (X²), 78.

Mudhaffar b. Isma'il, Abu'l-Faraj — (X²), 79.

[As these two are described as brothers, it is evident that we must either read Ibráhím or Isma'il in both cases].

Mudhaffar, Ra'ís — (IX²), 240.

Abu'l-Mudhaffar (X¹), 217.

Mudhaffári, Abú 'Alí b. Ahmad b. Muhammád — (X¹), 218.

Mudhaffári -Khurásáni (poet; XII), 65.

-Mu'síd, Imám — Abú Ṭalib (IX²), 47.

Muflíh (IX²), 179—180.

Muhallab b. Abí Šufra (VIII¹), 104.

-Muházim.

Muhammad (the Prophet), 7, 47, 52, 53, 75, 96, 109, 110, 137, 144, 159, 175, 242.

M. b. 'Abbás (IX²), 163, 165, 172.

M. b. 'Abbás -Salmí (VIII²), 123.

M. b. 'Abd -'Azíz (governor of Rúyán; IX²), 165, 201.

M. b. 'Abd -Karím (IX²), 162, 163.

M. b. 'Abdu'lláh (governor of Jábárán, VIII²), 123.

M. b. 'Al. (ambassador of -Mu'tásim to Mázayár; IX¹), 152.

M. b. 'Al., Qádí — (IX²), 172.

M. b. ^cAl. -Bal'ámi, Abu'l-Faḍl —, wazír of Aḥmad b. Isma'íl -Sámání (x¹), 199, 200.

M. b. ^cAl. b. Táhir (IX), 29, 157, 161, 169, 181.

M. b. ^cAbd -Razzáq (x²), 223, 224.

M. b. ^cAfál (VIII²), 123.

M. b. Aḥmad b. -Ḥasan, Sayyid Abú 'Alí — (x¹), 209—211.

M. b. A. -Khurásáni (IX²), 182.

M. b. A. -Náṣir (x¹), 218.

M. b. A. Wandawayh (IX²), 190.

M., ^cAlá'u'd-Dín — (wazír of Tughá-Tímúr, XIV¹), 264.

M. -Alawí (IX²), 163, 164.

M. b. ^cA. -Shá'ir, 49. See *Uṭrúsh*.

M. b. Ardashír, Shamsu'l-Mulük — (XIII), 258, 268.

M. Aws (IX²), 157, 158, 162—165, 168.

M. -Báqir, Imám — (VIII¹), 12.

M. b. -Dabírí (x¹), 220.

M. b. Faḍl (IX¹), 141.

M. b. Faḍl (of Láriján; IX²), 171.

M. b. -Faqíh (x¹), 195.

M. -Fáris (father of Sayyid Abú Tálib -Thá'ir), 58.

M. -Ghazálí (XI), 75, 1. 18.

M. b. -Ḥajar (ambassador of Aḥmad b. Isma'íl -Sámání; x¹), 198.

M. b. Ḥamza, Sayyid — (IX²), 164, 167, 172.

M. b. -Hanafíyya. See *Ibnu'l-Hanafíyya*.

M. b. Hárún (governor of Jálús, IX²), 190—197.

M. b. Ḥasán b. Isfandiyár. See *Ibn Isfandiyár*.

M. b. Ḥ. (Ispahbad of Kalár; x¹), 200.

M. b. Ḥ., Kiya —, entitled -Qá'ím bi-amrílláh; XIII), 259.

M. b. Ibr. (general of -Mu'taṣim; IX), 154, 157.

M. b. Ibr. b. ^cA. b. ^cAbdu'r-Rahmán b. -Qásim b. Ḥ. b. Zayd b. Ḥ. b. ^cA. b. Abí Tálib (IX²), 162, 163, 165, 167, 174, 177, 178, 183, 185.

M. b. Ibr. Símjúr (x²), 224—225.

M. b. Ikhshíd (IX²), 164.

M. b. Ildigiz (or Ilduguz; XII²), 67, 252 *ad. calc.*

M. b. Ilísa^c (x¹), 199.

M. b. ^cÍsá (IX²), 157; — b. ^cAbdu'l-Ḥamíd (IX²), 170.

M. b. Isma'íl (IX²), 171.

M. Khwárazmsháh, Jalálu'd-Dín — (XIII¹), 59, 256, 257.

M. b. Jarír b. Rustám -Sarawí (IX), 79; cf. 274.

M. -Juwayní (XI), 75, 1. 18.

M. b. Kathír (IX²), 172.

M. b. Khalid (VIII²—IX¹), 28, 147.

M. b. Khálid, Abú Miráh — (IX²), 171.

M. Kiyá b. Afrásiyáb (XIV¹), 269.

M. b. Mahdí b. Nírak (IX²), 185.

M. b. Maliksháh (XII¹), 59, 240—244.

M. b. Abí Mansúr (IX²), 170.

M. b. Míkál (IX²), 167.

M. b. Mughíra of Rúyán (x¹), 195.

M. b. M. -Astarábádí Bári^c, 79. "According to the *Dum-yatū'l-Qasr*, Add. 9994, ff. 83a and 79a", writes Mr. A. G. Ellis, "Abú Ḥanífa -Astarábádí and Bári^c-i-Jurjáni are two distinct persons."

M. b. Músá b. Abdu'r-Rahmán (IX²), 157.

M. b. Músá b. Ḥafs (IX), 73, 148, 150—152.

M. b. Musáfír (x¹), 206.

M. b. Ná'ib (VIII²), 123.

M. b. -Náṣir -Kabír (IX²), 49.

M., Nidhám — (VI), 65.

M. b. Núḥ (IX²), 174, 176, 177.

M. b. Qays, Abu'l-A'azz — (IX²), 172.

M. -Qumí, Ibnu'l-^cAmíd — (x¹), 219.

M. -Riḍá b. M. b. Zayd, Sayyid — (x¹), 194.

M. b. Rustam b. Wandá-ummíd (IX²), 163, 170, 171.

M. b. Sa'íd (IX¹), 151.

M. b. Ṣa'lük (x¹), 199, 200, 204, 214.

M. b. Shahriyár (X¹), 206.
 M. b. -Sírrí (X¹), 195.
 M. b. Abí Šurra -Ju'fí (VIII¹), 106.
 M. b. Táhir (IX²), 179.
 M. b. Tamím (IX²), 182.
 M. Taqí (or Jawád), Imám — (IX), 144.
 M. b. Wahrí (X), 223.
 M. b. Wahsúdán (IX²), 193, 230.
 M. b. -Walíd (IX²), 172.
 M. b. Yaḥyá b. Khálid -Barmakí (VIII²—IX¹), 133.
 M. -Yazdádí, Abu'l-Hasan —. See -Yazdádí.
 M. b. Yazíd, 46.
 M., brother of Zarrín-Kamar (XII¹), 59.
 M. b. Zayd, Abu 'Abdu'lláh — (called *ad-Dá'i ilá'l-Haqq*, or *ad-Dá'i'l-Kabír*, *q. v.*; IX¹), 47, 48, 158, 182, 183, 185—195, 238.
 M. b. Zubayda, called -*Makhlúc* („the Deposed; VIII²—IX¹).
 See -Amin.
 Abú M. H. b. 'A. See -Násir -Kabír.
 Abú M. H. b. Qásim (X¹), 201.
 Abú M. H. b. Zayd b. M. b. Zayd (X¹), 194.
 Abú M. b. Mihrán (XI¹), 233.
 Muḥarram observed, 158.
 Muḥím (Sámánid governor, X¹), 200.
 Mu'ínud-Dín Ḥus. Kart (XIV¹), 264.
 Mu'íní, Ibráhím — (Ṭabarí poet), 86.
 Mu'izzu[? 'Izzu]d-Dawla, Bakhtiyár — (X²), 91, 223.
 Muktafí ('Alí) b. -Mu'taḍid (Caliph; X¹), 191.
 Abu'l-Mulúk -Arba'ín b. 'Abdu'lláh b. -'Abbás (VII), 112.
 Abu'l-Mulúk, Ispahbad Shahriyár b. Kíñkhwár b. Rustam b. Dárá b. Shahriyár (XIII¹), 256.
 Mú'mín, Amír — (XIV¹), 262, 268.
 Múni (IX), 156.
Muntaha'l-Maqál (by M. b. Isma'il -Há'iri), 11, 12, 271.

Muntahi, Sayyid — (XII¹), 242.
 -Muntaşir (Caliph, IX²), 158, 161.
 -Muntaşir, Ibráhím — -Sámání (X²), 227, 228.
 Ibn -Muqaffá^c (VIII²), 1, 4—6.
 *Múqán, 27, 33, 60.
 Muqátil-i-Daylamí (IX²), 164, 195.
 Abú Muqátil -Darír (poet; IX), 175.
 -Muqtadir (Caliph; X¹), 201, 206, 215.
 Murád b. Muslim (VIII²), 131.
 -Múriyání, Abú Ayyúb (wazír of -Manṣúr; VIII²), 113.
 Murtadá Káshání, Sayyid — (XII²), 69, 103.
 Músá b. 'Al. b. H. b. H. b. 'A. b. Abí Tálib (VIII²), 124, 125.
 Músá -Alawí (XII²), 255.
 Músá b. Bughá (IX²), 179, 180.
 Músá -Hádí (Caliph; VIII²), 131, 132.
 Músá b. Ḥafs (IX), 148.
 Músá Hájib (X²), 229.
 Músá b. 'Isá (VIII²), 124.
 Músá b. 'Isá -Sarwí (or -Sarawí), 36.
 Músá b. Ja'far -Kádhim, Imám — (VIII²), 124, 125.
 Músá b. -Katíb (IX²), 172.
 Músá b. Yaḥyá b. Khálid -Barmakí (VIII²—IX¹), 133.
 Muslim b. -Walíd (VIII²—IX¹), 45.
 Abú Músá b. Bahrám (X¹), 216—218.
 Abú Músá Hárún Isfáhdúst (X¹), 206.
 Muṣ'ab b. -Zubayr (VII²), 48, 49.
 *Muṣallá ("the Oratory", at Amul), 203, 205, 219, 220.
 -Musawwida. See 'Abbás, *House of* —.
 *Mushkú (two stages from Ray), 218.
 Mushkhwásh (a kind of sweet rushes), 41.
 Muslim b. Khálid (VIII²), 123.
 Abú Muslim (VIII), 110—113, 117—118.
 Muslim, Abú 'Alí — (X²), 224.

- Musta'ín (Caliph; IX²), 161.
- Mustansír (Fátimid Caliph; XI), 236.
- Mustarshid (Caliph; XII¹), 59.
- Musta'sím (last 'Abbásid Caliph; XIII), 259.
- Mu'tađid bîlláh (Caliph; IX²), 191, 196.
- Mutanabbí (poet, X), 87, 90.
- Mu'taşím (Caliph; IX¹), 80, 152—158, 237.
- Mutawakkil (Caliph; IX), 48, 80, 108, 155, 158—161.
- Mu'tazilites, 232.
- Mu'tazz (Caliph; IX²), 179, 180.
- *Muthanná b. -Hájjáj (VIII²), 120, 123, 132.
- *Muthla, 28.
- Mu'trif (X¹), 212, 217.
- *Múz (mountain), 14.
- Muzáhím (VIII¹), 12.
- Nabaťí, Hayyán — (VIII¹), 107.
- Náfi' (cousin and deputy-governor of Khalífa b. Sa'íd, IX¹), 140.
- Nahapets (Nahábidha), 106, 108, 113, 114.
- *Naháwand, 93.
- *Nahrawála, 93.
- *Nahruwán, Battle of — (VII), 102, 104.
- Na'ím b. Házim (IX¹), 142.
- Na'ím (chamberlain of Qábús; XI¹), 232.
- Abú Na'ím, Shaykh —, 80.
 - Najáshí, 11, 12, 271.
- Banú Nájiya, 100.
 - Najmu'd-Dawla Qárin b. Shahriyár b. Qárin (XI²), 241—245.
- Nakha'í, Málík [b.] -Ashtar — (VII¹), 27, 98.
- *Namár, 28.
- Námdárán (apparently a mistake for Bámdádán), 93.
- *Námina, 56, l. 21, 186.
- Naqíb, Abú M. -H. b. A. b. M. b. Zayd —, 49.

- *Nárdín, 233.
- Náriman (legendary hero of Persia), 16.
- Nársí b. Jámásp (V²), 97.
- *Nasá (or Nisá, in Khurásán), 123, 223.
- “Násibí” (a term of disparagement applied to the Sunnís by their opponents the “Ráfiđís”, or Shí'ites), 52, 158.
- Nášíhí, Ibráhím b. M. —, 76.
- Nášir (X¹), 217.
- *Nášir-ábád, 198.
- Nášir -Kabír, Abú M. H. b. 'A. b. H. b. 'A. b. 'Amr b. 'A. Zaynu'l-Abidín — (X¹), 49, 57, 58, 89, 178, 195, 196, 199—204, 210, 222, 238.
- Nášir li-Díni'lláh (Caliph; XII²), 79.
- Naşru'd-Dawla, Ispahbad Dárá b. Bahman — (XII²), 249.
- Naşru'd-Dawla Shahriyár b. Taju'd-Dawla Yazdigírd (XIV¹), 261—263.
- Naşru'd-Dawla Shamsu'l-Mulük (XIII¹), 257.
- Naşru'd-Dín, M. Abú Tawba, called *Bi-Tawba* (minister of Sinjar; XII¹), 80.
- Naşru'd-Dín Rúz-Bihán (XII²), 251.
- Naşru'd-Dín -Túsí (XIII¹), 259.
- Naşru'l-Mulk (brother of Sharafu'l-Mulk Hásan; XII²), 250.
- Naşr b. Ahmád b. Isma'il -Sámání (X), 201, 213, 214, 218, 220.
- Naşr b. -H. b. Firúzán (X²), 226, 228—231.
- Naşr b. 'Imráñ (VIII²), 123.
- Naşr b. Núh -Sámání (IX²), 190.
- Naşr b. Wabrá (of Syria; IX²), 167.
- Abú Naşr (governor of Shahriyár-Kúh; X¹), 213, 214.
- Abú Naşr -Tábarí (IX²), 192.
- Abú Naşr -'Utbí (author of *-Ta'rikhu'l-Yamíni*, q. v.; XI¹), 92 *ad calc.*
- Nasrín b. Sunqur (VIII²), 123.
- Nassába, Sayyid Dhahíru'd-Dín — of Gurgán, 57.

*Nátil, 40, 123, 163, 182, 192, 212, 251.

-Nátiq-bi'l-Haqq, Sayyid Abú Tálib Yahyá — (X²—XI¹), 50, 54, 55.

Nátís the Byzantine, lord of 'Amúriya (IX¹), 156.

-Nawádir, Kitábu'n- — (by -Aşma^č; VIII²), 159.

-Nawfalí, 134.

*Nawrúzábád, 165, 166.

Nidhámí-i-'Arúdž-i-Samarqandí (XI²), 1, 238. See also *Cháhár Maqála*.

Nidhámú'd-Dín -Sam'ání (XIII¹), 109.

Nidhámú'l-Mulk (XI), 75, 91, 93, 240.

*Nigáristán (near Nátil), 40.

Níkáma, 'Alí b. — (X), 222.

Níki-náma (by the Ispahbad Marzubán b. Rustam), 86.

*Nírús, 163.

*Nisá (or Nasá, in Khurásán), 123, 223. See also *Nasá*.

*Níshápúr, 90, 99, 123, 181, 185, 186, 190—192, 205, 216, 217, 222—224, 226, 227, 234.

*Níshápúriyya, 123.

*Nišíbín, 33.

Nöldeke, Professor Th. —, 1, 7, 46, 238.

Ibn Nubáta -Sa'dí (poet), 90.

Núdhar (legendary hero of Persia), 16, 17.

Núh (Noah), 63, 1, 21.

Núh (? b. Asad b. Sámán; IX¹), 190.

Núh b. Naṣr -Sámání (Núh I; X), 221—224.

Núh b. Mansúr -Sámání (Núh II; X²), 91, 226.

Núh b. -Sásif (? VIII²), 122.

-Nukhayla, Yawmu'n- —, 104, 1, 1.

Nu'mán (IX²), 188.

*Núr, 266.

Núru'd-Dín Ṣabbágh (XII²), 68.

Núshírwán (Kisrá, the Sásánian king; VI), 7, 8, 20, 3², 36, 37, 85, 93—95.

Núshírwán b. Minúchihr b. Qábús (XI¹), 5.

Nuṣratu'd-Dín (XII¹), 60, 64. See also *Rustam b. 'Alí b. Shahriyár*.

Omayyads. See *Umayyads*.

Ouseley's *Travels*, 1.

*Oxus, 91, 93, 94.

Pádhúsbán, Ispahbad — 46, 73, 98.

Pádhúsbán, Ustundár — (IX¹), 237.

Padhúsbán-i-Kurdzád, Ispahbad of Lafúr (IX²), 164, 167—171, 179, 181, 187.

Pahlawán 'Abdu'r-Razzáq "Sar-ba-dár" (XIII²), 264.

*Pá'íza-(or Páníra-)Kúh, 40.

*Páliz, 82, 1, 8.

*Páníra-(or Pá'íza-)Kúh, 40.

*Panjáh-hazár, 99, 116, 122, 186, 199, 237.

*Parícha, 123, 1, 2.

*Parím, 99, 128. See *Farím*.

*Párs (or Fárs), 4, 18, 217, 224, 225.

Parwíz, Khusraw — (Sásánian king; VII¹), 35, 36, 60, 236.

Parwíz (of Láriján; IX²), 183, 196.

Pashang (son of the legendary Afrásiyáb), 18.

*Patashkhwár, 14 *ad calc.* See also *Farshwádgar*.

*Pá-yi-Dasht, 24, 123, 163, 164, 168, 203.

Philosopher's Stone, 36.

Pigeons, Carrier —, 155.

Pírúz-i-Yazdigird (Sásánian king, V²), 7.

Pírúz Mihrján, *Book of* —, 36.

Pírúza, Ustád 'Alí — (poet, X), 87, 88.

Píshín Khátún (XIII), 264.

*Pútam, 165.

Qábúsán, 'Abbás b. — (X¹), 212.

Qábús b. Washmgír (X²—XI¹), 20, 36, 76, 78, 86, 89, 90, 92, 225—234, 238, 257.
Qábús-náma (by Kay-Ká'ús b. Iskandar b. Qábús; XI²), 236.
 Qachghuz, Amír — (XI²), 243.
 -Qádir bi'lláh (Caliph; X²—XI¹), 233.
 *Qádisiyya, Battle of — (VII¹), 96.
 Ibn Qaḥṭaba, 'Abdu'lláh — (VIII²), 132.
 -Qá'im bi-amri'lláh (Caliph; XI), 235.
 -Qá'im bi-amri'lláh (title given by his followers to Kiyá M. b. -H., *q. v.*; XIII), 259.
 *Qá'in, 258.
 *Qal'a Kamín, 264.
 Qánún (of Avicenna), 86.
Qará'inu Shamsí'l Ma'áli (by -Yazdádi), 92.
 Qarája (the cup-bearer; XII), 246.
 *Qará-Kaláta, 265.
 Qarátakín the Turk (X¹), 206, 215, 221, 223 (Manṣúr —).
 Qará-Tughán (VIII²), 123.
 Qárín son of Súkhrá (V²), ancestor of the *Qárinwands*, or *House*, or *Sons of Qárín*, *q. v.*, 94, 95.
 Qárín, Ālu — ("House of —"), Banú — ("Sons of —"), 63, l. 21; 64, l. 18; 153, l. 11.
 Qárín (general of the Ispahbad Khurshíd; VIII²) 116.
 Qárín b. Garshásf (XII¹), 246.
 Qárín-i-Gáwa (legendary), 18, 19.
 Qárín, Ruknu'd-Dawla — (XII²), 255.
 Qárín b. Shahriyár, Ispahbad — (IX²), 173.
 Qárín b. Shahriyár b. Qárín, Najmu'd-Dawla — (XII¹), 241, 242.
 Qárín b. Shahriyár b. Sharwín, Ispahbad — of House of Báwand, called "Abu'l-Mulúk" (IX), 147, 148, 157, 166, 168, 169, 171, 173, 176, 178, 195, 237.
 Qárín b. Surkháb (of the House of Báwand; XI²), 239.

Qárín b. Wandád-Hurmázd (VIII²—IX¹), 129, 143, 145—147, 237.
 *Qárín-ábád, 116.
 *Qárín, Kúh-i- —, 16, 99.
 *Qárín-Kúh, 237.
 Qárinwands, 91, 95, 237, 241.
 Qásim b. 'Alí b. H. b. Zayd, Sayyid (IX²), 174, 178, 179, 185.
 Qásim b. Muslim -Khurásáni (IX²), 181.
 Qásim, Sayyid — (IX²), 238.
 Abu'l-Qásim (general of Washmgír, X¹), 217.
 Abu'l-Qásim 'Abdu'l-'Azíz b. Yúsuf, 90.
 Abu'l-Qásim -Bayyá'i, Qádi'l-qudát, 77.
 Abu'l-Qásim Hárún b. Muḥammad (IX¹), 153.
 Abu'l-Qásim -H. b. Hamza -'Alawí (XI¹), 55.
 Abu'l-Qásim b. H. -Sha'rání (X¹), 221.
 Abu'l-Qásim Ja'dí (XI¹), 234.
 Abu'l-Qásim Ja'far b. -H. b. 'A. -Násir (X¹), 201, 203—210.
 Abu'l-Qásim -Kátib -Balkhí (IX²), 47.
 Abu'l-Qásim b. Símjúr (X²), 227, 231.
 *Qasráñ, 14, 167, 264.
 *Qaṣr-i-Dádaqán (between Tamnísha and Sári), 114.
 *Qaṣr-i-Tús (near Sári), 35.
 Qaṣṣáb, Shaykh Abu'l-'Abbás —, 80.
 -Qaṭarí [b. -Fujá'at -Máziní], the Khárijite (VII²), 101, 102, 104.
 *Qaṭarí-Kaláda, 104.
 *Qaṭífa, 112.
 Qatírmish (XII¹), 60.
 *Qaydúm, 152.
 *Qazwín, 68, 69, 178, 179, 191, 216, 217, 220, 240, 249.
 "Qazz-ágand" (quilted armour), 145.
 Qiwám 'Alí (XII²), 254.
 Qiwám Farámarz (XII), 65.

Qiwámu'd-Dín, Amír Sayyid — (XIV), 269.
 Qizil Arslán (XII²), 67, 68, 72, 73, 254.
 Qubád-i-Pírúz (Sásánian king; v²), 7, 92—96.
 Qubád-i-Káwa (or Gáwa, legendary hero of Persia), 18.
 *Quhistán, 216, 231.
 *Quhsibah (reading uncertain), 28.
 Qúhyár (VIII¹), 127.
 Quhyár-i-Qárin (brother of Mázyár; IX), 151.
 *Qulzum, Sea of — (= Caspian Sea), 35.
 *Qum, 68, 77, 215, 221.
 *Qúmis (or Qúmish), 14, 28, 178, 179, 182, 185, 216, 226, 229, 230, 233, 238, 264.
 Qumrí, Siráju'd-Dín — (poet; XIII), 258.
 Qur'án, 5, 10, 11, 13, 75, 80, 102, 108.
 Quraysh (man; IX²), 157.
 Quraysh (tribe), 70, 159.
 *Qúr-shírad, 251. It is probably identical with *Gúr-shírad*, *q. v.*
 Qutayba (VIII¹), 105.
 Ibn Qutayba, 'Abdu'lláh — (IX²), 32.
 Quṭb-i-Chálúsí (XII), 80.
 Quṭb-i-Rúyáni (Tabarí poet; XIII), 259.
 Quṭbu'd-Dín Khán (XII²), 254.
 Qutham b. -'Abbás (VII), 98, 111.
 Qutlugh Sháh, Amír — (XIV¹), 262, 268.
 Quṭquṭí of Sári (X¹), 195.
 Rabí^c b. 'Urwán (VIII²), 122.
 Raḍí (X¹), 210.
 Raḍí, Amír — -Sámání (X²), 226, 227, 234.
 -Raḍí, -Sharíf — (X²—XI¹), 109.
 Ráfi^c b. Harthama (IX²), 188—193, 238.
 Ráfiḍí (poet; XI), 256.
 "Ráfiḍí" (the name given to the Shi'ites by their opponents the Sunnis or "Násibís"), 52 *ad calc.*

Ra'ís Mudhaffar (XI²), 240.
 Abú Rakáz (minstrel; VIII²), 134, 135.
 Ramja Harúya (VIII²), 113—115, 121.
 *Rán-Hál, 29.
 *Rán-Kúh, 123.
 -Raqqáshí, İHuṣayn b. Mundhir —, 32.
 Rashámúj-i-Shír-Mardán (X¹), 209—211, 213, 229.
 Rashíd b. 'Abdu'lláh, Abu'l-Faraj — (X²—XI¹), 86.
 Rashídu'd-Dín Waṭwáṭ (poet; XII), 62—65.
 -Rásibí, 'Abdu'lláh b. Wahb — (Khárijite; VII²), 102.
 *Rawá, 123.
 -Ráwandí, Abu'l-Fadl — (XII²), 69.
 -Ráwandí, Najmu'd-Dín Abú Bakr M. (XIII), 252 *ad calc.*
 *Ray, 3, 14, 18, 19, 28, 34, 43, 44, 61, 62, 67, 68, 70, 76, 82, 94, 95, 98, 104, 112, 117, 118, 119, 120, 126, 128, 140—143, 149, 151, 162, 165, 178, 179, 182—184, 189—191, 197—200, 204, 206, 214—218, 220, 223—227, 229, 231, 235, 236, 245, 250, 253, 255.
 *Ribáṭ-i-Hafs, 185, 188.
 -Ríḍá, Imám 'Alí — (IX¹), 53, 55, 79, 144.
 Abú Ríḍá İHus. b. M. Abu'l-'Alawí -Mámtírí (XII²—XIII¹), 257.
 Rieu, Professor —, 1.
Risálatu'l-Hunád fi ijábatí da'wati Dhawí'l-İnád (by Sayyid Bahá'u'd-Dín -Hasan b. -Mahdi -Mámtírí; XII²), 68.
 "Romans", 236. See *Byzantines*.
 *Rúdbár, 41, 122.
 *Rúdbár-Bálú, 266.
 *Rúdbár, Maydán-i- —, 262.
 *Rúdbár-i-Núr, 266.
 *Rúdbár-Pích, 255.
 *Rúdbár-Úz, 266.
 *Rúbast, 28.
 *Rúd-bast, 82, l. 8; 152.
 Rúh b. Hátím b. Qayṣar b. Muḥallab (VIII²), 124, 129.

*Rúhín, Castle of —, 246.

Ruknu'd-Dawla Ḥasan b. Buwayh (*q. v.*; x), 223—225, 238.

Ruknu'd-Dawla Qárin (xii—xiii¹), 255—256.

Ruknu'd-Dawla Sháh Kay-Khusraw b. Tájúd-Dawla Yazdigird (xiv¹), 262, 268.

Ruknu'd-Dín شیخوں (Shaykhul-Islám; xii²), 69.

Ruknu'd-Dín Khúrsháh (xiii¹), 259.

Ruknu'd-Dín, Sayyid — of Sári (xiii), 57.

*Rúm, 35.

Russians, 199.

Rustam b. 'Alí, Sháh-i-Gházi — (xii¹), 59, 90, 245, 246, 249, 250.

Rustam b. Ardashír b. Ḥasan b. Rustam (ruler of Tabaristán; xiii¹), 3.

Rustam Fakhru'd-Dawla (xi¹), 228. See *Majdu'd-Dawla Abú Tálib*.

Rustam, Fakhru'l-Mulük — (xii²), 250, 252?

Rustam-i-Farrukhzád (general in command of Persian army at battle of Qádisiyya), 96.

Rustam-i-Marzubán (xi¹), 228, 230, 231, 239.

Rustam-i-Qárin, Ispahbad — (ix²), 184—187, 189, 190, 192, 193, 198.

Rustam b. Shahriyár, Ispahbad Nuṣratu'd-Dín — (xi), 60—65, 236?

Rustam b. Shahriyár, Sháhinsháh —, 3.

Rustam b. Shahriyár b. Qárin, Fakhru'l-Mulk — (xii¹), 241.

Rustam, Ispahbad Shamsu'l-Mulük — (xii²), 255.

Rustam b. Sharwín [b. Shahriyár b.] Báwand (maternal uncle of Qábús b. Washmír; x²—xi¹), 92, 209, 225.

Rustam b. Surkháb b. Qárin b. Shahriyár (ix²), 237, 238.

Rustam b. Zabarqán (ix²), 174.

Rustam-i-Zál (legendary hero of Persia), 14, 17, 35, 43, 97, 249 (in Persian verse).

*Rustamdár (Mel., 47, 50, 52, 54, 57, 60), 132, 261, 269.

*Rúyán (Mel., 47, 50, 55, 56, 58, 59), 1, 17, 19, 20, 28, 29, 35, 39, 60, 73, 97, 121, 123, 140, 149—151, 157, 162, 181, 182, 192, 195, 198, 200, 221, 232, 238, 241, 244, 251, 259, 261.

Rúyáni, Quṭb-i- — (Tabarí poet, xiii), 259.

Rúyáni (fabric), 118.

Rúz (daughter of Khurshid and mother of the legendary Máhiya-sar), 37.

Rúz-Bihán, Naṣiru'd-Dín — (xii²), 251.

Şabbágh, Núru'd-Dín — (ambassador of Tukush b. Il-Arslán Khwárazmsháh, xii²), 68.

-Şábí, Abú Isháq Ibráhím b. Hilál — (x²), 90, 92, 223.

Sábiq of Qazwín (athlete in service of Sultán Mas'úd the Seljúq; xii¹), 66, 249.

Sábiqu'd-Dawla, Amír — (xii), 65.

Sábiqu'd-Dawla, Amir 'Alí — (xii), 247, 249.

Sabuktagín (more correctly *Subuktigin*; see p. 279; x), 227.

*Sabzawár, 264.

Sá'd b. Maymún (viii²), 123.

Sá'd b. Sá'd -Ahwáṣ -Ash'ári (viii¹); 12, and n. 2 *ad calc.*

Sá'd b. Ṭaríf -Hándhalí (viii¹); 12, and n. 2 *ad calc.*

Sá'd b. Abí Waqqás (vii), 96.

Abú Sá'd Sawák (xi¹), 233.

Abú Sá'd -Şaydaláni, 79.

Şadaqa "King of the Arabs" (xi²), 60.

Sá'dí, Ahmád — (retainer of Qábús b. Washmír; x²), 92.

-Sá'dí, Abú'l-Khuḍayb Marzúq (viii²), 120.

-Sá'dí, Ibn Nubáta — (poet), 90.

Abú Şádiq Hárún b. 'Alí -Amúlí (ix¹), 74.

"Şáds", "The two —" (*i. e.* aş-Şábí and the Şahib Isma'il b. 'Abbád), 90.

-Şaffáh, Abú'l-'Abbas — (Caliph; viii²), 111.

-Şafír (or -Şayfar), Family of —, 195.

- *Safjiyya (or Safajiyya), 29.
- *Şafuh (near Amul), 150.
- Şaghániyán (or Şighániyán, or Chaghániyán), 94.
- Şálíb. See *Isma'il b. 'Abbad*.
- Şáhibu'l-Jaysh, Sayyid Abu'l-Hus. A. b. -Naṣir — (x), 49, 201—202.
- Şáhibu'l-Qalansuwa, Abú Ja'far M. b. A. b. -Naṣir (x), 49.
- Sahl b. -Marzubán, 74.
- Sa'íd b. Da'laj (viii²), 124.
- Sa'íd b. Jibrá'il (ix²), 172.
- Sa'íd b. Salma b. Qutayba b. Muslim (viii²), 132.
- Sa'íd b. 'Umar b. -'Alá (viii²), 123.
- Abú Sa'íd Bakr b. Malik (x), 224.
- Abú Sa'íd H. b. M. -Chashmí, 53 *ad calc.*
- Abú Sa'íd Khwár (Şúfi saint), 10.
- Abú Sa'íd Mudhaffar b. Ibr. (x), 78.
- Abú Sa'íd, Sultán — (xiv¹), 263.
- *Sa'íd-ábád, 39, 123, 133, 163.
- *-Sa'ídí, 123.
- Sa'ídúhá (family or tribe), 95.
- Şakhr the Jinní, 36.
- Salám (Sámánid governor of Tabaristán; x¹), 197, 198.
- Salám b. Qudáma (viii²), 123.
- Salám "Siyáh-mard" (viii²), 132.
- Şálih [b.] Mikhráq (vii²), 101, 104.
- Şálih b. Sayyár (x¹), 214.
- Şálih b. Shaykh 'Umayra (ix¹), 141.
- Abú Şálih Mansúr (Sámánid officer; x¹), 198.
- Sálim "the Devil of Farghána" (viii²), 126—128.
- *Sáliyán (near Lafúr), 123.
- Salm (son of the legendary Ferídún), 17.
- Ibn Salma -Qá'id of Níshápúr (viii²), 123.
- Salmán -Daylamí (viii¹), 106.
- Salmán -Fársí (vii¹), 70.

- Ibn Şá'lúk (x¹), 204, 214.
- *Sálús, 28, 29. See also *Jálús, Chálús and Shálús*.
- Salyán (a king contemporary with the Sásánians), 35.
- *Sámta, 122.
- Sám-i-Naríman (legendary hero), 41, 42.
- Sam'áni, Nidhámú'd-Dín — (xiii¹), 109.
- Sámánid Dynasty (ix²—x²), 9, 193—197, 218—224, 226—228, 234.
- *Samarqand, 32, 82.
- *Sámarrá. See *Surra-man-ra'a*.
- Sámíri (opponent of Moses and maker of the Golden Calf), 9.
- *Samnán, 104, 189, 196, 230, 243—244.
- Sanjar (Seljúq; xii) 59, 61, 66, 80, 81, 240, 246. See also *Sinjar*.
- Sanjar Sháh b. Hazárasp (xii²), 253, 254.
- *Saqsín, 33, l. 26; 34, l. 1.
- *Sarakhs, 167.
- Sarawí, or -Sarwí (*nisbas* from Sári or Sáriya in Mázadarán, and Sarw near Ardabil respectively: see Mr. Ellis's note on p. 274), 36, 46, 50, 79, 274.
- Sarbadárs, or Sarbadáls (xiv), 264, 267.
- *Sári, 16, 17, 28—31, 35, 56, 57, 59, 61, 69, 84, 98, 106, 107, 114, 122, 123, 130, 132, 140, 141, 144, 150, 152, 165—167, 169—172, 174, 176, 178, 179, 181, 182, 186, 189, 194, 195, 199—203, 207, 209, 210—215, 217—222, 229, 230, 241—246, 249, 254, 257, 265, 266.
- *Sármám, 28.
- Sásánian Dynasty (iii—vii), 4, 35, 36, 68, 85, 96, 118, 155, 204.
- *Sáwa, 61, 244.
- *Sawád, 180.
- *Sawát-Kúh, 149.
- Şaydalání, Abú Sa'íd —, 79.

-Şayfar (or -Şafír), Family of —, 195.
 Sayfu'd-Dawla, title of Sultán Maḥmúd b. Subuktigin, *q. v.*
 "Sayyid-i-Barqa'i" ("the Veiled Sayyid", better known as
 Şálibu'z-Zanj; IX²), 180.
 Sayyids of Țabaristán (IX²—X¹), 158 *et seqq.*, 237. See
 also under -Dá'i.
 Schefer, M. Ch. —, 1, 86.
 Sclavs. See *Slavs, Russians*.
 Sehir-ud-Din. See *Dhahiru'd-Din*.
 Seljúq, ancestor of the Seljúqs or Seljúqís (X²—XI¹), 235.
 Seljúq, House of —, or Seljúqs (XI—XII), 5, 61, 66, 68,
 235, 239, 240, 241, 252, 256.
 Seljúqsháh (XII²), 246.
 *Şa'bú-Dasht, 221.
 Shafarwah (poet, of Isfahán; XII²—XIII¹), 69.
 "-Sháfi'i", "the second —" (XI), 75.
 Shágird, Abu'l-Faḍl — (X¹), 217.
 *Sháh-Dizh, Castle of —, in Hazár-garí (-jaríb), 185, 238.
 *Sháh-Dizh (also called Dizkúh, or Qal'a-i-Atash-Kúh, an
 Assassin stronghold, near Isfahán), 241 *ad calc.*
 Sháh Ghází b. Fakhru'd-Dawla (XIV), 269.
 Sháh Ghází Rustam (XII¹), 245.
 Sháh Ghází, Ustundár — (XII²), 261.
 *Sháh-Kúh, 120.
 Sháhnáma (of Firdawsi; XI¹), 96, 98. See also *Firdawsi*
 and *Mu'ayyidi*.
 Shahrákím b. Namáwar, Ustundár — (XIII), 259, 261.
 Shahrásán b. Asán (XII²), 249.
 *Shahristána-marz, 25.
 *Shahristán-i-Túsán, 22.
 Shahriyár, Ispahbad — (XII²), 252.
 Shahriyár-i-Andiyán (IX²), 166.
 Shahriyár b. Dárá b. Shahriyár, Ispahbad — (X²—
 XI¹), 239.

Shahriyár b. Kínhwár b. Rustam b. Dárá b. Shahriyár
 (XII²—XIII¹), 256.
 Shahriyár (relative of Mázyár, hardly his grandfather;
 probably his brother and fellow-hostage, who, how-
 ever, is called *Surkháb* on p. 173; IX²), 178.
 Shahriyár b. Pádhúsbán, Ispahbad — (IX²—X¹), 190, 196,
 198, 200, 201, 216.
 Shahriyár b. Qárin, Ispahbad Husámu'd-Dawla — (X²—
 X¹), 3, 58, 239—244, 256.
 Shahriyár b. Sharwín (XI¹), 143, 145—147.
 Shahriyár b. Sharwín (X²), 220, 222, 228, 230, 231, 237—239.
 Shahriyár b. Wandá-ummíd (X¹), 205, 206.
 Shahriyár-i-Yazdigird (the son of the last Sásánian king;
 VII²), 96.
 Shahriyár (Naşíru'd-Dawla —; XIV¹) b. Malik Táju'd-
 Dawla Yazdigird, 261, 262.
 *Shahriyár-Kúh, 41, 126, 213, 214, 224, 228, 229, 239—
 241, 243, 245, 246.
 Shahr-Khwástán (VII³—VIII¹), 30, 31.
 *Shaláb (or *Giláb*, or *Chaláb*, or *Chaláp*, *q. v.*), 15, 255.
 *Shalanba, 28.
 *Shalmiyya.
 *Shálús, 40, 216. See also *Jálús*, *Chálús* and *Sálús*.
 Shams-i-Al-i-Muhammad, 81.
 Shamsu'Ali Ḩ-rasúl, Sayyid — (apparently identical with
 the above), 57.
 Shamsu'l-Ma'álí. See *Qábus b. Washmír*.
 Shamsu'l-Múluk M. b. Ardashír (XIII²), 258, 259, 268.
 Shamsu'l-Mulük Naşíru'd-Dawla Rustam (XII²—XIII¹), 255,
 256, 257, 261, 268?
 Sham'ún b. Khudádád, 37.
 Shápúr Dhu'l-Aktáf (Sásánian, IV¹), 204.
 Shápúr-i-Kayús (IV), 95.
 Shápúr-i-Shahriyár (IX¹), 147, 148.

Shár, Sháh — of Ghars (XI¹), 234.
 Sharafu'd-Dawla Gustahm (XIV), 266.
 Sharafu'd-Dín, Sayyid —, 58.
 Sharafu'l-Ma'álí, 77 last line.
 Sharafu'l-Mulúk (XII²), 255, 256.
 Sharafu'l-Mulúk b. Shahriyár (XIV¹), 263, 268, 269.
 Sharafu'l-Mulúk Hasan b. Rustam (XII²), 61, 249.
 Sha'rání, Abu'l-Qásim b. Hasan — (X¹), 221.
 Shárí (officer of the Táhirids, IX²), 183, 184.
 Sharwín, Ispahbad — Báwand (IX¹), 43, 99, 126, 128, 129, 140—143, 145, 166, 226.
 Sharwín-i-Rustam (X¹), 196, 201, 205, 206, 213, 214, 216, 237.
 Sharwín-i-Surkháb-i-Mihr-mardán (IX¹), 237.
 Sharwín-i-Shahriyár-i-Sharwín (IX²), 238.
 Sharzíl (or Shírzíl, or Shírazíl), Husayn — (XII¹), 245.
 Shátí-mází-bun (a kind of tree), 20.
 Ibn Shá'úshtí (X¹), 218.
 -Shaybání, Maṣqala b. Hubayra — (VII), 100.
 Shaykh-i-Záhid, 80.
 *Shih-dila (or Si-dila), 115.
 Shi'ites, 143, 144, 175. See also *Imáms*, *Zaydi sect*, *Rafí-dis*, etc.
 *Shínúh, Darband-i —, 247.
 *Shírábád, 37.
 *Shíraj b. Laylá (X¹), 217—219, 223.
 *Shirásaf, 57, l. 10.
 *Shíráz, 33.
 Shír Mardí (X²), 220.
 *Shírú, 181.
 Shírúya (the Sásánian; VII¹), 96.
 Shírwánsháh, king of the Khazars (X¹), 199.
 Shirwánsháh (brother of Ustundár Hazárasp; XII²), 250.
 Shírzád b. Mas'ud (III) of Ghazna (XII¹), 58.
 Abú Shujá^c Fanakhusraw. See *'Adudu'd-Dawla*.

Abú Shujá^c (brother of Zarrín-Kamar; XII), 59.
 *Shúra, 182.
 Shurát, 103, 104, l. 1. See *Khárijites*.
 *Si-dila (or Shih-dila), 115.
 Síffín, Battle of — (VII²), 101, 104.
 Síghániyán, 94.
 *Síhna (near Naháwand), 240.
 Sikandar b. Malik Táju'd-Dawla Yazdigird (XIV¹), 261.
 Sikní (IX²), 181. See *Aḥmad b. Muḥammad*.
 Símjúr, House of — (X), 208, 225, 227, 231, 234.
 Simon (or Sham'ún), 37.
 Ibn Síná, Abú 'Alí — (Avicenna; X²—XI), 86.
 Sindbád the Magian (VIII²), 112, 117, 118.
 Sindí b. Sháhak (Shí'ite leader; IX), 144.
 Sinjar (or Sanjar), the Seljúq (XII¹), 59, 61, 66, 80, 81, 240, 246.
 Sipahsálár b. Kúrángíj (X²—XI¹), 230.
 Siráju'd-Dín Qumrí (poet; XIII), 258.
 Sirri b. 'Abdu'lláh -'Abbásí (VIII²), 124, 125.
 *Sístán, 33, 181, 182.
 Siyáh, 'Aynu'd-Dawla — (XII²), 251.
 Siyáh-Gíl b. Harúsandán (X¹), 205, 207 and n. 1 *ad calc.*
 "Siyáh Mard" Salám (YIII²), 132.
 Siyáh-rúd (near Jamanú), 41, 251.
 Siyaru'l-Mulúk (= *Siyásat-náma*) of the Nidhámu'l-Mulk
 { (XI²), 91, 93.
 Siyásat-náma, 91, 93.
 de Slane, 5, 6, 51, 106 *ad calc.*
 Slavs, 40, 97. See also *Russians*.
 Solomon, 36.
 Spiegel, 1.
 Sudám (a judge so named), 133.
 Súfís, 10, 240.
 Sufyán b. Abi'l-Abrah -Kalbí (VII²), 104, 105.

Sufyán -Thawrí, 10.
 Suhráb-i-Báw (VII²), 98, 237.
 Suhráb-i-Rustam (legendary hero), 35.
 Súkhrá (V²), 14, 94, 95, 125.
 Ibnu Sukkara -Háshimí (X²—X¹), 51 and n. 1 *ad calc.*
 ՚-Súl, Nahapets of —, 106 and n. 1 *ad calc.*, 108.
 *Sulaymán-ábád, 177, 184.
 Sulaymán b. ՚Abdu’lláh b. Táhir (IX²), 157, 164—173, 177.
 Sulaymán b. ՚Abdu’l-Malik (Umayyad Caliph; VIII¹), 105, 108, 109.
 Sulaymán -Alawí (IX²), 166.
 Sulaymán b. Músá (VIII¹), 132.
 Sulaymánsháh (Seljúq; XII²), 61, 62, 66.
 Sultán-Sháh-i-Gíl (XII¹), 247.
 Sultán Sháh Maḥmúd Khwárazmsháh (XII²), 67.
 Sunqur, Amír ← (XII¹), 241, 242.
 Sunqur-i-Kúchak (XII²), 244, 245.
 Surhánwands, 95.
 Surkháb, Amír — (XII²), 249.
 Surkháb-i-Jastán (or Justán; X¹), 195.
 Surkháb-i-Qárin (brother of Mázyár; IX²), 173, 174, 237.
 Surkháb-i-Rustam (IX²), 165.
 Surkháb-i-Wahsúdán (or Wehsúdán; X¹), 208.
 *Surra-man-ra՚a (or Sámarrá), 26, 43, 70, 80, 161.
 *Syria, 33, 69, 75, 91, 104, 108, 109, 178, 223, 247.
 *Tabarak, Castle of —, 19, 20, 250.
 Ibnu ՚-Tabátabá -Alawí, 47.
 *Tábarán, 123.
 Tábarí dialect, 24, 34, 35, 41, 60, 61, 65, 77, 84—85, 86, 87, 88, 89.
 -Tábarí, M. b. Jarír — (IX²—X¹), 74, 192; Annals of —, 26, n. 1 *ad calc.*
 Ibnu ՚-Tabarí, ՚Abdu’lláh — (IX), 80.

*Tabas, 216.
 *Tafsúr, 227.
 Táhir b. ՚Abdu’lláh b. Táhir (IX), 157, 180, 181.
 Táhir, House of —, or Táhirids (IX), 29, 30.
 Táhir-i-Arráni (assassin of Nidhámu’l-Mulk, XI²), 239.
 Táhir b. Husayn (general of -Ma’mún, IX¹), 143.
 Táhir b. Ibráhím b. Khalíl (IX²), 186.
 Táhir b. M. -Kátib (X¹), 206.
 *Tá’if, 111.
 -Tá’ir bi-ta’yídi’lláh, Sayyid Husayn — (X), 54.
 Tájí Duwayr (՚Abdu’lláh b. -Hus. b. Sahl), 73.
 Tájsks, 251.
 *Tájí-wá, Mountain of —, 35, 1, 16.
 Táju’d-Dawla Yazdigird (XIII²), 261, 262, 266.
 Táju’d-Dín Kiyá (XIV¹), 265.
 Táju’d-Dín Túránsháh b. Zardastán (XII²), 252.
 Táju’l-Mulúk ՚Alí b. Mardáwíj (XII²), 66.
 Táju’l-Mulúk Mardáwíj (XII¹), 246.
 *Tálániyán, 168.
 *Tálaqán, 191, 216.
 Abú Tálib (VII¹), 48, 49, 52, 53, 124, 158, 194, 215.
 Abú Tálib, Imám-i-Mufid. See *Mufid*.
 Abú Tálib Hárún -Thá’ir, Sayyid — (X), 58, 78.
 Abú Tálib Yahyá, Sayyid — (X²—X¹), 50, 54, 55.
 Tálish Chúbán, Amír — (XIV¹), 262.
 -Talkhís, by ՚Abdu’l-Qáhir (not -Qadir) -Jurjáni (XI), 78.
 *Tálpúr, 99.
 *Támeshkí Dasht, 168.
 *Tamanjáda, or Tamanjádiya, 196, 222.
 Abú Tammám (compiler of -*Hamásá*; IX¹), 103.
 *Tammísha (Mel., 47, 55, 216), 16, 28—30, 56, 66, 67, 95, 106, 107, 110, 114, 122, 140, 149, 154, 179, 185, 190, 198, 201, 206, 208, 246, 255, 257, 261, 265.
 *Tanparast, 101.

Tansar (contemporary of Ardashír Bábakán, III¹), 1, 4, 6.
 Ṭanṭiq, Amír — (XII), 251.
 -Tanúkhí, Qádí Abu'l-Qásim 'Alí b. M. —, 52.
 *Tápán, Maydán-i- —, 61.
 *Tardawíni, 101.
 *Tarícha (or *Turicha*, *q. v.*) 123, 165, 174, 176, 195, 221, 249.
Ta'rikh-i-Barámika, 39.
Ta'rikh-i-Gusída (by Ḥamdu'lláh Mustawfi -Qazwíni; XIV), 240 *ad calc.*
 -*Ta'rikh -Yamíni* (by -'Utbí; XI¹), 228, 229, 231, 234.
 *Tarjí, 166.
 *Tarsus (Ṭarasús), 152 *ad calc.*
 Tásh (X²), 226.
 Tatárs, 71, 96. See *Mongols*.
 Abú Tawba, Naṣru'd-Dín M. — (XII), 81.
 Taym b. Sinán (VIII²), 129.
 Abú Ṭayyib -Mutanabbí (X²). See -*Mutanabbi*.
 *Ṭayzana-rúd (or Mayándarúd), 101.
 -Tha'álíbí, Abú Mansúr —, author of *Yatímatu'd-Dahr* (XI¹), 7, 50, 92.
 -Thábit b. Abí Ṣafíyya Dínár (= Abú Ḥamza -Thumálí; VIII²), 11 *ad calc.*
 -Thá'ir, Sayyid Abú Ṭálib -'Alawí — (X²), 58, 78, 222, 223.
 -Thá'ir, Náṣir-i-Kabír (*q. v.*) so called, 195. See *Náṣir-i-Kabír*.
 Ibn Tha'labá of Syria (IX²), 167.
 -Thaqafí. See *Yúsuf b. Umar*.
 -Thumálí, 11. See above, *s. v.* *Thábit*.
 Tídá, 202.
 *Ṭíhrán, 19.
 Tíjásaf, 229.
 *Tís, 28.
 *Transoxiana (= *Má wará'u'n-Náhr*, *q. v.*), 105.

Tughánsháh (XII²), 253.
 Tughá-Tímúr (XIV¹), 264.
 Tughá-Turk (XII¹), 59.
 -Tughrá'i, 'Azíz-i- — (XII), 62.
 Tughril Beg b. Míká'il b. Seljúq; XI¹), 236, 239.
 Tughril I (Seljúq of 'Iráq; XII¹), 59.
 Tughril II b. Arslán (Seljúq of 'Iráq; XII²), 67, 68, 252.
 *Tukháristán, 42.
 Tukush b. Il-Arslán Khwárazmsháh (XII²), 67, 69, 204, 255.
 *Tún, 258.
 Túr (son of the legendary Ferídún), 17.
 Abú Turáb, Shaykh —, 80.
 *Túrán, 35.
 *Túrán-char, 27.
 *Turícha, 27, 28, 29, 123. See also *Taricha*.
 Turk-i-Rúmí (IX²), 186. The same person is probably intended on p. 184, and therefore the article "the" should probably be deleted before "Turk" in lines 13 and 20.
 Turks, 7, 27, 93, 94, 95, 97, 98, 99, 118, 161, 182, 204, 208, 213, 215, 219, 226, 229, 250, 251, 264.
 Turkán Khátún (XII²), 253.
 *Turkistán, 93, 96, 105, 107, 138, 201.
 Turkí-tákín (IX²), 161.
 *Tús, 56, 143, 205.
 Tús (cousin of the Ispahbad Khurshíd; VIII²), 117.
 Tús-i-Núdhar (legendary hero and warrior), 16.
 *Túsán (near Sári), 16, 22, 24.
 Túsí's *Fihrist*, 11 *ad calc.*, 271.
 Abú 'Ubáda -Buhturí (IX²), 159.
 'Ubayd b. Yazíd -Kházin (IX²), 169.
 'Ubaydu'lláh, 111.
 *Ufar, 168.

Úlán-mihán (tribe or family), 95.

Uljáytú (Sultán Muḥammad Khudábanda; XIV¹), 262, 263.

*Umán, 33.

‘Umar b. ‘Abdu'l-‘Azíz (VIII¹), 12, 108, 109.

‘Umar (or ‘Amr) b. ‘Alá (the traitor; VIII²), 120, 123, 124, 130, 131. See ‘Amr b. ‘Alá.

‘Umar b. Bahrám [b.] ‘Isá (VIII²), 123.

‘Umar Fannáq (or Fayyáq; VII²), 101, 104.

‘Umar b. Jurmuz (VII²), 48.

‘Umar b. -Khaṭṭáb (VII), 27, 58, 96, 98, 109.

‘Umar b. Sa‘íd (VIII²), 122.

Abú ‘Umar (X¹), 220.

*Umar-ábád, 125, 179.

*Umar-(or ‘Amr-)Kaláda, 125.

‘Umayr (servant of -Náṣir-í-Kabír's daughter), 58.

Umayyads (VII²—VIII¹), 7, 10, 12, 108—111, 254, l. 3.

Ummídwár b. Lashkar-sítán (IX²), 164.

*Ummídwár-Kúh, 16, 39, 40, 126.

Umm Ja‘far (VIII²—IX¹), 45.

Ummu'l-Faḍl bint -Ma‘mún (IX), 144.

*Umúramdúd (?), 29, l. 20.

*Umyár-Kúh, 29.

‘Uqúdú's-Síhr wa Qalā'idi'd-Durar (by Abu'l-H. M. -Yaz-dádí), 3.

Urmazdyár (X¹), 217.

‘Urwa b. Udayya (VII²—VIII¹), 102.

*Ustúnáwand, Castle of —, 4, 231, 243.

Ustundár (title), 54, 60, 95, 221, 222, 229, 237, 246—249, 251, 259—265, 268, 269.

*Ustundáriyya, 232.

‘Utbí, Abú Naṣr — (X²—XI¹), 91, 92, 231. See also -Taríkhu'l-Yamini.

‘Uthmán b. ‘Affán (Caliph; VII), 102, 110, 254, l. 4.

‘Uthmán b. Nahík (VIII²), 132.

Utrúsh, Abú ‘Abdi'lláh M. — (X¹), 49, 50.

*-Úz, Rúdbár—, 266.

Valásh (or Balásh, or Walásh, *q. v.* = “Vologeses”), 99, 101, 237.

Víjan, Cháh-i— (= “Bízhan's Well”), 39.

*Vífr, 37, 38.

Wabád (or *Wamád*), 28.

Abu'l-Waḍdáh (IX¹), 142.

Abu'l-Wafá Khalífa b. Núh (X¹), 200.

*Wah-rádhán (near Ray), 190.

Wahrí, 223.

Wahriz (Persian general in time of Núshirwán, VI), 20, and n. 3 *ad calc.*

Wah-súdán (or Wih-súdán; IX²), 169, 178.

*Walajúy, 220.

Walásán (family or tribe), 95.

Walásh (VII), 237. See *Valásh* and *Balásh*.

Walásh, Masmughán —, Reference lost.

*Waláshgírd, 123.

Walíd b. ‘Abdu'l-Malik (Umayyad Caliph; VIII¹), 105.

Walíd b. Maysara (VIII²), 123.

*Walíkán, Plain of —, 245.

*Wamád (or *Wabád*), 28.

*Wana-Bun, 125

Wandád-Hurmazd b. Alandáy (VIII²), 43, 44, 125—132, 140—145, 147, 237.

Wandarand (VIII¹), 115.

Wandarand b. Wandád-Hurmazd, Masmughán — (IX²), 178.

Wandásafán (VIII²), 131, 132, 141, 146.

Wandásafán-i-Máhyár (IX²), 165.

Wandá-ummíd (VIII²), 127, 128, 146, 171.

*Wandá-ummíd-kúh, 25, 95.

Wandawayh (IX), 190.

*Waraka (in Láriján), 15.
 Wardán-sháh (X²), 223.
 Wardásf (X¹), 210, 211.
 Ward-i-Asfar (VIII²), 128.
 *Wárfú, 162.
 Ibn Warrám (? Darrám), Amír —, 79.
 Washmgír [b. Ziyár] (X¹), 5, 20, 90, 91, 99, 215, 217—225, 235, 238, 239.
 *Wáṣiṭ, 180.
 -Wáthiq (Caliph; IX¹), 155.
 Waṭwáṭ, Rashídu'd-Dín — (poet; XII¹), 62—65.
 Wíhán b. Sahl (IX²), 164, 171.
 Wih-súdán (or Wah-súdán; IX²), 169, 178.
 Wíjan-i-Rustam (IX²), 164, 170, 171.
 *Wíma (near Damáwand), 28, 142, 191, 219.
 *Wínábád (near Sári), 172, 201.

Yádigár, *Kitáb-i* — (by Sayyid Abu'l-Faḍl Isma'íl b. M. -Músawí of Jurján; XII¹), 86.
 Yaghmúr b. Seljúq (XI¹), 235.
 Yaḥyá b. -Aktham (IX¹), 149, 150.
 Yaḥyá b. -Husayn, Sayyid Abú Ṭálib —, 50, 54, 55.
 Yaḥyá b. Ibráhím b. Muṣ'ab (IX¹), 153.
 Yaḥyá b. Khálid -Barmakí (VIII²—IX¹), 135.
 Yaḥyá b. Abí Mansúr (= Bizíst b. Fírúzán; IX¹), 87, 147.
 Yaḥyá b. Mikhnáq (VIII²), 125.
 Yaḥyá -Nátiq bī'l-Haqq, Sayyid Abú Ṭálib — b. Husayn (see above), 50, 54, 55.
 Yaḥyá b. Rúzbihán (IX¹), 149.
 Yaḥyá b. 'Umar b. Hus. b. 'A. b. Hus. b. 'A. b. Abí Ṭálib (IX¹), 161.
 Yaḥyá b. Yaḥyá, Amír — (VIII²—IX¹), 17.
 Yaḥyá b. Zayd -Alawí (VIII²—IX¹), 136—138.
 Yákand (= "Hyacinth"), 116.

*Yaman, 91, 111.
 Abú Ya'mar (VIII¹), 107. See also *Hayyán -Nabaṭi*.
 -Yamini, *Ta'rīkhū'l-* —, by -'Utbí (X²—XI¹), 91, 92, 231. See also -'Utbí and *Ta'rīkh*.
 Ya'qúb b. Layth -Şaffárf (IX²), 180—182.
 Yáqút (XIII), 152, n. 1 *ad calc.*
 *Yásamín-Kaláta, 262, 266.
 Yathrib (afterwards called *al-Madina*), 53.
Yatīmatu'd-Dahr (of Abú Mansúr- Tha'álíbí; XI¹), 50, 257 *ad calc.*
 "Yawmu'l-Ghadír", 158.
 -Yazdádí, Abu'l-H. 'A. b. M. — (XI), 3, 25, 27, 30, 33, 36, 39, 40, 76, 92.
 Yazdán, 24.
 *Yazdánábád, 21, 115, 123.
 Yazdánkard (IX¹), 174.
 Yazdigird I (called "al-Athím", "the Wicked", Sásánian king; V¹), 94.
 Yazdigird III (last Sásánian king; VII¹), 96—98.
 Yazdigird (son of the Ispahbad Sháh Ghází Rustam; XII²), 250.
 Yazdigird, Malik Táju'd-Dawla — (XIII²), 261.
 Yazíd b. Mu'áwiya (Umayyad Caliph; VII²), 48.
 Yazíd b. -Muḥallab (VIII¹), 105—109.
 Yazíd b. Murthad (read *Masyad*; VIII²—IX¹), 44, 45, 129, 131.
 Yúsuf b. 'Abdu'r-Rahmán (VIII²), 123.
 Yúsuf b. 'Umar -Thaqafí (VIII¹), 6.
 *Zábulistán, 35, 95.
 Zabarqán (IX¹), 174.
 Záhid, Shaykh-i —, 80.
 Záhida Khátún (XII²), 254.
 -Zahrá (i. e. Fáṭima, the Prophet's daughter), 49.
 Zakariyyá, Abú Bakr — (X¹), 215.
 Zanakú, Mosque of —, 245.

- *Zangán, 178, 216.
- Zanj (Ethiopians), 180.
- Zanras (or Zanráshan), Abú Aḥmad —; X¹), 198.
- Zardastán (XII²), 30, 252.
- Zarhawájastán-i-Ashkálí (X²—XI)¹, 230.
- *Zárim, 120, 244.
- Zarmihr-i-Súkhrá (VI), 95.
- *Zarmíkhwást, 165.
- Zarmíwand Mámíwand b. Ustundár Hazárasp (XII²), 251.
- *Zawín, 188.
- Zayd, Sayyid —, 53, l. 1, 136.
- Zayd b. M. b. Zayd (IX²), 190, 194.
- Zayd b. Ṣáliḥ (X¹), 215.
- Zaydí sect, 54, 58, 202.
- Zaynu'l-`Abidín, Imám `Alí b. Ḥus. b. `A. b. Abí Tálib — (VII²), 11.
- *Zaynu'sh-Sharaf, College of —, 55.
- Zifrí, Abú Bakr — (X¹), 207.
- Zij-i-Kámil (by Awhadu'd-Dahr -Dánishf), 87.
- Zij-i-Ma'múni (by Bizíst b. Fírúzán; IX¹), 87.
- *Zindána-Kúy, 80.
- *Zínwán (near Sári), 249.
- Ziyád b. Abíhi (VII), 102.
- Ziyád b. An'am -Ifríqí, 10.
- Ziyád b. Házim (VIII²), 122.
- Ziyár, House of — (X¹—XI¹), 20, 91, 217, 236. See also *Washmgír*, *Qábús*, etc.
- Zohák, Zuhák. See *Dahák*.
- Zoroastrianism, 150, 237. See *Gabr*, *Magians*, *Mázyár*, *Sindbád* etc.
- Zotenberg, 7.
- Zubayr (VII), 48.
- Zubayr b. -Mutawakkil. See -*Mu'tazz*.
- Zúma, Gunduya — (aphrodisiac herb), 40.